

...until they should die before him & he
commanded them that they should not utter against him wherefore
he did do as he commanded them & his father dwell in a tent & it came
to pass that I & he being exceedingly young nevertheless being large
in stature & also having great desires to know of the mysteries of
God wherefore I did cry unto the Lord & behold he did visit me & did say
unto my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by
my father wherefore I did not rebel against him like unto my
father & I spake unto them making known unto them the things which
the Lord had manifested unto me by his holy spirit & it came to pass
that he believed in my words & behold Laman & Lemuel would
not hearken unto my words & being grieved because of the hardness
of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them & it came to pass that the
Lord spake unto me saying blessed art thou Nephi because of
thy faith for thou hast sought me diligently with lowliness of heart
in as much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper & shall
be led to a land of promise yea even a land which I have prepared for you & it
is a land which is choice above all other lands & inasmuch as thy brethren
shall rebel against thee they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord
& in as much as thou shalt keep my commandments thou shalt be made
a ruler & a teacher over thy brethren for behold in that day that
they shall rebel against me I will curse them even with a sore curse
& they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against
me also & if it so be that they rebel against me they shall be a charge
unto thy seed to stir them up in the words of remembrance & it came to pass that
I & he returned from speaking with the Lord to the tent of my father & it
came to pass that he spake unto me saying behold I have dreamed a dream
in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy brethren
shall return to Jerusalem for behold Laban hath the record of thy words &
also a genealogy of thy forefathers & they are engraven upon plates of brass where-
fore the Lord hath commanded me that thou & thy brethren should go unto
the house of Laban & seek the records & bring them down hither and I will
now show behold thy brother mormon saying it is a hard thing which I have
commanded you that behold I have not commanded you of them but it is a com-
mandment of the Lord therefore go my sons & do as the Lord hath
said & thou shalt not murmur & it came to pass that the Lord
said unto me that I should go with them & do as the Lord should
command me

For I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men
save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which
he commandeth them & it came to pass that when my father had heard these sayings
he was exceedingly glad for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord & I lifted up
my brethren took our journey in the wilderness with our tents to go up to the
land of Jerusalem & it came to pass that when we had come up to the land of
Jerusalem I & my brethren did consult one with another & we cast lots
who ^{who} should go in unto the house of Laban & it came to pass that the lot
fell upon Laman & Laman went in unto the house of Laban & he talked with
him as he sat in his house & he desired of Laban the records which were
written upon the plates of brass which contained the genealogy of my father
& behold it came to pass that Laban was angry & thrust him out from his
presence & he would not that he should have the records wherefore he said unto his
sons behold there is a nobler & I will show them that Laman fled out of his
presence & to tell the things which Laban had done unto us & we began to be
mournful & my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilder-
ness but behold I said unto them that as the Lord liveth & as we live we will
not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the
thing which the Lord hath commanded us wherefore let us be faithful in keeping
the commandments of the Lord therefore let us go down to the land of our father
in habitation for behold he hath gold & silver & all manner of riches & all this
he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord for he knowing that
Jerusalem must be destroyed because of the wickedness of the people for
behold they have rejected the words of the prophets wherefore if my father should
dwell in the land of the ^{land} he hath been commanded to flee out of the land
behold he would also perish wherefore it must needs be that he flee out of
the land & behold it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records
that we ^{may} might present unto our children the language of our fathers & also
that we may present unto them the words which have been spoken by the
mouth of all the holy prophets which have been delivered unto them by the
spirit & power of God since the world began even down unto this present time
& it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren
that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord & it
came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance & we did
obtain precious things & after that we had obtained the records of Laban & we
did the words which the Lord had commanded us to do

and when we were upon the plates of brass for which we were
sent him our gold & our silver & all our precious things & it came to pass that
when Laban saw our property that it was exceeding great he did lust after it in
somuch that he thrust us out & sent his servants to slay us that he might
obtain our property & it came to pass that we did fall before the servants of
Laman & we were obliged to leave behind our property & it fell into the hands
of Laban & it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness & the servants of Laban
did not overtake us & we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock & it came to pass
that Laman was angry with me & with my father & also with
my brethren & he sent his servants to slay us & it came to pass that
we were in the wilderness & we were in the hands of Laman when he
spoke many hard words unto us & his younger brothers & they did
smell us & we were in a rock & it came to pass that an angel of the Lord
came & stood before them & he spake unto them
saying why do ye smell your younger brothers with a bad smell & know ye
that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you & this
because of your iniquities behold he shall go to Jerusalem again &
the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands & after that the angel
had spake unto us he departed & after that the angel had departed Laman
& Lemuel again began to murmur saying how is it possible that the Lord will
deliver Laban into our hands behold he is a mighty man & he can comma
nd the wind & he can slay the living why not us & it came to pass that
he spake unto my brethren saying let us go up again unto Jerusalem & let us
be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord for behold he is mighty
thru all the earth & why not mightier men Laban & his fifty men over
his tens of thousands therefore let us go up let us be strong like unto Moses
for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea & they divided him & his
& our fathers came through out of captivity on dry ground & the armies of the
king did follow & were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea now behold ye know
as that this is true & we also know that an angel hath spoken unto you when ye
were in doubt let us go up & the Lord is able to deliver us even as our fathers & to de
stroy Laban even as the Egyptians now when I had spoken these words
I did not know that I did still continue to murmur nevertheless they did go
up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem & it was by night & we saw
that they should hide themselves instead the walls of the city & they did
not know that we were in the city & we went forth & we were in the hands
of Laban & he led us by the spirit not knowing of our fathers & he
said unto us as I came near to the house of Laban

[illegible]

It came to pass that when Lemuel saw me he was exceedingly glad
and also Lemuel & Sam & they fled from before my presence for they supposed
it was Laban & that he had slain me & had sought to take away their lives also
& it came to pass that I called after them & they did hear me therefore they did
cease to flee from my presence & it came to pass that when the servant of Laban
Behiel my brother began to tremble & was about to flee from before me
& return to the City of Jerusalem & now Behiel being a man of large stature
& also having received much strength of the Lord therefore I did seizing
on the Girdle of Laban & held him that he should not flee & it came to pass that I
spoke unto him that if he would hearken unto my words as the Lord liveth & as I live
even so that if he would hearken unto our words we would spare his life &
I spoke unto him even with an oath that he need not fear that he should be a felon
unlike unto us if he would go down into the wilderness with us & I also spoke unto
him saying surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing & shall we not be diligent
in hearkening keeping the Commandments of the Lord therefore if thou wilt go
down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us & it came
to pass that Goram did take courage at the words which I spoke now Goram was
the name of the servant & he promised that he would go down into the wilderness
unto ^{our} father & he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from
at time forth now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause
that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness lest
they should persecute us & destroy us & it came to pass that when Goram had made
an oath unto us our fears did cease concerning him & it came to pass that we took
the plates of brass & the servant of Laban & departed into the wilderness & journeyed
to the land of our fathers & it came to pass that after we had come down into the
wilderness unto our father behold he was filled with joy & also my Mother & Lehi
was exceedingly glad for she truly had mourned because of as for she had supposed
that we had perished in the wilderness & she also had comforted my
father telling him that he was a visionary man saying behold these have I
us forth from the land of our inheritance & my sons are no more & our perished in the
wilderness & after this manner of language had my Mother comforted my
father & it had come to pass that my father spoke unto her saying I know thou art a
visionary man for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have
the goodness of God that had turned at Jerusalem & had perished with my brethren
& I have obtained a land of promise in the which I shall dwell & I have
the Lord with deliver me from out of the hands of Laban & my brethren
in the wilderness & after this manner of language had my Mother said

Comfort my Brother Mosiah Concerning us while we journey in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem to obtain the record of the Jews & when we had returned to the tent of my father he held them for near full day & my Mother was comforted & she spoke saying now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness yea & I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons & delivered them out of the hands of Laban & great temptations whereby they could not accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them & after this manner of language did she speak & it came to pass that they did praise exceedingly & did offer sacrifices & burnt offerings unto the Lord & they gave thanks unto the God of Israel & after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel my father Lehi took these plates which were engraven upon the plates of brass & he did search them from the beginning & he beheld that they did contain the fine books of Moses which were an account of the creation of the world & also of Adam & Eve ^{who were} our first parents & also a record of the Jews from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah King of Judah & also the prophecies of the holy prophets from the beginning even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah & also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah & it came to pass that my father Lehi also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph yea even that Joseph ^{which was} the son of Jacob ^{who} was sold into Egypt & ^{who} was preserved by the hand of the Lord that he might preserve his father Jacob & all his household from perishing with famine & they were also led out of captivity & out of the land of Egypt by that same God who had preserved them & my father Lehi did discover the genealogy of his fathers & Laban also was a descendant of Joseph wherefore he & his fathers had kept the records & now when my father saw all these things he was filled with the spirit & began to prophesy concerning his seed that these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations kindreds tongues & people ^{who} were of his seed wherefore he said that these plates of brass should never perish neither should they be dimmed any more by time & he prophesied many things concerning his seed & it came to pass that thus far I & my father did keep the commandments wherein the Lord had commanded us & we had also in the record which the Lord had commanded us to search them & found that they were desirable yea even of great worth unto us inasmuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children wherefore it was our law in the Lord that we should carry them with us as our fathers in wilderness towards the land of promise

And now I will do not fine the genealogy of my fathers in

10
my record neither at any time shall I give it often upon these plates
where I am writing for it is given in the record which has been kept by
my father wherefore I do not write it in this work for it sufficeth me
to say that we are a descendant ^{of Joseph} & it mattereth not to me that I am perfect
for to give to you a full account of all the things of my father for they can
not be written upon these plates for I desire the room that I may write
of the things of God for the fullness of mine intent is that I may persuade
men to come unto the God of Abraham & the God of Isaac & the God of Jacob
that he saved us from the Kings which are blessing unto the world I do not write
the things which are blessing unto God & unto them ^{now who} which are out of the record
wherefore I shall give commandment unto my seed that they shall not oc-
cupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of man
and I know I would that ye might know that after my father Lehi had made
an end of prophesying concerning his seed it came to pass that the Lord spake
unto him again saying that it was not meet for him Lehi that he should
take his family into the wilderness alone but that his sons should be
his daughters to wile that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land
of promise & it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi &
my brethren should again return into the land of Jerusalem & bring down
Ismael & his family into the wilderness & it came to pass that I, Nephi did
go with my brethren go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem & it came
to pass that we went up unto the house of Ismael & we did gain favor in the sight
of Ismael inasmuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord & it came to
pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ismael & also his household inasmuch
that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our
father & it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness behold Laman
and Ismael & two of the daughters of Ismael & the true sons of Ismael &
their families did rebel against us even against I, Nephi & Jacob & their father
Ismael & his two wives & his three sons & their daughters & it came to pass unto which
rebellion they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem & now I, Nephi
being grieved for the hardness of their hearts therefore I spoke unto them saying
ye even unto Laman & Lemuel behold these are mine elder brethren & I know
it that ye are rebellious in your hearts & ye blinden your minds that ye have need of
the "young men" whom I should speak unto you & ye do not set an example for you to
be it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord how is it that ye do not
see that ye have seen an angel of the Lord & ye have done as he said & ye have
seen that the Lord hath done for us in deliver us out of the hands of the

lands of Laman & also that we should obtain the record ^{yea} & how is it that
ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will for the
children of men if it so be that they exercise faith in him wherefore let us be faithful
for him & if it so be that we are faithful in him we shall obtain the land
of promise & ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord
shall be fulfilled. Concerning the destruction of Jerusalem for all things
which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled
on behalf of the Lord & as it soon to come with them for behold they have
collected the people of Jerusalem & have put in prison & they have sought to take
away the life of my father inasmuch that they have driven him out of the land
now behold I say unto you that if ye will turn unto me I shall also
perish with them & now if ye have chafed up to the land & remember the words
which I speak unto you that if ye go ye will also perish for thus the spirit
of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak & it came to pass that when I
spoke these words unto my brethren they were angry with me & it came
to pass that they did lay their hands upon me for behold they were exceedingly
wroth & they did bind me with cords for they sought to take away my life that
they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts but it
came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord saying O Lord according to my faith
which is in thee will thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren yea even
send me strength that I may have these hands with which I am bound & it came
to pass that when I had said these words behold the hands were loosed from
off my hands & feet & I stood before my brethren & spoke unto them again & it came to pass
that they were angry with me again & sought to lay hands upon me
but behold one of the daughters of Ishmael yea & also her mother & one of the sons of
Ishmael did plead with my mother inasmuch that they did soften their hearts &
they did cease striving to take away my life & it came to pass that they were sorrow-
ful because of their wickedness inasmuch that they did bow down before me
& did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done
against me & it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done
& I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness
& it came to pass that they did so & after that they had done praying unto the Lord
we did again travel on our journey toward the tent of our father & it came to pass
that we did come down unto the tent of our father & after that I had said
unto all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of our father
they did give thanks unto the Lord their God & they did offer sacrifices & burn
offerings unto him & it came to pass that we had gathered them all

18

of seeds of every kind both of grain of every kind & also of the seeds of fruit of
every kind & it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spoke
unto me saying, behold I have dreamed a dream or in other words I have seen a vision & be-
hold because of the thing which I have seen I have reason to suppose in the Lord because
of ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~thing~~ ^{thing} which I have seen I have reason to suppose that they & also many of their seed
will be saved but behold ~~Laman & Lemuel~~ ^{Laman & Lemuel} I fear exceedingly because of you for
behold ~~that~~ ^{me} ~~thought~~ ^{in my dream} I saw a ~~dark & dreary wilderness~~ ^{dark & dreary wilderness} & it came to pass that
I saw a man & he was ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ a white robe & he came & stood before me
& it came to pass that he spake unto me & he said he made me follow him
& it came to pass that as I followed him & after that I had followed him I be-
held myself that I was in a dark & dreary waste & after that I had tar-
ried for the space of many hours in darkness I began to pray unto the
Lord that he would have mercy on me according to the multitude of
his tender mercies & it came to pass that after I had prayed unto the
Lord I beheld a large & spacious field & it came to pass that I beheld a tree
whose fruit was desirable to make one happy & it came to pass that I did go
forth & partake of the fruit thereof & I beheld that it was most sweet above
all that I ever had before tasted yea & I beheld that the fruit thereof
was white to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen & as I partook of the
fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy wherefore I began to be
desirous that my family should partake of it also for I knew that it was desir-
able ^{above} ~~above~~ all other fruit & as I cast my eyes round about that perhaps I
might discover my family, behold I beheld a river of water & it ran along &
it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit & I looked to behold
from whence it came & I saw the head thereof a little way off & at the head
thereof I beheld your mother Sarah & Sam & Lehi & they stood as if they
knew not whither they should go & it came to pass that I beckoned unto them
& I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto
me & partake of the fruit which was desirable above all other fruit & it came to
pass that they did come unto me & partake of the fruit & it came to pass that I
was desirous that ^{also} ~~Laman & Lemuel~~ ^{Laman & Lemuel} should come & partake of the fruit also
wherefore I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river that perhaps I
might see them & it came to pass that I saw them but they would not come
unto me & I beheld a rod of iron & it extended along the bank of the river & led
to the tree by which I stood & I also beheld a strict & narrow path which
came along by the rod of iron even to the tree by which I stood & it also
led by the head of the river unto a large & spacious field as if it were

13
seen a world & saw multitudes concerned of people many of whom were
pressing inward that they might obtain the path which lead unto the tree by which
I stand & it came to pass that they did come forth & commenced in the path which lead to
the tree & it came to pass that there was a mist of darkness ^{and} even an exceeding great
mist of darkness inasmuch that ^{who} they ~~who~~ had commenced in the path ^{lost} ~~lost~~
then way that they wandered off & were lost & it came to pass that I beheld after some
time forward & they came forth & caught hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did
press forward through the mist of darkness clinging to the end of iron even until
they did come unto the ^{ark} ~~ark~~ of the fruit of the tree & after that they had partaken of the
fruit of the tree they did cast their eyes about as if they were ashamed & I also cast
my eyes round about & behold on the other side of the river of water a great & spec-
ious building & it stood as it were in the air high above the earth & it was
filled with people both old & young both males & females in a manner of dress
was exceeding fine & they were in the attitude of making & pointing their fingers
towards those ^{who} ~~who~~ had come & were partaking of the fruit & after that they had tar-
ried of the fruit they were ashamed because of them that were sleeping at them & they fell
away into forbidden places & were lost & I ^{now} ~~do not~~ speak all the words of my father
in but to be short in writing behold he saw other multitudes pressing forward &
they came & caught hold of the end of the rod of iron & they did press their way forward
continually holding fast to the rod of iron until they came forth & fell down & partok
of the fruit of the tree & he also saw other multitudes following their way towards the
at great & specious building & it came to pass that many were drowned in the del-
ths of the fountain & many were lost from his view wandering in a large wood & great des-
the multitude that did enter into that strange building & after that they did enter into that
building they did build the ^{foundations} ~~foundations~~ of stonework & those that were partaking of the fruit also
but one ^{loaded} ~~loaded~~ heeded them not these are the words of my father ^{and} many ^{as} ~~as~~ heeded them
had fallen away & I amon & I amon partook not of the fruit ^{and} many ^{as} ~~as~~ heeded them
that of the my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision which I have written
he said unto us because of these things which he saw in a vision he exceedingly ^{for} ~~for~~ feared
they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord & he did exhort them ^{for} ~~for~~ that
feeling of a tender parent that they would hearken to his words in that perfect love
would be merciful to them & not cast them off for any ^{for} ~~for~~ did present unto them & of
that he had preached unto them & also prophesied unto them of many things he had
to keep the commandments of the Lord & he did cease speaking unto them &
things did my father see & he saw & speak as he dwelt in that internally of
also of many more things which cannot be written ^{for} ~~for~~ plates & now
of these concerning his plates he said they are not ^{for} ~~for~~ plates which I have

114
Full account of the history of my people from the plates upon which I make a full ac-
count of my people I have given the name of Lehi wherefore they are called the plates of
Lehi after mine own name & these plates also are called the plates of Lehi in virtue
less I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates for
the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my
people & upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the Kings
& the wars & contentions of my people wherefore these plates are for the more part of the
ministry & the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the Kings & the wars & con-
tentions of my people wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a
special purpose in him which purpose I know not but the Lord knoweth all things from the
beginning wherefore he hath prepared a way to accomplish all his works among the children
of men for he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words & thus it is Amen.
Chap. III. Now I Lehi proceed to give an account upon these plates of my pro-
ceedings & my reign & ministry wherefore to precede with mine account I must speak
somewhat of the things of my father & of my father-in-law he held it came to pass that of
his own father-in-law made an end of speaking the words of his dream & also of exhorting them
to all diligence he spake unto them concerning the Jews that after they were de-
stroyed even that great City Jerusalem & that many ^{he} were carried away captive into
Babylon according to the word of the Lord they should return again ^{they should be} ^{they should be}
brought back out of Captivity & after they were brought back out of Captivity they
should again the land of their inheritance & they gave him hands & feet from the time that my
father left Jerusalem & that would the Lord God raise up among the Jews a prophet
in a Christian; or, in other words, a saviour of the world & he also spoke concerning the
prophet who great a number had testified of these things concerning this Messiah of
whom he had spoken of the Redeemer of the world; wherefore, all mankind reason
about & in a fallen state & even would he sanctify should rely on this Redeemer &
he spoke also, concerning a prophet, ^{who} should come before the Messiah to prepare the
way of the Lord & even he should go forth & cry in the wilderness; prepare ye the way of
the Lord, make his paths straight for he standeth one among you whom ye know not
he is mightier than I whose shall I catch I am not worthy to unloose & must I pa-
rent my father concerning this thing & my father said that he should baptize in the
Jordan & he also spoke that he should baptize with water; & even so
he should baptize the Jews with water & after that he had baptized the Jews
with water he should be holy & be seen that he had baptized the Jews of the
world & should take away the sin of the world & it came to pass that after my father had
spoken these words, ^{he} he spake unto my father-in-law ^{concerning} ^{the} ^{the}
which should be preached among the Jews & also concerning the Redeemer of the world

The Jews in unbelief of ~~that~~ ^{who} they had slain the Father ^{which} should come
of whom ^{dead} that he had been slain he should rise from the ~~dead~~ ^{dead} & should make him
self manifest by the Holy Ghost unto the Gentiles ^{who} ¹⁸ ¹⁹ ²⁰ ²¹ ²² ²³ ²⁴ ²⁵ ²⁶ ²⁷ ²⁸ ²⁹ ³⁰ ³¹ ³² ³³ ³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶ ³⁷ ³⁸ ³⁹ ⁴⁰ ⁴¹ ⁴² ⁴³ ⁴⁴ ⁴⁵ ⁴⁶ ⁴⁷ ⁴⁸ ⁴⁹ ⁵⁰ ⁵¹ ⁵² ⁵³ ⁵⁴ ⁵⁵ ⁵⁶ ⁵⁷ ⁵⁸ ⁵⁹ ⁶⁰ ⁶¹ ⁶² ⁶³ ⁶⁴ ⁶⁵ ⁶⁶ ⁶⁷ ⁶⁸ ⁶⁹ ⁷⁰ ⁷¹ ⁷² ⁷³ ⁷⁴ ⁷⁵ ⁷⁶ ⁷⁷ ⁷⁸ ⁷⁹ ⁸⁰ ⁸¹ ⁸² ⁸³ ⁸⁴ ⁸⁵ ⁸⁶ ⁸⁷ ⁸⁸ ⁸⁹ ⁹⁰ ⁹¹ ⁹² ⁹³ ⁹⁴ ⁹⁵ ⁹⁶ ⁹⁷ ⁹⁸ ⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰ ¹⁰¹ ¹⁰² ¹⁰³ ¹⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁹ ¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹ ¹¹² ¹¹³ ¹¹⁴ ¹¹⁵ ¹¹⁶ ¹¹⁷ ¹¹⁸ ¹¹⁹ ¹²⁰ ¹²¹ ¹²² ¹²³ ¹²⁴ ¹²⁵ ¹²⁶ ¹²⁷ ¹²⁸ ¹²⁹ ¹³⁰ ¹³¹ ¹³² ¹³³ ¹³⁴ ¹³⁵ ¹³⁶ ¹³⁷ ¹³⁸ ¹³⁹ ¹⁴⁰ ¹⁴¹ ¹⁴² ¹⁴³ ¹⁴⁴ ¹⁴⁵ ¹⁴⁶ ¹⁴⁷ ¹⁴⁸ ¹⁴⁹ ¹⁵⁰ ¹⁵¹ ¹⁵² ¹⁵³ ¹⁵⁴ ¹⁵⁵ ¹⁵⁶ ¹⁵⁷ ¹⁵⁸ ¹⁵⁹ ¹⁶⁰ ¹⁶¹ ¹⁶² ¹⁶³ ¹⁶⁴ ¹⁶⁵ ¹⁶⁶ ¹⁶⁷ ¹⁶⁸ ¹⁶⁹ ¹⁷⁰ ¹⁷¹ ¹⁷² ¹⁷³ ¹⁷⁴ ¹⁷⁵ ¹⁷⁶ ¹⁷⁷ ¹⁷⁸ ¹⁷⁹ ¹⁸⁰ ¹⁸¹ ¹⁸² ¹⁸³ ¹⁸⁴ ¹⁸⁵ ¹⁸⁶ ¹⁸⁷ ¹⁸⁸ ¹⁸⁹ ¹⁹⁰ ¹⁹¹ ¹⁹² ¹⁹³ ¹⁹⁴ ¹⁹⁵ ¹⁹⁶ ¹⁹⁷ ¹⁹⁸ ¹⁹⁹ ²⁰⁰ ²⁰¹ ²⁰² ²⁰³ ²⁰⁴ ²⁰⁵ ²⁰⁶ ²⁰⁷ ²⁰⁸ ²⁰⁹ ²¹⁰ ²¹¹ ²¹² ²¹³ ²¹⁴ ²¹⁵ ²¹⁶ ²¹⁷ ²¹⁸ ²¹⁹ ²²⁰ ²²¹ ²²² ²²³ ²²⁴ ²²⁵ ²²⁶ ²²⁷ ²²⁸ ²²⁹ ²³⁰ ²³¹ ²³² ²³³ ²³⁴ ²³⁵ ²³⁶ ²³⁷ ²³⁸ ²³⁹ ²⁴⁰ ²⁴¹ ²⁴² ²⁴³ ²⁴⁴ ²⁴⁵ ²⁴⁶ ²⁴⁷ ²⁴⁸ ²⁴⁹ ²⁵⁰ ²⁵¹ ²⁵² ²⁵³ ²⁵⁴ ²⁵⁵ ²⁵⁶ ²⁵⁷ ²⁵⁸ ²⁵⁹ ²⁶⁰ ²⁶¹ ²⁶² ²⁶³ ²⁶⁴ ²⁶⁵ ²⁶⁶ ²⁶⁷ ²⁶⁸ ²⁶⁹ ²⁷⁰ ²⁷¹ ²⁷² ²⁷³ ²⁷⁴ ²⁷⁵ ²⁷⁶ ²⁷⁷ ²⁷⁸ ²⁷⁹ ²⁸⁰ ²⁸¹ ²⁸² ²⁸³ ²⁸⁴ ²⁸⁵ ²⁸⁶ ²⁸⁷ ²⁸⁸ ²⁸⁹ ²⁹⁰ ²⁹¹ ²⁹² ²⁹³ ²⁹⁴ ²⁹⁵ ²⁹⁶ ²⁹⁷ ²⁹⁸ ²⁹⁹ ³⁰⁰ ³⁰¹ ³⁰² ³⁰³ ³⁰⁴ ³⁰⁵ ³⁰⁶ ³⁰⁷ ³⁰⁸ ³⁰⁹ ³¹⁰ ³¹¹ ³¹² ³¹³ ³¹⁴ ³¹⁵ ³¹⁶ ³¹⁷ ³¹⁸ ³¹⁹ ³²⁰ ³²¹ ³²² ³²³ ³²⁴ ³²⁵ ³²⁶ ³²⁷ ³²⁸ ³²⁹ ³³⁰ ³³¹ ³³² ³³³ ³³⁴ ³³⁵ ³³⁶ ³³⁷ ³³⁸ ³³⁹ ³⁴⁰ ³⁴¹ ³⁴² ³⁴³ ³⁴⁴ ³⁴⁵ ³⁴⁶ ³⁴⁷ ³⁴⁸ ³⁴⁹ ³⁵⁰ ³⁵¹ ³⁵² ³⁵³ ³⁵⁴ ³⁵⁵ ³⁵⁶ ³⁵⁷ ³⁵⁸ ³⁵⁹ ³⁶⁰ ³⁶¹ ³⁶² ³⁶³ ³⁶⁴ ³⁶⁵ ³⁶⁶ ³⁶⁷ ³⁶⁸ ³⁶⁹ ³⁷⁰ ³⁷¹ ³⁷² ³⁷³ ³⁷⁴ ³⁷⁵ ³⁷⁶ ³⁷⁷ ³⁷⁸ ³⁷⁹ ³⁸⁰ ³⁸¹ ³⁸² ³⁸³ ³⁸⁴ ³⁸⁵ ³⁸⁶ ³⁸⁷ ³⁸⁸ ³⁸⁹ ³⁹⁰ ³⁹¹ ³⁹² ³⁹³ ³⁹⁴ ³⁹⁵ ³⁹⁶ ³⁹⁷ ³⁹⁸ ³⁹⁹ ⁴⁰⁰ ⁴⁰¹ ⁴⁰² ⁴⁰³ ⁴⁰⁴ ⁴⁰⁵ ⁴⁰⁶ ⁴⁰⁷ ⁴⁰⁸ ⁴⁰⁹ ⁴¹⁰ ⁴¹¹ ⁴¹² ⁴¹³ ⁴¹⁴ ⁴¹⁵ ⁴¹⁶ ⁴¹⁷ ⁴¹⁸ ⁴¹⁹ ⁴²⁰ ⁴²¹ ⁴²² ⁴²³ ⁴²⁴ ⁴²⁵ ⁴²⁶ ⁴²⁷ ⁴²⁸ ⁴²⁹ ⁴³⁰ ⁴³¹ ⁴³² ⁴³³ ⁴³⁴ ⁴³⁵ ⁴³⁶ ⁴³⁷ ⁴³⁸ ⁴³⁹ ⁴⁴⁰ ⁴⁴¹ ⁴⁴² ⁴⁴³ ⁴⁴⁴ ⁴⁴⁵ ⁴⁴⁶ ⁴⁴⁷ ⁴⁴⁸ ⁴⁴⁹ ⁴⁵⁰ ⁴⁵¹ ⁴⁵² ⁴⁵³ ⁴⁵⁴ ⁴⁵⁵ ⁴⁵⁶ ⁴⁵⁷ ⁴⁵⁸ ⁴⁵⁹ ⁴⁶⁰ ⁴⁶¹ ⁴⁶² ⁴⁶³ ⁴⁶⁴ ⁴⁶⁵ ⁴⁶⁶ ⁴⁶⁷ ⁴⁶⁸ ⁴⁶⁹ ⁴⁷⁰ ⁴⁷¹ ⁴⁷² ⁴⁷³ ⁴⁷⁴ ⁴⁷⁵ ⁴⁷⁶ ⁴⁷⁷ ⁴⁷⁸ ⁴⁷⁹ ⁴⁸⁰ ⁴⁸¹ ⁴⁸² ⁴⁸³ ⁴⁸⁴ ⁴⁸⁵ ⁴⁸⁶ ⁴⁸⁷ ⁴⁸⁸ ⁴⁸⁹ ⁴⁹⁰ ⁴⁹¹ ⁴⁹² ⁴⁹³ ⁴⁹⁴ ⁴⁹⁵ ⁴⁹⁶ ⁴⁹⁷ ⁴⁹⁸ ⁴⁹⁹ ⁵⁰⁰ ⁵⁰¹ ⁵⁰² ⁵⁰³ ⁵⁰⁴ ⁵⁰⁵ ⁵⁰⁶ ⁵⁰⁷ ⁵⁰⁸ ⁵⁰⁹ ⁵¹⁰ ⁵¹¹ ⁵¹² ⁵¹³ ⁵¹⁴ ⁵¹⁵ ⁵¹⁶ ⁵¹⁷ ⁵¹⁸ ⁵¹⁹ ⁵²⁰ ⁵²¹ ⁵²² ⁵²³ ⁵²⁴ ⁵²⁵ ⁵²⁶ ⁵²⁷ ⁵²⁸ ⁵²⁹ ⁵³⁰ ⁵³¹ ⁵³² ⁵³³ ⁵³⁴ ⁵³⁵ ⁵³⁶ ⁵³⁷ ⁵³⁸ ⁵³⁹ ⁵⁴⁰ ⁵⁴¹ ⁵⁴² ⁵⁴³ ⁵⁴⁴ ⁵⁴⁵ ⁵⁴⁶ ⁵⁴⁷ ⁵⁴⁸ ⁵⁴⁹ ⁵⁵⁰ ⁵⁵¹ ⁵⁵² ⁵⁵³ ⁵⁵⁴ ⁵⁵⁵ ⁵⁵⁶ ⁵⁵⁷ ⁵⁵⁸ ⁵⁵⁹ ⁵⁶⁰ ⁵⁶¹ ⁵⁶² ⁵⁶³ ⁵⁶⁴ ⁵⁶⁵ ⁵⁶⁶ ⁵⁶⁷ ⁵⁶⁸ ⁵⁶⁹ ⁵⁷⁰ ⁵⁷¹ ⁵⁷² ⁵⁷³ ⁵⁷⁴ ⁵⁷⁵ ⁵⁷⁶ ⁵⁷⁷ ⁵⁷⁸ ⁵⁷⁹ ⁵⁸⁰ ⁵⁸¹ ⁵⁸² ⁵⁸³ ⁵⁸⁴ ⁵⁸⁵ ⁵⁸⁶ ⁵⁸⁷ ⁵⁸⁸ ⁵⁸⁹ ⁵⁹⁰ ⁵⁹¹ ⁵⁹² ⁵⁹³ ⁵⁹⁴ ⁵⁹⁵ ⁵⁹⁶ ⁵⁹⁷ ⁵⁹⁸ ⁵⁹⁹ ⁶⁰⁰ ⁶⁰¹ ⁶⁰² ⁶⁰³ ⁶⁰⁴ ⁶⁰⁵ ⁶⁰⁶ ⁶⁰⁷ ⁶⁰⁸ ⁶⁰⁹ ⁶¹⁰ ⁶¹¹ ⁶¹² ⁶¹³ ⁶¹⁴ ⁶¹⁵ ⁶¹⁶ ⁶¹⁷ ⁶¹⁸ ⁶¹⁹ ⁶²⁰ ⁶²¹ ⁶²² ⁶²³ ⁶²⁴ ⁶²⁵ ⁶²⁶ ⁶²⁷ ⁶²⁸ ⁶²⁹ ⁶³⁰ ⁶³¹ ⁶³² ⁶³³ ⁶³⁴ ⁶³⁵ ⁶³⁶ ⁶³⁷ ⁶³⁸ ⁶³⁹ ⁶⁴⁰ ⁶⁴¹ ⁶⁴² ⁶⁴³ ⁶⁴⁴ ⁶⁴⁵ ⁶⁴⁶ ⁶⁴⁷ ⁶⁴⁸ ⁶⁴⁹ ⁶⁵⁰ ⁶⁵¹ ⁶⁵² ⁶⁵³ ⁶⁵⁴ ⁶⁵⁵ ⁶⁵⁶ ⁶⁵⁷ ⁶⁵⁸ ⁶⁵⁹ ⁶⁶⁰ ⁶⁶¹ ⁶⁶² ⁶⁶³ ⁶⁶⁴ ⁶⁶⁵ ⁶⁶⁶ ⁶⁶⁷ ⁶⁶⁸ ⁶⁶⁹ ⁶⁷⁰ ⁶⁷¹ ⁶⁷² ⁶⁷³ ⁶⁷⁴ ⁶⁷⁵ ⁶⁷⁶ ⁶⁷⁷ ⁶⁷⁸ ⁶⁷⁹ ⁶⁸⁰ ⁶⁸¹ ⁶⁸² ⁶⁸³ ⁶⁸⁴ ⁶⁸⁵ ⁶⁸⁶ ⁶⁸⁷ ⁶⁸⁸ ⁶⁸⁹ ⁶⁹⁰ ⁶⁹¹ ⁶⁹² ⁶⁹³ ⁶⁹⁴ ⁶⁹⁵ ⁶⁹⁶ ⁶⁹⁷ ⁶⁹⁸ ⁶⁹⁹ ⁷⁰⁰ ⁷⁰¹ ⁷⁰² ⁷⁰³ ⁷⁰⁴ ⁷⁰⁵ ⁷⁰⁶ ⁷⁰⁷ ⁷⁰⁸ ⁷⁰⁹ ⁷¹⁰ ⁷¹¹ ⁷¹² ⁷¹³ ⁷¹⁴ ⁷¹⁵ ⁷¹⁶ ⁷¹⁷ ⁷¹⁸ ⁷¹⁹ ⁷²⁰ ⁷²¹ ⁷²² ⁷²³ ⁷²⁴ ⁷²⁵ ⁷²⁶ ⁷²⁷ ⁷²⁸ ⁷²⁹ ⁷³⁰ ⁷³¹ ⁷³² ⁷³³ ⁷³⁴ ⁷³⁵ ⁷³⁶ ⁷³⁷ ⁷³⁸ ⁷³⁹ ⁷⁴⁰ ⁷⁴¹ ⁷⁴² ⁷⁴³ ⁷⁴⁴ ⁷⁴⁵ ⁷⁴⁶ ⁷⁴⁷ ⁷⁴⁸ ⁷⁴⁹ ⁷⁵⁰ ⁷⁵¹ ⁷⁵² ⁷⁵³ ⁷⁵⁴ ⁷⁵⁵ ⁷⁵⁶ ⁷⁵⁷ ⁷⁵⁸ ⁷⁵⁹ ⁷⁶⁰ ⁷⁶¹ ⁷⁶² ⁷⁶³ ⁷⁶⁴ ⁷⁶⁵ ⁷⁶⁶ ⁷⁶⁷ ⁷⁶⁸ ⁷⁶⁹ ⁷⁷⁰ ⁷⁷¹ ⁷⁷² ⁷⁷³ ⁷⁷⁴ ⁷⁷⁵ ⁷⁷⁶ ⁷⁷⁷ ⁷⁷⁸ ⁷⁷⁹ ⁷⁸⁰ ⁷⁸¹ ⁷⁸² ⁷⁸³ ⁷⁸⁴ ⁷⁸⁵ ⁷⁸⁶ ⁷⁸⁷ ⁷⁸⁸ ⁷⁸⁹ ⁷⁹⁰ ⁷⁹¹ ⁷⁹² ⁷⁹³ ⁷⁹⁴ ⁷⁹⁵ ⁷⁹⁶ ⁷⁹⁷ ⁷⁹⁸ ⁷⁹⁹ ⁸⁰⁰ ⁸⁰¹ ⁸⁰² ⁸⁰³ ⁸⁰⁴ ⁸⁰⁵ ⁸⁰⁶ ⁸⁰⁷ ⁸⁰⁸ ⁸⁰⁹ ⁸¹⁰ ⁸¹¹ ⁸¹² ⁸¹³ ⁸¹⁴ ⁸¹⁵ ⁸¹⁶ ⁸¹⁷ ⁸¹⁸ ⁸¹⁹ ⁸²⁰ ⁸²¹ ⁸²² ⁸²³ ⁸²⁴ ⁸²⁵ ⁸²⁶ ⁸²⁷ ⁸²⁸ ⁸²⁹ ⁸³⁰ ⁸³¹ ⁸³² ⁸³³ ⁸³⁴ ⁸³⁵ ⁸³⁶ ⁸³⁷ ⁸³⁸ ⁸³⁹ ⁸⁴⁰ ⁸⁴¹ ⁸⁴² ⁸⁴³ ⁸⁴⁴ ⁸⁴⁵ ⁸⁴⁶ ⁸⁴⁷ ⁸⁴⁸ ⁸⁴⁹ ⁸⁵⁰ ⁸⁵¹ ⁸⁵² ⁸⁵³ ⁸⁵⁴ ⁸⁵⁵ ⁸⁵⁶ ⁸⁵⁷ ⁸⁵⁸ ⁸⁵⁹ ⁸⁶⁰ ⁸⁶¹ ⁸⁶² ⁸⁶³ ⁸⁶⁴ ⁸⁶⁵ ⁸⁶⁶ ⁸⁶⁷ ⁸⁶⁸ ⁸⁶⁹ ⁸⁷⁰ ⁸⁷¹ ⁸⁷² ⁸⁷³ ⁸⁷⁴ ⁸⁷⁵ ⁸⁷⁶ ⁸⁷⁷ ⁸⁷⁸ ⁸⁷⁹ ⁸⁸⁰ ⁸⁸¹ ⁸⁸² ⁸⁸³ ⁸⁸⁴ ⁸⁸⁵ ⁸⁸⁶ ⁸⁸⁷ ⁸⁸⁸ ⁸⁸⁹ ⁸⁹⁰ ⁸⁹¹ ⁸⁹² ⁸⁹³ ⁸⁹⁴ ⁸⁹⁵ ⁸⁹⁶ ⁸⁹⁷ ⁸⁹⁸ ⁸⁹⁹ ⁹⁰⁰ ⁹⁰¹ ⁹⁰² ⁹⁰³ ⁹⁰⁴ ⁹⁰⁵ ⁹⁰⁶ ⁹⁰⁷ ⁹⁰⁸ ⁹⁰⁹ ⁹¹⁰ ⁹¹¹ ⁹¹² ⁹¹³ ⁹¹⁴ ⁹¹⁵ ⁹¹⁶ ⁹¹⁷ ⁹¹⁸ ⁹¹⁹ ⁹²⁰ ⁹²¹ ⁹²² ⁹²³ ⁹²⁴ ⁹²⁵ ⁹²⁶ ⁹²⁷ ⁹²⁸ ⁹²⁹ ⁹³⁰ ⁹³¹ ⁹³² ⁹³³ ⁹³⁴ ⁹³⁵ ⁹³⁶ ⁹³⁷ ⁹³⁸ ⁹³⁹ ⁹⁴⁰ ⁹⁴¹ ⁹⁴² ⁹⁴³ ⁹⁴⁴ ⁹⁴⁵ ⁹⁴⁶ ⁹⁴⁷ ⁹⁴⁸ ⁹⁴⁹ ⁹⁵⁰ ⁹⁵¹ ⁹⁵² ⁹⁵³ ⁹⁵⁴ ⁹⁵⁵ ⁹⁵⁶ ⁹⁵⁷ ⁹⁵⁸ ⁹⁵⁹ ⁹⁶⁰ ⁹⁶¹ ⁹⁶² ⁹⁶³ ⁹⁶⁴ ⁹⁶⁵ ⁹⁶⁶ ⁹⁶⁷ ⁹⁶⁸ ⁹⁶⁹ ⁹⁷⁰ ⁹⁷¹ ⁹⁷² ⁹⁷³ ⁹⁷⁴ ⁹⁷⁵ ⁹⁷⁶ ⁹⁷⁷ ⁹⁷⁸ ⁹⁷⁹ ⁹⁸⁰ ⁹⁸¹ ⁹⁸² ⁹⁸³ ⁹⁸⁴ ⁹⁸⁵ ⁹⁸⁶ ⁹⁸⁷ ⁹⁸⁸ ⁹⁸⁹ ⁹⁹⁰ ⁹⁹¹ ⁹⁹² ⁹⁹³ ⁹⁹⁴ ⁹⁹⁵ ⁹⁹⁶ ⁹⁹⁷ ⁹⁹⁸ ⁹⁹⁹ ¹⁰⁰⁰ ¹⁰⁰¹ ¹⁰⁰² ¹⁰⁰³ ¹⁰⁰⁴ ¹⁰⁰⁵ ¹⁰⁰⁶ ¹⁰⁰⁷ ¹⁰⁰⁸ ¹⁰⁰⁹ ¹⁰¹⁰ ¹⁰¹¹ ¹⁰¹² ¹⁰¹³ ¹⁰¹⁴ ¹⁰¹⁵ ¹⁰¹⁶ ¹⁰¹⁷ ¹⁰¹⁸ ¹⁰¹⁹ ¹⁰²⁰ ¹⁰²¹ ¹⁰²² ¹⁰²³ ¹⁰²⁴ ¹⁰²⁵ ¹⁰²⁶ ¹⁰²⁷ ¹⁰²⁸ ¹⁰²⁹ ¹⁰³⁰ ¹⁰³¹ ¹⁰³² ¹⁰³³ ¹⁰³⁴ ¹⁰³⁵ ¹⁰³⁶ ¹⁰³⁷ ¹⁰³⁸ ¹⁰³⁹ ¹⁰⁴⁰ ¹⁰⁴¹ ¹⁰⁴² ¹⁰⁴³ ¹⁰⁴⁴ ¹⁰⁴⁵ ¹⁰⁴⁶ ¹⁰⁴⁷ ¹⁰⁴⁸ ¹⁰⁴⁹ ¹⁰⁵⁰ ¹⁰⁵¹ ¹⁰⁵² ¹⁰⁵³ ¹⁰⁵⁴ ¹⁰⁵⁵ ¹⁰⁵⁶ ¹⁰⁵⁷ ¹⁰⁵⁸ ¹⁰⁵⁹ ¹⁰⁶⁰ ¹⁰⁶¹ ¹⁰⁶² ¹⁰⁶³ ¹⁰⁶⁴ ¹⁰⁶⁵ ¹⁰⁶⁶ ¹⁰⁶⁷ ¹⁰⁶⁸ ¹⁰⁶⁹ ¹⁰⁷⁰ ¹⁰⁷¹ ¹⁰⁷² ¹⁰⁷³ ¹⁰⁷⁴ ¹⁰⁷⁵ ¹⁰⁷⁶ ¹⁰⁷⁷ ¹⁰⁷⁸ ¹⁰⁷⁹ ¹⁰⁸⁰ ¹⁰⁸¹ ¹⁰⁸² ¹⁰⁸³ ¹⁰⁸⁴ ¹⁰⁸⁵ ¹⁰⁸⁶ ¹⁰⁸⁷ ¹⁰⁸⁸ ¹⁰⁸⁹ ¹⁰⁹⁰ ¹⁰⁹¹ ¹⁰⁹² ¹⁰⁹³ ¹⁰⁹⁴ ¹⁰⁹⁵ ¹⁰⁹⁶ ¹⁰⁹⁷ ¹⁰⁹⁸ ¹⁰⁹⁹ ¹¹⁰⁰ ¹¹⁰¹ ¹¹⁰² ¹¹⁰³ ¹¹⁰⁴ ¹¹⁰⁵ ¹¹⁰⁶ ¹¹⁰⁷ ¹¹⁰⁸ ¹¹⁰⁹ ¹¹¹⁰ ¹¹¹¹ ¹¹¹² ¹¹¹³ ¹¹¹⁴ ¹¹¹⁵ ¹¹¹⁶ ¹¹¹⁷ ¹¹¹⁸ ¹¹¹⁹ ¹¹²⁰ ¹¹²¹ ¹¹²² ¹¹²³ ¹¹²⁴ ¹¹²⁵ ¹¹²⁶ ¹¹²⁷ ¹¹²⁸ ¹¹²⁹ ¹¹³⁰ ¹¹³¹ ¹¹³² ¹¹³³ ¹¹³⁴ ¹¹³⁵ ¹¹³⁶ ¹¹³⁷ ¹¹³⁸ ¹¹³⁹ ¹¹⁴⁰ ¹¹⁴¹ ¹¹⁴² ¹¹⁴³ ¹¹⁴⁴ ¹¹⁴⁵ ¹¹⁴⁶ ¹¹⁴⁷ ¹¹⁴⁸ ¹¹⁴⁹ ¹¹⁵⁰ ¹¹⁵¹ ¹¹⁵² ¹¹⁵³ ¹¹⁵⁴ ¹¹⁵⁵ ¹¹⁵⁶ ¹¹⁵⁷ ¹¹⁵⁸ ¹¹⁵⁹ ¹¹⁶⁰ ¹¹⁶¹ ¹¹⁶² ¹¹⁶³ ¹¹⁶⁴ ¹¹⁶⁵ ¹¹⁶⁶ ¹¹⁶⁷ ¹¹⁶⁸ ¹¹⁶⁹ ¹¹⁷⁰ ¹¹⁷¹ ¹¹⁷² ¹¹⁷³ ¹¹⁷⁴ ¹¹⁷⁵ ¹¹⁷⁶ ¹¹⁷⁷ ¹¹⁷⁸ ¹¹⁷⁹ ¹¹⁸⁰ ¹¹⁸¹ ¹¹⁸² ¹¹⁸³ ¹¹⁸⁴ ¹¹⁸⁵ ¹¹⁸⁶ ¹¹⁸⁷ ¹¹⁸⁸ ¹¹⁸⁹ ¹¹⁹⁰ ¹¹⁹¹ ¹¹⁹² ¹¹⁹³ ¹¹⁹⁴ ¹¹⁹⁵ ¹¹⁹⁶ ¹¹⁹⁷ ¹¹⁹⁸ ¹¹⁹⁹ ¹²⁰⁰ ¹²⁰¹ ¹²⁰² ¹²⁰³ ¹²⁰⁴ ¹²⁰⁵ ¹²⁰⁶ ¹²⁰⁷ ¹²⁰⁸ ¹²⁰⁹ ¹²¹⁰ ¹²¹¹ ¹²¹² ¹²¹³ ¹²¹⁴ ¹²¹⁵ ¹²¹⁶ ¹²¹⁷ ¹²¹⁸ ¹²¹⁹ ¹²²⁰ ¹²²¹ ¹²²² ¹²²³ ¹²²⁴ ¹²²⁵ ¹²²⁶ ¹²²⁷ ¹²²⁸ ¹²²⁹ ¹²³⁰ ¹²³¹ ¹²³² ¹²³³ ¹²³⁴ ¹²³⁵ ¹²³⁶ ¹²³⁷ ¹²³⁸ ¹²³⁹ ¹²⁴⁰ ¹²⁴¹ ¹²⁴² ¹²⁴³ ¹²⁴⁴ ¹²⁴⁵ ¹²⁴⁶ ¹²⁴⁷ ¹²⁴⁸ ¹²⁴⁹ ¹²⁵⁰ ¹²⁵¹ ¹²⁵² ¹²⁵³ ¹²⁵⁴ ¹²⁵⁵ ¹²⁵⁶ ¹²⁵⁷ ¹²⁵⁸ ¹²⁵⁹ ¹²⁶⁰ ¹²⁶¹ ¹²⁶² ¹²⁶³ ¹²⁶⁴ ¹²⁶⁵ ¹²⁶⁶ ¹²⁶⁷ ¹²⁶⁸ ¹²⁶⁹ ¹²⁷⁰ ¹²⁷¹ ¹²⁷² ¹²⁷³ ¹²⁷⁴ ¹²⁷⁵ ¹²⁷⁶ ¹²⁷⁷ ¹²⁷⁸ ¹²⁷⁹ ¹²⁸⁰ ¹²⁸¹ ¹²⁸² ¹²⁸³ ¹²⁸⁴ ¹²⁸⁵ ¹²⁸⁶ ¹²⁸⁷ ¹²⁸⁸ ¹²⁸⁹ ¹²⁹⁰ ¹²⁹¹ ¹²⁹² ¹²⁹³ ¹²⁹⁴ ¹²⁹⁵ ¹²⁹⁶ ¹²⁹⁷ ¹²⁹⁸ ¹²⁹⁹ ¹³⁰⁰ ¹³⁰¹ ¹³⁰² ¹³⁰³ ¹³⁰⁴ ¹³⁰⁵ ¹³⁰⁶ ¹³⁰⁷ ¹³⁰⁸ ¹³⁰⁹ ¹³¹⁰ ¹³¹¹ ¹³¹² ¹³¹³ ¹³¹⁴ ¹³¹⁵ ¹³¹⁶ ¹³¹⁷ ¹³¹⁸ ¹³¹⁹ ¹³²⁰ ¹³²¹ ¹³²² ¹³²³ ¹³²⁴ ¹³²⁵ ¹³²⁶ ¹³²⁷ ¹³²⁸ ¹³²⁹ ¹³³⁰ ¹³³¹ ¹³³² ¹³³³ ¹³³⁴ ¹³³⁵ ¹³³⁶ ¹³³⁷ ¹³³⁸ ¹³³⁹ ¹³⁴⁰ ¹³⁴¹

Then known unto me ^{that} I sat pondering in mine heart I was
right away in the spirit of the Lord, yea into an exceeding high mountain, where
the Lincen had before seen & upon which I never had before sat my feet
& the spirit ^{said} unto me behold what desirest thou & I ^{said} I desire
to behold the things which my father saw & the spirit said unto me believe
it that that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken & I said yea
thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father & when I had
spoken these words the spirit cried with a loud voice saying Hark ye to the
Lord the most high God for he is God on all the earth yea even about all
the blessed art thou Ophi because thou believest in the Son of the most
high God wherefore thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired
& behold & behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign that after the
last beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted thou shalt
also behold a man descending out of Heaven & him thou shalt see witness &
after that ye have witnessed him ye shall hear a sound that it is the Son of
God & it came to pass that the spirit ^{said} unto me look & I looked & be-
held a tree & it was like unto the tree which my father had seen & the hear-
thens was far beyond yea exceeding of all beauty & the whiteness thereof ^{was}
exceed the whiteness of the driven snow & it came to pass that after ^{he}
had seen the tree I said unto the spirit "behold thou hast shown unto me
the tree which is precious above all & he ^{said} unto me what desirest thou
& I said unto him to know the interpretation thereof for I spake unto him
as a man speaketh & he beheld that he was in the form of a man yet with-
out the less I knew that it was the spirit of the Lord & he spake unto me
as a man speaketh ^{with} another & it came to pass that he said unto me look
I looked as if to look upon him & I saw him not for he had gone from before
of presence & it came to pass that I looked & beheld the great City Jerusalem
& also other Cities & I beheld the City of Nazareth & in the City of Nazareth I
beheld a virgin & she was exceeding fair & white & it came to pass that I
saw the heavens open & an Angel came down & stood before me & he ^{said}
unto me Ophi what beholdest thou & I ^{said} unto him a virgin on-
ly beautiful & fair above all other virgins & he ^{said} unto me knowest
thou the Condescension of God & I said unto him I know that he loveth his
Children nevertheless I do not know the meaning of all this & he ^{said}
unto me behold the virgin whom thou seest is the Mother of Jesus who
shall be born of the flesh & it came to pass that I beheld that she was a
Lamb in the spirit & after that I had been come I saw in the

117
And for the space of a time the Angel spake unto me saying look & I
looked & beheld the rings again bearing a Child in his arms & the Angel
said unto me behold the Lamb of God even the eternal Father & the
knowest the meaning of the tree which thy father saw & I answered him
saying yea it is the love of God which hideth itself a broad in the hearts of the children
of men wherefore it is the most desirable above all things & he spake unto
me saying yea it is the most precious to the soul & after that he had said these words
he said unto me looked & I looked & I beheld the Son of God appearing forth
among the children of men & I saw many fall down at his feet & worship
him & it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron which my
father had seen was the word of God which lead to the fountain of living
waters unto the tree of life which waters are a representation of the love of
God & I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of
the Angel said unto me again look & I beheld the Condescension of God & I
looked & beheld the redemption of the world of ^{whom} my father had spoken
I also beheld the ^{who} ~~hostel~~ ^{who} should prepare the way before him & the
Lamb of God went forth & was baptized of him & after that he was baptized
he beheld the heavens open & the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven & abode
upon him in the form of a dove & I beheld that he went forth minister-
ing unto the people in power & great glory & the multitudes were gather-
ed together to hear him & I beheld that they cast him out from among
them & I also beheld twelve others following him & it came to pass that
they were carried away in the spirit from before my face that I saw the
Father & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me again saying look & I
looked & I beheld the heavens open again & I saw angels descending upon
the children of men & they did minister unto them & he spake unto me again
saying look & I looked & I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the
children of men & I beheld multitudes of people ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{with} were ~~do all~~ ^{with}
which were afflicted of all manner of diseases & with Devils & unclean
spirits & the Angel spake & shewed all these things unto me & they were re-
deemed by the power of the Lamb of God & the Devils & the unclean spirits were
cast out & it came to pass that the Angel spake unto me again saying
look & I looked & I beheld the Lamb of God that he was taken by the
great everlasting God was judged of the world & I saw & heard second & I
saw that he was lifted up upon the Cross & slain for the sins of
the world & after that he was slain I saw multitudes of the
that they were gathered together to pick up the bodies of

115
Lamb in their midst the Twelve called by the angel of the Lord & the
multitude of the earth was gathered together & I beheld that they were
in a large & spacious building like unto the building which my
father saw & the Angel of the Lord spake unto me again saying behold the
world & the wisdom thereof ye have hold the floor of these hath gathered to-
gether to fight against the Twelve. About 60 of the Lamb & it came to pass that
I saw & heard & heard that the great & spacious building was the pride of
the world & it fell & the fall thereof was exceeding great & the Angel of the Lord
spoke unto me again saying that shall be the destruction of all nations
kindreds & tongues & people that shall fight against the twelve apostles
of the Lamb & it came to pass that the Angel said unto me look & beheld
thy seed & also the seed of thy brethren & I looked & beheld the land of
promise & I beheld multitudes of people yea even as the
sand of the sea & it came to pass that I
beheld multitudes gathered together to battle against the twelve
I beheld multitudes of wars & great slaughters with the sword among
my people & it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away
in the manner of wars & contentions in the land & I beheld many
cities yea even that I did not number them & it came to pass that I saw
a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise & I saw lightnings & I heard
thunderings & earthquakes & all manner of tumultuous noises & I saw the
earth & the rocks that they rent & I saw mountains tumbling into pieces
I saw the plains of the earth that they were broken up & I saw many cities
that they were sunk & I saw many that they were burned with fire & I
saw many that they did tumble to the earth because of the quaking thereof
& it came to pass that after I saw these things I saw the vapor of dark-
ness that it passed from off the face of the earth & behold I saw multitudes
who had fallen because of the great & terrible judgments of the
Lord & I saw the heavens open & the Lamb of God descending out of the
open & he came down & shined himself unto them & I also saw & heard
record that the Holy Ghost fell upon them & they were ordained
of God & chosen & the Angel spake unto me saying behold the
twelve apostles of the Lamb ^{who} shall be chosen to minister unto thy seed & he
unto me thou remain beneath the twelve apostles of the Lamb & behold
are they ^{who} shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel under the
twelve ministers of thy seed shall be ^{of} the seed of the
of Israel & these twelve ministers shall be

And he said I beheld the ^{angel} and righteous foremen for because of
their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in the
blood of the ^{angel} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~will~~ ^{will} ~~come~~ ^{come} ~~look~~ ^{look} ~~I~~ ^I ~~looked~~ ^{looked} ~~I~~ ^I ~~beheld~~ ^{beheld} ~~the~~ ^{the}
~~generations~~ ^{generations} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~away~~ ^{away} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~righteousness~~ ^{righteousness} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~their~~ ^{their} ~~garments~~ ^{garments} ~~will~~ ^{will} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~made~~ ^{made} ~~white~~ ^{white}
like even like unto the Lamb of God & the angel said unto me these
are made white in the blood of the Lamb because of their faith in him
And I ^{also} saw many of the fourth generation ^{which} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~away~~ ^{away} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~righteousness~~ ^{righteousness} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~came~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~I~~ ^I ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~multitudes~~ ^{multitudes} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{of} ~~land~~ ^{land} ~~gathered~~ ^{gathered} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~gether~~ ^{gether} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~angel~~ ^{angel} ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~behold~~ ^{behold} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~also~~ ^{also} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~thy~~ ^{thy} ~~brother~~ ^{brother} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~came~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~I~~ ^I ~~looked~~ ^{looked} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~beheld~~ ^{beheld} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~people~~ ^{people} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~gathered~~ ^{gathered} ~~together~~ ^{together} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~man~~ ^{man} ~~multitudes~~ ^{multitudes} ~~against~~ ^{against} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~brother~~ ^{brother} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~were~~ ^{were} ~~gathered~~ ^{gathered} ~~together~~ ^{together} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~bat~~ ^{bat} ~~tle~~ ^{tle}
and the angel spoke unto me saying behold the sanctified filthy water which
thy father saw yea even the river which he spoke of me he hath seen of and the depths
of hell & the mists of darkness are the temptations of the Devil which blind
with the eyes & harden the hearts of the children of men & leadeth them away
into broad ~~ways~~ ^{ways} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~may~~ ^{may} ~~perish~~ ^{perish} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~large~~ ^{large} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~vicious~~ ^{vicious} ~~buildings~~ ^{buildings} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~thy~~ ^{thy} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~made~~ ^{made} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~imagination~~ ^{imagination} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~pride~~ ^{pride} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~children~~ ^{children} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~men~~ ^{men}
& a great & terrible evil ^{which} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~diminish~~ ^{diminish} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~yea~~ ^{yea} ~~even~~ ^{even} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~fast~~ ^{fast} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~eternal~~ ^{eternal} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~Jesus~~ ^{Jesus} ~~Christ~~ ^{Christ} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Lamb~~ ^{Lamb} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~whom~~ ^{whom} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Holy~~ ^{Holy} ~~Ghost~~ ^{Ghost} ~~hears~~ ^{hears} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~from~~ ^{from} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~beginning~~ ^{beginning} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~world~~ ^{world} ~~untill~~ ^{untill} ~~this~~ ^{this} ~~time~~ ^{time} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~from~~ ^{from} ~~this~~ ^{this} ~~time~~ ^{time} ~~hence~~ ^{hence} ~~forth~~ ^{forth} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~forever~~ ^{forever} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~until~~ ^{until} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~angel~~ ^{angel} ~~speak~~ ^{speak} ~~these~~ ^{these} ~~words~~ ^{words} ~~I~~ ^I ~~beheld~~ ^{beheld} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~brother~~ ^{brother} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~contend~~ ^{contend} ~~against~~ ^{against} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~seed~~ ^{seed} ~~according~~ ^{according} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~angel~~ ^{angel}
& because of the pride of my seed & the temptations of the Devil I beheld that the
seed of my brother did overpower the people of my seed & it came to pass that I beheld
and saw the people of the seed of my brother that they had overcome my seed & they went
forth in multitudes upon the face of the land & I saw them gathered together in multitudes
and I saw many & numerous of wars among them yea wars & rumors of wars & many
generations pass away & the angel said unto me behold these shall dwell in unbelief
and it came to pass that I beheld that after they had dwelled in unbelief they
became a dark & loathsome & filthy people full of idleness & all manner of
iniquities & it came to pass that the angel spoke unto me saying look & I looked & I
beheld many nations & kingdoms & the angel said unto me what beholdest thou &
I said I behold many nations & kingdoms & he said unto me these are the nations &
kingdoms of the Gentiles & it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles
the foundation of a great Church & the angel said unto me behold the foundation
of a church which is most honorable above all other churches which
doth the Saints of God seek to enter therein & I saw the stream down

Covenants of the Lord which he hath made unto the House of Israel where
fore they are of great worth unto the Gentiles & the Angel of the Lord said unto me he
will shew thee that the Book provided forth from the mouth of a pen is written
receded forth from the mouth of a pen & contained the plainness of the Gospel of
the Lord of whom the Twelve Apostles have record & they have record according to
the truth which is in the Lamb of God wherefore these things go forth, from the
Pen & in parable unto the Gentiles according to the truth which is in God & after
that they go forth by the hand of the true line that is of the Lamb, from the Jews
unto the Gentiles is behold ~~after~~ ^{that} this shall be the foundation of a great & abo-
minable Church which is the most abominable above all others. Chorus of
Men behold they have taken away from the Gospel of the Lamb many parts which
are plain & most precious & also many Covenants of the Lord have they taken
away & all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of
the Lord that they might blind the eyes & harden the hearts of the Children of men who
after that said that after the Book hath gone forth through the hands of the great & abo-
minable Church that there are many plain & precious things taken away from the
Book which is the Book of the Lamb of God & after that these plain & precious things
were taken away it goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles & of them
goeth forth unto all the Nations of the Gentiles yea even across the burning waters
which they have seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of Captivity
in & they have seen because of the many plain & precious things which have been
taken away of the Book which were plain ^{understanding of the} unto the Children of men according to
the plainness which is in ^{the} Lamb of God & because of these things which are taken
away out of the Gospel of the Lamb ~~is~~ ^{are} exceeding great many. Do I stumble you
inasmuch that Satan hath great power over them nevertheless those beholdest
that the Gentiles ^{who} which have gone forth out of Captivity & have been testified up by
the power of God above all other Nations upon the face of the Land which is the
one above all other lands which is the land which the Lord God hath coven-
anted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance
in the land which thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles
shall utterly destroy the ^{not} ^{who} ^{any} ^{seed} of thy seed ^{among} ^{thy} ^{brethren}
neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren ^{neither}
all the Lord God will that the Gentiles shall never remain in that ^{state of} ^{blindness}
of ^{darkness} ^{which} ^{thou} ^{beholdest} that they are in because of the
most precious parts of the Gospel of the Lamb which ^{have} ^{been} ^{kept}
back by that abominable Church whose formation thou hast seen
wherefore saith the Lamb of God I will be manifest unto the Gentiles

unto the meeting of the remnant of the House of Israel in great judgment
I came to pass that the Angel of the Lord spake unto me saying behold, say
unto the Lamb of God after that he have visited the remnant of the House of Israel
of this remnant of ^{whom} I speak in the seed of thy father wherefore after
that I have visited them in judgment I will smite them by the hand of the
Gentiles & after that the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly because of the most
precious & precious hearts of the Gospel of the Lamb which ^{has} been kept hidden
by that abominable Church which is the Mother of Harlots saith the
Lamb inasmuch that I will bring forth unto the Gentiles in that day saith the
Lamb inasmuch that I will bring forth unto them in mine own person
much of my Gospel which shall be plain & precious saith the Lamb for behold
saith the Lamb I will manifest myself unto thy seed that they shall write
many things which he shall minister unto them which shall be plain &
precious & after that thy seed shall be destroyed & diminished in unbelief
& also the seed of thy brethren behold these things shall be hid up to come
forth unto the Gentiles by the gift & power of the Lamb & in them shall
be written my Gospel saith the Lamb & my Gospel & my Salvation & blessed
are they who shall seek to bring forth my Lion at that day for they shall have
the gift & the power of the Holy Ghost & if they endure unto the end they shall
be lifted up at the last day & shall be saved in the everlasting Kingdom of
the Lamb ye who shall publish peace that shall publish tidings of great
joy how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be & it came to pass
that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren & also the Book of the
Lamb of God which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Lion & I beheld that it
came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren & I beheld
that it came forth unto them I beheld other Books which came forth by the power
of the Lamb from the Gentiles unto them unto the Commencing of the Gentiles
& the remnant of the seed of my brethren & also to the Jews who were scattered
upon all the face of the earth that the records of the prophets & of the twelve
apostles of the Lamb are true & the Angel spake unto me saying that all
things which thou hast seen among the Gentiles shall establish the truth
of the faith which is of the twelve apostles of the Lamb & shall make known
the plain & precious things which have been taken away from them & shall
be known to all kindreds, tongues & people that the Lamb of God is
not taken & the servants of the world & that all men must come
him on day cannot be saved & they must come to him
it shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb

name shall be made known in the records of the seed as well as in the
 name of the Father & the Son of the Lamb wherefore they both shall be estab-
 lished in one for there is one God & one Saviour over all the earth & the
 line cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations both unto
 the Jews also unto the Gentiles & after that he hath manifested himself
 unto the Jews also unto the Gentiles then he shall manifest himself unto
 the Gentiles also unto the Jews & the last shall be first & the Lord shall be
 first & it shall come to pass that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of
 God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in mercy & also in
 power in very deed unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks & that
 they shall hear in their hearts against the Lamb of God & that they shall
 harden their hearts against the Lamb of God they shall be numbered among
 the seed of the fallen & they shall be numbered among the House of Israel
 & they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land & when they shall no
 more be brought down into captivity & the House of Israel shall no more be
 enslaved & that great pit which hath been digged for them by that great &
 terrible Pharaoh which was founded by the Devil & his Children
 that he might cast away the souls of men down to Hell yea that great pit
 which hath been digged in the destruction of men shall be filled by those
 who digged it unto their utter destruction with the Lamb of God not the des-
 truction of the soul & not the casting of it into that Hell which hath
 no end for he hath said that it is according to the captivity of the Devil & also ac-
 cording to the practice of man upon all those who will work wickedness & abo-
 mination before him & it came to pass that the Angel spoke unto me saying
 saying these things he said that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them
 & that they also knoweth concerning the Covenants of the Lord unto the Is-
 rael of Israel & that they also had heard that those who repent shall not must for-
 get therefore me he said unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their
 hearts against the Lamb of God for the time cometh with the Lamb of God
 at Jerusalem a great & a marvelous work among the Children of men
 a work which shall be everlasting either on the one hand or on the other
 either to the commencing of them unto peace & life eternal or unto the
 deliverance of them to the hardening of their hearts & the blindness of their
 eyes & unto their being brought down into captivity & also unto
 destruction both temporally & spiritually according to the capti-
 vity of the Devil of which I have spoken & it came to pass that when
 the Angel had spoken these words he said unto me rise

26
things of men & also many things which had been & he shall also write
concerning the end of the world wherefore the things which he shall write are
just & true & behold they are written in the Book which thou beheldst pro-
ceeding out of the mouth of the Jew & at the time they proceeded out of the
mouth of the Jew or at the time the Book proceeded out of the mouth of the
Jew the things which were written were plain & pure & more precious &
easy to the understanding of all men & behold the things which this ^{the} ~~the~~
Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen & thou
shalt behold the remainder shalt thou see but the things which thou
shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write for the Lord hath ordained
the Apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them & also others
which have been written to them hath he shown all things & they have written
them & they are sealed up to come forth in their purity according to the truth
which is in the Lamb in the ordinance of the Lord unto the House
of Israel & I prophesy that the name of the Apostle of
the Lamb was John according to the word of the Angel & behold this
is now forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which
I saw & heard wherefore the things which I have written suffice to me & I
have not written but a small part of the things which I saw & heard
and that I saw the things which my father saw & the Angel of the Lord
made them known unto me & now I make an end of speaking concern-
ing the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit & of all
the things which I saw are not ~~some~~ written the things which I have written
are true & thus it is Amen Chapter - 15

And it came to pass that after I prophesied had been carried away in the Spirit
& seen all these things I returned to the tent of my father & it came to pass that
I beheld my brethren & they were disputing one with another concerning the
things which my father had spoken unto them for he truly spoke many great
things unto them which ^{were} hard to be understood save a man should en-
quire of the Lord & they being hard in their hearts therefore they did not look
unto the Lord as they had ought & now I prophesied was grieved because of
the hardness of their hearts & also because of the things which I had seen &
knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness
of the children of men & it came to pass that I was overcome because
of my afflictions for I considered that mine afflictions were great
alone & because of the afflictions of my people & I had seen & I had

18
I said unto them that often I had received strength to speak unto my Brethren desiring to know of them the Cause of their disaffection & they said behold we cannot understand the words ^{which} our Father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the Olive tree & also concerning the Gentiles & I said unto them have ye enquired of the Lord & they said yea & I said unto them the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us behold I said unto them how is it that ye do not keep the Commandments of the Lord how is it that ye will perish because of the hardness of your hearts & ye do not remember the things which the Lord hath said if ye will not harden your hearts & ask me in faith believing that ye shall receive with diligence in keeping my Commandments surely these things shall be made known unto you & behold I say unto you that the House of Israel was compared unto an Olive tree by the spirit of the Lord which was in our fathers & behold are we not broken off from the House of Israel & are we not a branch of the House of Israel & now the thing which our Father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fullness of the Gentiles is that in the latter days when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief ^{shall be} for the space of many years & many generations after that the Promise shall be manifested because it is ready unto the Children of men then shall the fullness of the Gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles & from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed & at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the House of Israel & that they are the Covenant people of the Lord & then shall they know & come to the knowledge of their forefathers & also to the knowledge of the Gospel of their Redeemer which was ministered unto them last by him wherefore they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer & the many haunts of his doctrine that they may know how to come unto him & be saved & then at that day will they not praise & give praise unto their everlasting God their Lord & their Salvation & at that day will they not receive strength & nourishment from the true vine & will they not come unto the true fold of God & behold I say unto you yea they shall be remembered again among the House of Israel they shall be gathered & grafted in being a natural branch of the Olive tree into the true Olive tree & that is what our fathers mean & that he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after that they are scattered by the Gentiles & he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles

for the many ~~reasons~~ ^{cause} that he shall be master of the Jews on of the House of
Israel ~~wherefore~~ ^{and} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~master~~ ^{master} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~House~~ ^{House} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~Israel~~ ^{Israel} ~~pointing~~ ^{pointing} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Convent~~ ^{Convent} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~fulfilled~~ ^{fulfilled} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~latter~~ ^{latter} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~concern~~ ^{concern} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Lord~~ ^{Lord} ~~made~~ ^{made} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~our~~ ^{our} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~Abraham~~ ^{Abraham} ~~saying~~ ^{saying} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~old~~ ^{old} ~~Testament~~ ^{Testament} ~~I~~ ^I ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~all~~ ^{all} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~kindreds~~ ^{kindreds} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~earth~~ ^{earth} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~blest~~ ^{blest} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~came~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~I~~ ^I ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~much~~ ^{much} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~concerning~~ ^{concerning} ~~these~~ ^{these} ~~things~~ ^{things} ~~yea~~ ^{yea} ~~I~~ ^I ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~concerning~~ ^{concerning} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~restoration~~ ^{restoration} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Jews~~ ^{Jews} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~latter~~ ^{latter} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~rehears~~ ^{rehears} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~words~~ ^{words} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~Isaiah~~ ^{Isaiah} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~concerning~~ ^{concerning} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~restoration~~ ^{restoration} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Jews~~ ^{Jews} ~~on~~ ^{on} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~House~~ ^{House} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~Israel~~ ^{Israel} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~often~~ ^{often} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~never~~ ^{never} ~~restored~~ ^{restored} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~should~~ ^{should} ~~no~~ ^{no} ~~more~~ ^{more} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~con~~ ^{con} ~~demned~~ ^{demned} ~~neither~~ ^{neither} ~~should~~ ^{should} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~be~~ ^{be} ~~scattered~~ ^{scattered} ~~again~~ ^{again} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~came~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~I~~ ^I ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~many~~ ^{many} ~~words~~ ^{words} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~brethren~~ ^{brethren} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~were~~ ^{were} ~~purified~~ ^{purified} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~humble~~ ^{humble} ~~themselves~~ ^{themselves} ~~before~~ ^{before} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Lord~~ ^{Lord} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~came~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~pass~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~again~~ ^{again} ~~saying~~ ^{saying} ~~what~~ ^{what} ~~meaneth~~ ^{meaneth} ~~this~~ ^{this} ~~thing~~ ^{thing} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~your~~ ^{your} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~a~~ ^a ~~dream~~ ^{dream} ~~what~~ ^{what} ~~meaneth~~ ^{meaneth} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~tree~~ ^{tree} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~a~~ ^a ~~representation~~ ^{representation} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~tree~~ ^{tree} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~life~~ ^{life} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~what~~ ^{what} ~~meaneth~~ ^{meaneth} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~rod~~ ^{rod} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~iron~~ ^{iron} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~our~~ ^{our} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~lead~~ ^{lead} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~tree~~ ^{tree} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~whoso~~ ^{whoso} ~~would~~ ^{would} ~~hearken~~ ^{hearken} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~would~~ ^{would} ~~hold~~ ^{hold} ~~fast~~ ^{fast} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~would~~ ^{would} ~~never~~ ^{never} ~~perish~~ ^{perish} ~~neither~~ ^{neither} ~~could~~ ^{could} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temptations~~ ^{temptations} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~finer~~ ^{finer} ~~deaths~~ ^{deaths} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~adversary~~ ^{adversary} ~~overpower~~ ^{overpower} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~blindness~~ ^{blindness} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~lead~~ ^{lead} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~away~~ ^{away} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~destruction~~ ^{destruction} ~~wherefore~~ ^{wherefore} ~~I~~ ^I ~~spoke~~ ^{spoke} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~exhort~~ ^{exhort} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Lord~~ ^{Lord} ~~yea~~ ^{yea} ~~I~~ ^I ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~exhort~~ ^{exhort} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~with~~ ^{with} ~~all~~ ^{all} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~g~~ ^g ~~es~~ ^{es} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~seal~~ ^{seal} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~with~~ ^{with} ~~all~~ ^{all} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~faculty~~ ^{faculty} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~I~~ ^I ~~possessed~~ ^{possessed} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~would~~ ^{would} ~~keep~~ ^{keep} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~word~~ ^{word} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~remember~~ ^{remember} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~keep~~ ^{keep} ~~his~~ ^{his} ~~commandments~~ ^{commandments} ~~always~~ ^{always} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~all~~ ^{all} ~~things~~ ^{things} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~what~~ ^{what} ~~meaneth~~ ^{meaneth} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~river~~ ^{river} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~water~~ ^{water} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~our~~ ^{our} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~river~~ ^{river} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~our~~ ^{our} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~filthiness~~ ^{filthiness} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~so~~ ^{so} ~~much~~ ^{much} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~his~~ ^{his} ~~mind~~ ^{mind} ~~swallowed~~ ^{swallowed} ~~up~~ ^{up} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~other~~ ^{other} ~~things~~ ^{things} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~beheld~~ ^{beheld} ~~not~~ ^{not} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~filthiness~~ ^{filthiness} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~water~~ ^{water} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~an~~ ^{an} ~~awful~~ ^{awful} ~~gulf~~ ^{gulf} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~separated~~ ^{separated} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~wicked~~ ^{wicked} ~~from~~ ^{from} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~tree~~ ^{tree} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~life~~ ^{life} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~also~~ ^{also} ~~from~~ ^{from} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Saints~~ ^{Saints} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~a~~ ^a ~~representation~~ ^{representation} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~awful~~ ^{awful} ~~Hell~~ ^{Hell} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Angel~~ ^{Angel} ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~prepared~~ ^{prepared} ~~for~~ ^{for} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~wicked~~ ^{wicked} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~I~~ ^I ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~our~~ ^{our} ~~father~~ ^{father} ~~also~~ ^{also} ~~saw~~ ^{saw} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~part~~ ^{part} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~did~~ ^{did} ~~also~~ ^{also} ~~divide~~ ^{divide} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~wicked~~ ^{wicked} ~~from~~ ^{from} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~righteous~~ ^{righteous} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~brightness~~ ^{brightness} ~~thereof~~ ^{thereof} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~like~~ ^{like} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~brightness~~ ^{brightness} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~a~~ ^a ~~flaming~~ ^{flaming} ~~fire~~ ^{fire} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~are~~ ^{are} ~~kindled~~ ^{kindled} ~~up~~ ^{up} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~God~~ ^{God} ~~forever~~ ^{forever} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~ever~~ ^{ever} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~there~~ ^{there} ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~no~~ ^{no} ~~end~~ ^{end} ~~and~~ ^{and} ~~they~~ ^{they} ~~said~~ ^{said} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~me~~ ^{me} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~this~~ ^{this} ~~thing~~ ^{thing} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~torment~~ ^{torment} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~days~~ ^{days} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~probation~~ ^{probation} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~final~~ ^{final} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~after~~ ^{after} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~death~~ ^{death} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~temporal~~ ^{temporal} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~or~~ ^{or} ~~doth~~ ^{doth} ~~it~~ ^{it} ~~mean~~ ^{mean} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~state~~ ^{state} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~body~~ ^{body} ~~in~~

18

it was a representation of things both temporal & spiritual for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, & as for the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation wherefore if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also as to the things which are spiritual which are pertaining to righteousness, wherefore they must be brought to stand before God to be judged of their work & if their work had been filthiness they must needs be filthy; if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the Kingdom of God if so the Kingdom of God must be filthy also but behold I say unto you the Kingdom of God is not filthy & shall cannot any unclean thing enter into the Kingdom of God wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy & there is a place prepared yea even that awful Hell of which I have spoken it is the foundation of it wherefore the final state of the souls of men is determined in the Kingdom of God to be cast out because of that justice which I have spoken wherefore the wicked are rejected from the right hand & also from that tree of life whose fruit is most precious & most desirable above all other fruits yea & it is the greatest of all the gifts of God & thus I bore unto my Brethren Amen Chapter V

And now it came to pass that often I kept back made an end of speaking to my Brethren behold they said unto me thou hast declared unto us hard things more than that which we are able to hear & it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked according to the truth & the righteous have I justified & testified that they should be lifted up at the last day, wherefore the guilty take heed brethren to be hard for I call them to the very Central & now my Brethren if ye were righteous & were willing to hearken to the truth & were hereunto that ye might walk uprightly before God then ye would not murmur because of the truth & say thou speakest hard things against us & it came to pass that I kept back I entreated my Brethren with all diligence to keep the Commandments of the Lord & it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord inasmuch that I had joy & great hopes of them that they would walk in the path of righteousness now all these things were said & done as my power dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Limnah & it came to pass that I took one of the Daughters of Ishmael to wife & also my Brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife & also Lehi

elder daughter of Ishmael to wife & thus my father had fulfilled
all the Commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him &
also I Nephi had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly & it came to pass that
the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night & commanded him that on
the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness & it came to pass that
at as my father arose in the morning & went forth to the tent door & to his great
astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workman-
ship & it was of fine brass & within the ball was two spindles & the one
pointed the way, whither we should go into the wilderness & it came to pass
that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the
wilderness & all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had
given unto us & we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into
the wilderness & it came to pass that we did take our tents & departed
into the wilderness across the river Lamoni & it came to pass that we tra-
velled for the space of four days nearly a South South east direction &
we did pitch our tents again & we did call the name of the place Shiloh &
it came to pass that we did take our bows & our arrows & we went into the wil-
derness to slay game for our families & after that we had slain game for our
families we did return again to our families in the wilderness to the place of
Shiloh & we did go forth again in the wilderness following the same direction
which was in the most fertile parts of the wilderness which was in the borders near
the Red Sea & it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days slay-
ing game by the way with our bows & our arrows & our stones & our sling & we
did follow the directions of the ball which led us in the most fertile parts
of the wilderness & after that we had travelled for the space of many days we did
pitch our tents on the space of a time that we might again rest and
slay & obtain game for our families & it came to pass that as I Nephi went
forth to slay game he beheld I did break my bow which was made of steel
& after that I did break my bow he beheld my brethren were angry with
me because of the loss of my bow for we did obtain no game & it came
to pass that we did return without game to our families & being much
fatigued because of their journeying they did suffer much for the want of
food & it came to pass that Amari & Lemuel & the sons of Ishmael did be-
gin to murmur exceedingly because of their sufferings & afflictions in the
wilderness & also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God &
we were all exceedingly sorrowful even that they did murmur against
the Lord & now it came to pass that I Nephi began to

31

with my brethren because of the long journey & their horses having lost their strength it began to be exceedingly difficult for us inasmuch that we could obtain no food. It came to pass that I Nephi did speak much unto my brethren because that they had ~~been~~ hardened their hearts again even unto compassing against the Lord. Then ~~the~~ it came to pass that I Nephi did make out of wood a bow & a shaft of a stick of ash & an arrow wherefore I did arm myself with a bow & an arrow with a sling & with stones & I said unto my father & brethren shall I go to obtain food. It came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord for they had humbled themselves because of my word for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my God. It came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father & he was truly hastened because of his murmuring against the Lord inasmuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow. It came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him look upon the Ball & behold the things which are written. It came to pass that when my father ^{beheld} the things which were written upon the Ball he did fear & tremble exceedingly & also my brethren & the Sons of Ishmael & our wives. It came to pass that I Nephi beheld that the pointers which were in the Ball that they did work according to the faith & diligence & heed which we did give unto them. And there was also written upon them a new writing which was plain to be read which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord & it was written & changed from time to time according to the faith & diligence which we gave unto it & thus we see that ~~the Lord~~ ^{the Lord} by small means can bring about great things. It came to pass that I Nephi did go forth up into the top of a mountain according to the directions which ^{were} given upon the Ball. It came to pass that I did stay wild heart inasmuch that I did obtain food for our families. It came to pass that I did return to our tent leaving the beasts which the Lord slain & now when they beheld that I had obtained food how great was their joy. It came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord & did give thanks unto him. It came to pass that we did again take our journey traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning & often that we had traveled on the space of many days we did pitch our tents again that we might take our food on the space of a time. It came to pass that Ishmael died & was buried in the place which was called ~~the~~ ^{his} ~~name~~ ^{name}. It came to pass that the Daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly because of the loss of their father & because of their afflictions in the wilderness & they did murmur against my father because that he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem saying our father is dead ye are here wandering much in the wilderness & we have suffered much. Amen.

Hanger, Shiel & colleague & after all these sufferings we must perish in the wild-
 ness with Hanger & thus they did manna against my father & also against
 me & they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem & Laman ^{said} unto Le-
 israel & also unto the ^{sons} of Ishmael behold let us slay our father & also our
 brethren who ^{have} taken it upon them to be our ruler & our teachers & our
 are his elder brethren now he ^{says} that the Lord hath talked with him
 also that angels ^{have} ministered unto him but behold we know that he lieth
 in wait & he doth as these things & he worketh many things by his cunning
 acts that he may deceive our eyes thinking perhaps that he may lead us ^{into}
 into some strange wilderness & after that he ^{has} led us away, he hath
 thought to make himself a king & a ruler over us that he may do with us
 according to his will & pleasure & after this manner did my brother Laman
 stir up their hearts to anger & it came to pass that the Lord was with us yea
 even the voice of the Lord came & did speak many words unto them & did char-
 iten them exceedingly & after that they were chartered by the voice of the Lord
 they did turn away their anger & did repent of their sins inasmuch that the
 Lord did bless us again with food that we did not perish & it came to pass
 that we did again take our journey in the wilderness & we did travel near-
 ly eastward from that time forth & we did travel & made through-
 out affliction in the wilderness & our women have children in the
 wilderness & so great ^{was} the blessings of the Lord upon us that while
 we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness our women did give birth
 of such fine children & were strong & as even like unto the men & they
 began to bear their young ones without minding & thus we all that the
 Commandments of God must be fulfilled & if it so be that the children of
 men keep the Commandments of God he doth nourish ^{them} & strengthen them
 & provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he hath com-
 manded them wherefore he did provide means for us while we did sojourn
 in the wilderness & we did sojourn for the space of many years yea even
 eight years in the wilderness & we did come to the land which we called B-
 ecause of its much fruit & also with honey & all these things were
 because of the Lord that we might not perish & we beheld the Sea which
 we called Shesantum which being interpreted is many waters & it came
 to pass that we did pitch our tents by the Sea shore & notwithstanding
 we suffered many afflictions & much difficulty yea even so much
 that we could not live there all we were exceedingly rejoiced when we
 came to the Sea shore & we called it

place beautiful because of its much fruit & it came to pass that oftentimes
I had been in the land beautiful for the space of many days the voice of the
Lord came unto me saying arise & get thee into the mountain & it came to pass
that I arose & went up into the mountain & cried unto the Lord & it came to
pass that the Lord spake unto me saying thou shalt construct a ship after the
manner which I shall show thee that I may carry thy people across these
waters & ^{and} whither shall I go that I may find man to construct it
I may make tools to construct the ship after the manner which thou hast
shown unto me & it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I should go to find
one that I might make tools & it came to pass that I hept did make hells
where with to blow the line of the skins of beasts & often that I had made
bellows that I might have where with to blow the line I did smite
two stones together that I might make fire for the Lord had not hitherto
suffered that we should make much fire as we were in the wilderness
for he ^{said} together I will make the way for you & become a way that ye can
walk in & I will also be your light in the wilderness & I will prepare the way
before you if ye will that ye shall keep my Commandments wherefore inasmuch as
ye shall keep my Commandments ye shall be led towards the promised land &
ye shall know that it is by me that ye are led & ye shall know also that often
ye have ^{arrived} access to the promised land & ye shall know that I the Lord am God &
that I the Lord did deliver you from destruction & that I did bring you out
of the Land of Jerusalem wherefore I hept did desire to keep the Commandments
of the Lord & I did exhort my Brethren to faithfulness & diligence & it came to pass
that I did make tools of the ore which I did melt out of the rock & when
my Brethren saw that I was about to build a ship they began to murmur
against me saying our Brother is a fool for he thinketh that he can build a
ship & that he also thinketh that he can cross these great waters & thus my Brethren
did complain against me & were desirous that they might not labour for
they did not believe that I could build a ship neither would they believe that
I was instructed of the Lord & now it came to pass that I hept was exceedingly sorrow-
ful because of the hardness of their hearts & now when they saw that I began to be
sorrowful they were glad in their hearts inasmuch that they did rejoice
in me saying we knew that ye could not construct a ship & now we know that
ye were labouring in judgment & therefore that ye cannot accomplish
that work & then art like unto our father leah away by the foolish
imaginations of his heart & ye shall lead us out of the land;

When I will have wandered in the wilderness for these many years & our
sufferings have lacked being big with child & they have born children in
the wilderness & suffered all things save it were death & it would have
been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to
have suffered these afflictions behold these many years we have suffered
in the wilderness what time we might have enjoyed our possessions in
the land of our inheritance yea & we might have been happy you know that
the people which were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people for
they kept the statutes & the judgments of the Lord & all his commandments
according to the law of Moses wherefore we know that they are a righteous people
but our fathers hath judged them & hath lead us away because we would hearken
unto his words yea & our brethren is like unto him & after this manner of Sam
sarge did my brethren murmur & complain against us & it came to pass that
Moses spake unto them saying do ye believe that our fathers which were the
children of Israel would have been lead away out of the hands of the Egyptians
and if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord ye do ye suppose that
they would have been lead out of bondage if the Lord had not commanded
Moses that he should lead them out of bondage now ye know that the Chi
ldren of Israel were in bondage & ye know that they were laden with tasks
which were grievous to be born wherefore ye know that it must needs be
a good thing for them that they should be brought out of bondage now ye know
that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work & ye know that by
his word the waters of the red Sea was divided & they passed through on dry ground but ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the red
Sea which were the armies of Pharaoh & ye also know that they were fed with
manna in the wilderness yea & ye also know that Moses by his word ac
cording to the power of God which was in him smote the Rock & there came forth
water that the children of Israel might quench their thirst & notwithstanding
ing they being lead by the Lord their God their Redeemer going before them
leading them by day & giving light unto them by night & doing all things for
them which was expedient for man to receive they hardened their hearts & re
sisted their minds & rebelled against Moses & against the true & living God
& it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them & according
to his word he did lead them & according to his word he did ^{do} all things for
them & there was not anything done save it were by his word & after they had
crossed the river Jordan he did smite the Amorites mighty unto the driving
of them out of the land

87

unto the scattering them to destruction & now do ye suppose that the
 children of this land ^{who} were in the land of promise which were ^{promised} but
 by an ^{angel} do ye suppose that they were righteous behold say unto you may ye
 suppose that our fathers would have been more chaste than they if they had been
 righteous say unto you may ye behold the Lord esteemeth all flesh one but he
 is righteous in favour of God but behold this people had rejected every word of
 & they were ripe in iniquity & the fullness of the wrath of God was upon them & he
 did cause the land against them & he did cause unto our fathers ye he did
 cause against them unto their destruction & he did bless unto our fathers
 unto their obtaining power over it behold the Lord hath created the earth
 that it should be inhabited & he hath created his children that they should
 possess it & he saith of a righteous nation & he destroyeth the nations of them
 which he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands & the wicked he
 destroyeth & cometh the land unto them for their sakes he is high in the
 heavens for it is his throne & the earth is his foot stool & he loveth them
 which will have him to be their God behold he loved our fathers & he
 commanded with them ye even Abraham Isaac & Jacob & he remembered
 the covenants which he had made wherefore he did bring them out of the land
 of Egypt & he did lighten them in the wilderness with his rod for they had
 sinned their hearts were evil & the Lord straitened them because of
 their iniquity he sent his angels among them & often they were
 bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed & the labour which they had
 to perform were to lead & because of the simplicity of the way on the easiness
 of it there were many ^{who} perished they did harden their hearts from time
 to time & they did smile against Moses & also against God & ye know
 that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise & now
 after all these things the time has come that they have become wicked
 nearly unto ripe iniquity & I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed
 I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed
 a few only which shall be lead away into captivity wherefore the Lord com-
 manded my father that he should be spent into the wilderness & the Lord also
 sought to take away his life & ye also have sought to take away his life
 wherefore ye are murderers in your hearts & ye are like unto those who are swift
 to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God ye have seen an Angel
 & he spake unto you & ye have heard his voice from time to time & he hath
 spoken unto you in a still small voice & ye have not hearkened that ye could

and I feel in my heart, where I might have spoken unto you like unto the voice
of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.
ye also know, that by the power of his ^{high} mighty word, he can cause the ^{earth} that
it shall pass away, ye know that by his word, he can cause that rough place
shall be made smooth, & smooth places shall be broken up. O then, why is it
that ye can be so hard in your hearts? behold, my soul is rent with
grief because of you, & my heart is pained. I fear lest ye shall ^{be} cast off
forever. behold, I am full of the spirit of God, inasmuch as of my frame ^{with} ⁱⁿ ^{the}
ye, & now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they ^{revenge} ^{you}
themselves & were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea, as they ^{came}
forth to lay their hands upon me I spoke unto them saying in the name
of mighty God I command you that ye touch me not for I am filled
with the power of God even unto the consuming of my flesh & ye shall
lay their hands upon me. shall wither even as a dried weed & he shall be
as naught before the power of God for God shall smite him & it came to pass
that I spake ^{said} ^{unto} them that they should, moreover, no more ^{again} ^{the}
revenge, neither should they withhold their hands from me for God had com-
manded me that I should build a ship, & I ^{spoke} ^{unto} them if God had com-
manded me to do all things I could do ^{if} ^{he} should command me that I should
go ^{unto} the ^{west} ^{be} ^{there} ^{earth} ^{it} should be ^{earth} & if I should
go it it would be done & now if the Lord had such great power & had won-
derful so many miracles among the children of men how is it that he cannot
instruct me that I should build a ship & it came to pass that I ^{replied} ^{sa}
id many things ^{unto} my brethren inasmuch that they were confounded &
could not contend against me, neither could they lay their hands upon me
nor touch me with their fingers even for the space of many days, notwithstanding
they desired not to do this, yet they should wither before me so powerful was the
spirit of God & thus it had wrought upon them & it came to pass that the
Lord said unto me stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren & they shall
not wither before thee, but I will shake them with the Lord & thus
will I do that they may know that I am the Lord their God & it came to pass
that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren & they did not wither be-
fore me but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he
had spoken & now they said we know of a certainty that the Lord is with thee for
we know that it is the power of the Lord that hath shaken us & they fell down
before me & were about to worship me, which I would not suffer them to

36
The younger Brother which were in the ship. The Lord they did & honestly
followed the Brother that they days may be long in the land which the Lord they did
shall give them & it came to pass that they did worship the Lord & did go forth without
time to time work timbers of Canaan workmanship & the Lord did show me from
time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship now
I Joseph did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by
men neither did he build the ship after the manner of men but I did build
it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me wherefore it was not
after the manner of men & Joseph did go into the moat oft & I did pray oft
unto the Lord wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things & it came to pass
after I had finished the ship according to the word of the Lord my brethren
beheld that it was good & that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine where
fore they did humble themselves again before the Lord & it came to pass that
the voice of the Lord came unto my father that we should arise & go down into the
ship & it came to pass that on the morrow after that we had prepared all things men
ch. fruit & meat from the wilderness & honey in abundance & provisions accord
ing to that which the Lord had commanded as we did go down into the ship
with all our loading & our seeds & whatsoever thing we had brought
with us every one according to his age wherefore we did all go down into the
ship with our wives & our children & now my father had begat two sons in the
wilderness the eldest was called Jacob & the younger Joseph & it came to pass that
after we had all gone down into the ship & had taken with us our provisions & things
which had been commanded as we did put forth into the sea & were driven fo
rth before the wind towards the promised land & after that we had been dri
ven forth before the wind for the space of many days behold my brethren & the
sons of Ishmael & also their wives began to make themselves merry inasmuch
that they began to dance & to sing & to speak with much rudeness of a event
that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither yea they
were lifted up unto an exceedingly rudeness & Joseph began to lean exceedingly be
fore the Lord should be angry with us & smile us because of our iniquity th
at we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea wherefore Joseph
began to speak to them with much soberness but behold they were angry w
ith me saying we will not that our younger Brother shall be a ruler over us
& it came to pass that Lehi & Sariah did take me & bind me with cords & th
ey did treat me with much harshness & in the last the Lord did soften th
at he might show forth his power unto the children of Israel which he
doeth in the flesh

we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land & we went forth upon the land & did pitch our tents & we did call it the promised land & it came to pass that we did begin to till the ground & we began to plant seeds & we did but all our seeds into the earth which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem & it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly where we were blessed in a hundred fold & it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise as we journeyed in the wilderness that there were lions in the forests of every kind both the Cow & the Ox & the Ass & the Horse & the goat & the wild goat & all manner of wild animals which were found in the use of man & we did find all manner of ore both of gold & silver & of copper & it came to pass that the Lord commanded me wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people & upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father & also our journeyings in the wilderness & the prophecies of my father & also many of mine own prophecies & have engraven upon them & I have not at that time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates wherefore the record of my father & the genealogy of his people & the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those plates of which I have spoken wherefore the things which I have spoken before that I made these plates are of a truth more particularly made mention upon the first plates & often that I made these plates by way of Commandment I prophesied a Commandment that the ministry & the prophecies the more plain & sweet parts of them should be written upon ^{these} plates & that the things which were written should be kept in the instruction of my people which should possess the land & also for other wise purposes which purposes are known unto the Lord wherefore I did make a record upon the other plates which gives an account on which gives a greater account of the wars & contentions & destructions of my people & this have I done by Commandment my people that this should be often that I was given that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another or from one prophet to another until the Commandments of the Lord & an account of my making these plates shall begin hereafter & then behold I have made according to that which I have spoken & this I do that the more sacred things may be kept from the knowledge of my people nevertheless I do not write any thing upon plates save it be that I have

38
he said & now if I do so, even did they ⁱⁿ of old not hold their
mouths myself because of their men but because of the wickedness which
is in me according to the flesh I would extend myself in the things which
in some men seem to be of great worth both to the body & soul others
set at naught & trample under their feet even on the very God of Israel
down to trample under their feet ^{and} ~~they~~ trample under their feet
but I would speak in other words they do set him at naught & he
asked not to the voice of his Councils & he told, he cometh according to
the words of the Angel in his hundred years from the time my father left
Jerusalem & the world because of their iniquity shall judge him to be a
thing of naught wherefore they scourge him & he suffereth it & they smite
him & he suffereth it & they spit upon him & he suffereth it because
of his loving kindness & his long suffering towards the children of men
& the God of Israel, who were lead out of Egypt out of bondage & also
were preserved in the wilderness by him & the God of Abraham & Isaac
and the God of Jacob yieldeth himself according to the words of the Angel
as a man into the hands of wicked men & he ~~fight~~ ^{is} up according to
the words of Jeremiah & to be crucified according to the words of the
Apostle to be buried in a Sepulchre & according to the words of the
Angels which he spoke concerning the three days of darkness which shall
be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the Isles
of the Sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house
of Israel for thus saith the Prophet the Lord God surely shall visit all
the house of Israel at that day with his voice because of ^{their} righte-
ousness unto their great joy & O nations & others with the thunders & the
lightnings of his power by compass by fire & by smoke & vapour of darkness & by
the opening of the earth & by mountains which shall be carried up & all these
things must surely come with the Prophet Jesus & the Rock of the earth mu-
st rend & because of the groanings of the earth many of the Kings of the Isles
of the Sea shall be wrought upon by the spirit of God to acknowledge the God
of Nature suffers & as for those who are at Jerusalem with the Prophet he
shall be scourged by all people with the Prophet because they crucify the
God of Israel & hardened their hearts aside rejecting signs & wonders & the
power & glory of the God of Israel & because they turned their hearts aside so
with the Prophet & have despised the Holy one of Israel they shall wander
in the flesh & perish & become a hiss & a by word & a hated among

41
 and have obtained the former things from the beginning & thy garments will
 not long want & I shew them & did shew them suddenly & I did it
 because I knew that thou art obstinate & thy wrath was against me since &
 thou knowest that I have been from the beginning declare to thee before
 me it came to pass I shewed them thee & I shewed them for fear lest thou
 shouldst say mine idol hath done them & my golden image & my
 silver image hath commanded them that thou hast seen & heard all this & now
 I will declare them & that I have shewed thee new things from this
 time even hid en things & that thou didst not know them they are created
 now & not from the beginning ever before, the day when thou hearest
 them not they were declared unto thee least thou shouldst say behold
 I knew them yet & thou shouldst say yet thou knewest not yet from that time
 thou canst not open for I know that thou wouldst deal very treacherously
 & I have called a transgression from thee & thou shalt be named
 so that will I deny mine anger & for my praise will I repair from thee that I
 shall not cut off for a whole I have refined thee & have chosen thee in the furnace
 of affliction for mine own sake & for mine own sake will I do this for
 I will not suffer my name to be polluted & I will not give my glory unto an
 other maker unto me O Jacob & I have called for I am he & I am the first
 & I am also the last mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth
 & my right hand hath spanned the heavens & I called unto them & they came
 & they gathered together all ye assemble yourselves & hear which among them hath
 declared these things unto them the Lord hath loved him yet he will fulfil
 it his word which he hath declared by them & he will do his pleasure on
 Babylon & his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans also saith the Lord I the
 Lord & I have spoken & I have called him to declare I have brought him
 & he shall make his way prosperous Come ye near unto me I have not spoke
 in secret from the beginning from the time that it was declared I have
 spoken & the Lord God & his spirit hath sent me & thus saith the Lord thy
 redeemer the holy one of Israel I have sent him the Lord thy God who is
 least of thee to people which lead thee by the way thou shouldst go he
 done it & that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments then hadst
 proceeded as a river & thy righteousness as the waves of the sea thy seed
 so had been as the sand the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof
 his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me ye
 go forth of Babylon flee ye from the Chaldeans with a voice of

And now ye tell this unto the end of the earth say ye the Lord
will make his servant Jacob & they shall not be lead them through
swords because the waters will flow out of the rock for them he saith
Ok also the waters gush out & notwithstanding he hath done all this
then also there is no place saith the Lord unto the meek & again he saith
O ye house of Israel all ye that are broken off & are driven out ~~because~~
because of the ^{richedness} pastors of my people yea all ye that are broken off that are
now abroad ~~where~~ and of my people O house of Israel listen O ye
& hearken ye people from far the Lord hath called me from the
the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name & he
made my mouth like a sharp sword in the shadow of his hand he hath
made me & made me a prophet & he in his quiver hath he hid me & he
to me than not my servant O Israel in whom I will be glorified
I said I have laboured in vain I have spent my strength for naught
vain surely my judgment is with the Lord & my work with my God
saith the Lord that formed me from the ^{mouth} womb that I should be his servant
to bring Israel again to him that Israel be not gathered yet shall I be glorious in
the eyes of the Lord & my God shall be my strength & he said it is a light thing
that thou should be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob & to restore the
of Israel I will also give thee from a light to the Gentiles that thou mayest
of salvation unto the ends of the earth thus saith the Lord the Redeemer of
Israel his holy one to him whom man despiseth to him whom the nations set
at naught to servant of rulers kings shall set & arise princes also shall worship
because of the Lord that is faithful that saith the Lord in an acceptable time
have I heard thee O Isles of the Sea & in a day of salvation shall I
thee & I will preserve thee & give thee my servant for a covenant of
people to establish the earth to cause to inherit the desolate heritages
thou mayest say to the prisoners go forth to them that sit in darkness
in prison they shall feed in the ways & their pastures shall be as old
times they shall not hunger nor thirst neither shall the heat nor the
from far that shall carry on them shall lead them even by the springs of
waters shall be guide them & I will make all my mountains as a way & I will
shall be established & then O house of Israel behold these shall come from
to thee from the south & from the west & these from the land of Sinim
O Heavens & be joyful O Earth for the feet of the meek have
shall be established & break forth into singing

43
be smitten no more for the Lord hath comforted his people & will have mercy upon the of his children but behold I have said the Lord hath forgotten me & my Lord hath forgotten me but he will show that he hath not forgotten a woman forgetting her sucking child that she should not have compassion on the Son of her womb yea they may forget yet will I not forget thee house of Israel
behold I have graven thee upon the palms of my hands thy walls are continually before me thy children shall make haste against thy destroyers & thy that make thee waste shall go forth of thee lift up thine eyes round about & behold all these gather themselves together & they shall come to thee & as I live saith the Lord they shall surely call thee with them all as with an ornament & bind them on even as a bride for thy waste & thy desolate places & the land of thy destruction shall even now be to manna by reason of the inhabitants & they that shall love thee up shall be joy as are the children when their mother shall have after they have lost the other shall again in thine ears say the place is to stand for me give place to me that I may dwell there shall they say in thine heart who hath begotten me these seeing I have lost my children & am desolate a captive & removing to & from & who hath brought up these behold I was left alone these where have they been thus saith the Lord God behold I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles & set up my standard to the people & they shall bring thy sons in their arms & thy daughters ^{shall be carried} upon their shoulders & kings shall be thy nursing fathers & their Queens thy nursing mothers they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth & lick up the dust of thy feet & they shall know that I am the Lord for they shall not be ashamed that we it from me for shall the prey be taken from the mighty or the lawfull captive delivered but thus saith the Lord even the captive of the mighty shall be taken away & the prey of the terrible shall be delivered for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee & I will save thy children & I will see them that oppress thee with their own flesh they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine & all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy saviour & thy redeemer the mighty one of Israel
Chapter V. 11 And now I can to pass that after I prophesied that I had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass my brethren came unto me & said unto me what mean these things which I have read behold they say to be understood according to things which are spiritual which shall come to pass according to the spirit & not

^{said}
And he said unto them behold they were made manifest unto thee
by the voice of the spirit for by the spirit are all things made known
unto the prophets which shall come upon the children of men according to their
flesh wherefore the things of which I have read are things pertaining to
both temporal & spiritual for it appears that the house of Israel soon after
they will be scattered upon all the face of the earth & also among all the
^{peoples} ~~peoples~~ there are many which are ^{lost} ~~lost~~ but from the knowledge of the word
at Jerusalem yea the more part of all the tribes have been ^{lost} ~~lost~~ & are
scattered to & fro upon the isles of the sea & whether they are none of us know
neither we know that they have been ^{lost} ~~lost~~ & since that they have been ^{lost} ~~lost~~
away these things have been prophesied concerning them & also concerning all
which shall hereafter be scattered & be confounded because of the holy ones
of Israel for against him will they hearken their hearts wherefore they shall be
delivered up to all nations & shall be hated by all men & shall be ^{lost} ~~lost~~
not ^{lost} ~~lost~~ ^{have been} ~~have been ^{carried} ~~carried by the Gentiles & the Lord hath lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles
& set them up for a standard & their children shall be carried in their arms & their
daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders & shall be carried in their arms
spoken are temporal for thus is the Covenant of the Lord with us & it
meaneth us in the days to come & also all our brethren which are of the house
of Israel & it meaneth ~~that the time~~ that the time cometh that of ^{all} ~~all~~ the
house of Israel shall be scattered & confounded that the Lord God will raise up a
mighty nation among the Gentiles yea even upon the face of this land & by them shall
all our seed be scattered & of ^{all} ~~all~~ that our seed is scattered the Lord God will
cede to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles which shall be of great worth
unto our seed wherefore it is ^{written} ~~written~~ unto the being nourished by the Gentiles
& being carried ⁱⁿ ~~in their arms & upon their shoulders & it shall also be given
unto the Gentiles & not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of
Israel unto the making known of the Covenants of the Father of Heaven unto
Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed &
I would my brethren that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth
cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the day of his
glory wherefore the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the day
of all the nations in bringing about his Covenants & his Gospel with ^{us} ~~us~~
of the house of Israel wherefore he will bring them again out of
captivity & they shall be gathered together to the land of their inheritance
they shall be brought out of obscurity & of darkness~~~~~~

and that the Son is their Saviour & their Redeemer: the mighty one of Israel
all the blood of that great & abominable Church which is the witness of all the
earth shall turn upon their own heads: for they shall rise among themselves & the
sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads: & they shall be drunk
even with their own blood & every nation which shall rise against this Church
of small shall be turned one against another & they shall fall into the pit
which they dig to ensnare the people of the Lord & all ^{that} fight against
Zion shall be destroyed: & that great church which hath persecuted the righteous
of the Lord yea that great & abominable Church shall tumble to the dust
& great shall be the fall of it: for behold saith the prophet that the time cometh
speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the
Children of men for the day soon cometh that all the proud & those who do
m wickedly shall be as stubble & the day cometh that they must be burned
for the time soon cometh that the fullness of the wrath of God shall be poured
out upon ^{all} the Children of men for he will not suffer that the wicked shall
destroy the righteous wherefore he will preserve the righteous by his power
even if it so be that the fullness of his wrath must come & the righteous be
preserved even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire wherefore the right-
eous need not fear for this saith the prophet they shall be saved even if it
so be as by fire behold me, but I must say unto you that these things must
surely come yea even the flood & fire & vapour of smoke must come & it must
come upon the face of this land ^{earth} & it cometh unto men according to the flesh if
it so be that they will harden their hearts against the holy one of Israel for
behold the righteous shall not perish for the time surely cometh & cometh that
all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off & the Lord will surely
prepare a way for his people unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses to
which he spake saying a prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you
like unto me him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say
unto you & it shall come to pass that all ^{the} prophets which will not hear that
prophet shall be cut off from among the people & now I must declare
unto you that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the holy one of Israel
wherefore he shall be ^{judgment} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ righteousness & the righteous need not
fear for ^{of} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~which~~ shall not be confounded but it is the kingdom
of the Gentile which shall be built up among the Children of men which king-
dom is established among them which are in the flesh for the time
speedily shall come that all Churches which are built up to get gain

47
I should also have said but said, he hath the standing
of the Lord, we have obtained a land of promise & land which is Chaled
out all other lands a land which the Lord God hath Covenanted with me the
Lord a land for the inheritance of my seed for the Lord hath Covenanted this
land unto me & to my children forever & also all they which should be
out of other countries by the hand of the Lord when I shall bring them
according to the workings of the spirit which is in me that there shall be none
in to this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord where
the land is Covenanted unto them whom he shall bring & it shall be that
they shall serve him according to the Commandments which he hath given
shall be a land of liberty unto them wherefore they shall never be
brought down into captivity if so it shall be because of iniquity for if iniquity
shall abound & sin shall be the land for their sakes but unto their neighbors
it shall be blessed & he shall be in wisdom that this land should be kept
secret from the knowledge of other nations for he hath many nations would
in vain the land that there would be no place for an inheritance where
fore the Lord hath obtained a promise that inasmuch as he shall bring out of the
Land of Jerusalem shall keep his Commandments they shall prosper upon the face of this land & they shall be kept
from all other nations that they may prosper this land unto themselves
that so be that they shall keep his Commandments they shall be blessed upon
the face of this land & there shall be none to molest them nor to take
away the land of their inheritance & they shall dwell safely forever but
he hold when the Lord cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief
of him that they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord
& having a knowledge of the creation of the earth & all men knowing
the great & marvellous works of the Lord from the creation of the world
having power given them to do all things by faith having all the Com
mandments from the beginning & having been brought by his infinite
goodness into this precious land of promise he hold I say if the day shall
come that they will reject the Holy one of Israel the true Messiah
his Redeemer & their God he hold the judgments of him that is just shall
fall upon them & he will bring other nations unto them & he will give
unto them power & he will take away from them the lands of their
possession & he will cause them to be scattered & smitten yea & one
generation passeth to another there shall be a land which is great

173
among them wherefore my Dear I would that ye would remember that
would that ye would hearken unto my words & that ye would awake
from a deep sleep & arise from the sleep of hell & shake off the awful
Chains by which ye are bound which are the Chains which bind the Chil-
dren of men that they are Carried away captive down to the eternal gulf
of misery & we awake & arise from the dust & hear the words of a trem-
bling parent whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold & silent
grave from whence no traveller can return a few more days & I get the
way of all the earth but behold the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell
I have beheld his glory & I am encircled about eternally in the arms
of his love & I desire that ye should remember to abide in the statutes
& the judgments of the Lord he holdeth that hath been the anxiety of my soul from
the beginning my heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time
to time for I have feared lest for the hardness of your hearts ye should
and your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath ^{upon you} against that ye
be cut off & destroyed forever on that a cursing should come upon you for
the space of many generations & ye are visited by sword & by famine &
are hated & are dead according to the will & Captivity of the Devil & my
Gods that these things might not come upon you but that ye might
be able to give a glorious Repell of the Lord but behold his will he does
for his ways are right & he is true for ever & he hath said that inasmuch
as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land but in
as much as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from
my presence & now that my soul might have joy in you & that my heart
might leave this world with gladness because of you that I might not
be brought down with grief & sorrow to the grave as I from the dust
my sons & he, me & ye determined in one mind & in one heart united
in all things that ye may not come down into captivity that ye may
not be cursed with a sore cursing & also that ye may not incur the
displeasure of a just God upon you unto the destruction of the eter-
nal destruction of both soul & body awake my Sons for on the arms
of righteousness shake off the Chains with which ye are bound &
come forth out of captivity & arise from the dust & hell no more
against your Brother whose eyes have been glorified & who hath kept
the commandments from the time I was left & I have seen & who be
an instrument in the hands of God in bringing us forth

[illegible]

And ye shall know from the fall of man & salvation, is, that men are
induced to ~~obey~~ ^{obey} the law, that they know good, from which the law is given unto
us. The law, no flesh is justified only the law, men are cut off from
the temporal law, ~~ye are cut off~~ ^{ye are cut off} & also by the spiritual law, they perish
from that which is ~~temporal~~ ^{eternal}, miserable forever, wherefore redemption
cometh only through the Holy Messiah, or he is full of grace, & hath felt
all he suffereth himself a sacrifice, for sin to answer the ends of the law
unto all those which have a broken heart & a contrite spirit & unto none
else can the ends of the law be answered wherefore how great the importance
will be to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth that they
may know that ~~there is~~ ^{there is} no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, and
if he through the merits & mercy & grace of the Holy Messiah, which layeth
down his life according to the flesh, & taketh it again by the power of the spirit
that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should
rise, wherefore he is the first spirit unto God inasmuch as he shall
make intercession for all the children of men & they that believe in him shall
be saved & because of the intercession for all, all men cometh unto God ^{where}
before they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the
truth & holiness which is in him, wherefore the ends of the law which the Holy
one hath given unto the infilling of the punishment, which is of pain, which
punishment that is of pain, is in opposition to that of the happiness which is of
joy to answer the ends of the atonement for it, must needs be that there is
an opposition in all things if not so, my first born in the wilderness might
as well have been brought to pass, neither misery, neither holiness, nor
peace, neither joy, nor had wherefore all things must needs be ^{a compromise} ~~balanced~~
one, wherefore if it should be one, had it, must needs remain as dead
having no life, neither death, nor corruption, nor incorruption, happiness, nor
misery, neither sense, nor insensibility, wherefore it must needs have been
created for a thing of naught, wherefore there would have been no purpose
in the end of its creation, wherefore this thing must needs destroy the mind
of God & his eternal purposes & also the power & the mercy & the justice
of God & if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin & if ye
shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness & if there be
no righteousness, there be, no happiness & if there be no righteousness, nor
happiness, there be, no punishment, nor misery & if these things are not the
case is, no God & if there is no God, we are not neither the earth nor there
could have been, no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon.

wherein all things must have vanished away & now my Lord I speak unto
you these things for your profit & learning, for there is a God that he hath created all the
things both the heaven & the earth & all things that in them is, both things & every
thing to be ruled upon & to bring about his eternal purpose in the end of man after
that, he has created sun, fire, planets & the beasts of the field & the fowls of the air
in first all things which are created & must needs be that there was an opposition
as it is forbidden, not in opposition to the law but the one being sweet & the
other bitter wherefore the Lord God gave unto man that he should eat for himself
wherefore man could not eat for himself saved, should be that he were enticed by
the one on the other & so he according to the things which I have read must needs
suppose that an Angel of God according to that which is written had fallen from
heaven wherefore he became a devil, having taught that which was evil before
God & believes that he has fallen from heaven & had become miserable forever
in such a way that the mirage of all mankind with you he ^{said} ~~teach~~ ^{unto} you even the
old report which is the Devil which is the father of all lies wherefore he ^{said} ~~teach~~ ^{unto} you
the state of the forbidden fruit & yet shall not die but ye shall be as God knowing good
& evil & after that Adam & Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven
out from the garden of Eden to till the Earth & they have brought forth children
ever since the coming of all the saints & the days of their children of men were prolonged ac-
cording to the will of God that they might repent & be in the flesh wherefore their
state became a state of probation & their land was long then according to the Co-
mmandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men for he gave Com-
mandment that all men must repent for he pleased unto all men that they
were lost because of the transgression of their parents & now, behold if Adam
had not transgressed he would not have fallen but he would have remained
in the Garden of Eden & all things which were created must have remained in the
same state which they were after that they were created & they must have remained
forever & had no end & they would have had no children wherefore they would have
remained in a state of innocence having no joy for they knew no misery &
ing no pain for they knew no sin and in all things have been, love in the wisdom of him
who knoweth all things & Adam, all that men might be & therefore that they might be
in joy & the Mercies come in the fulness of time that he might ^{redeem} ~~redeem~~ ^{redeem} the children
of men from the fall & because that they are redeemed from the fall they have
now become ^{free} ~~fallen~~ ^{free} persons knowing good from evil to act for themselves & not to be
acted upon save it be by the punishment of the Law at the great last day according
to the Commandments which God hath given wherefore men are free according to the flesh
all things are given them which are expedient unto man & they are free to choose liberty

The eternal life thing, the great salvation of all men on earth capturing & death
according to the will of the Lord. Now he will that all men may be
miserable like unto him. I know my sons I would that ye should look to the
great mediator & listen unto his great Commandments & be faithful unto his words
Chose eternal life according to the will of his holy spirit & not Chose eternal death
according to the will of the flesh & the devil which is the law which giveth the spirit of the
Devil power to captivate to bring you down to hell that he may reign over you
in his own kingdom. I have spoken these few words unto you all my sons in these
last days of my probation & I have chosen the good part according to the words of the
prophet & I have none other object save it be the everlasting millenium of good days
to come even unto Chapter 11 & now I speak unto you for ye my last born
as I must have in the wilderness of mine afflictions yet in the days of my greatest sorrow
did thy mother hear thee & may the Lord console thee also unto thee this land which
is most precious land for them who are called & the inheritance of the seed with thy
name for thy fathers foremen of it so be that ye shall keep the Commandments of the Lord
& of Israel I know Joseph my last born whom I have brought out of the wilderness
domine afflictions may the Lord bless his foremen for thy seed shall not wither
destroyed for he holdeth out the fruit of my loins & I am a descendant of Joseph who
was carried captive into Egypt & great was the Covenant of the Lord which he
made unto Jacob when Joseph said his father & he obtained a promise of the
Lord that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous bran-
ch unto the house of Israel not the Messiah but a branch which was to be broken
off nevertheless to be remembered in the Covenants of the Lord that the Messi-
ah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days in the spirit of power
unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light yea out of hidden darkness
out of captivity unto freedom for Joseph truly testified saying a seed shall the
Lord my God raise up which shall be a Chaste Seed unto the fruit of my loins
I truly said that saith the Lord unto me a Chaste Seed will I raise up out of
the fruit of thy loins shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins &
unto him will I give Commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy
loins his brethren which shall be of great worth unto them even to the bringing
of them to the knowledge of the Covenants which I have made with thy father &
will give unto him a Commandment that he shall do none other work save the work
at which I shall Command him & I will make him great in mine eyes for he shall
do my work & he shall be great like unto Moses whom I have said I would
raise up unto you to deliver my people O house of Israel & Moses will I
raise up to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt but a Seed will I

raise up out of the fruit of thy loins & I will give power to bring forth
my word unto the sea of thy loins & not to the bringing forth my word only saith
the Lord but to the convincing them of my word which shall have already gone
forth among them wherefore the fruit of my loins shall write & the fruit of the land
of Judah shall write & that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins & also
that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah shall grow together
unto the convincing of false doctrines & casting down of covetousness & establishing
all among the fruit of thy loins & bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the
latter days & also to the knowledge of my covenants saith the Lord & out of weakness
he shall be made strong in that day when my work shall commence among all in
of people unto the restoring the C. House of Israel saith the Lord & that prophesies
saying behold that I will make the Lord bless & they that seek to destroy him
shall be confounded for his promise of which I have obtained of the Lord & the
fruit of thy loins shall be fulfilled he said I am sure of the fulfilling of this
promise & his name shall be called of his name & it shall be after the name of his
father & he shall be like unto me for the thing which the Lord shall bring forth
by his hand by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation & all
these prophesies I am sure of this thing even as I am sure of the promise of the
Lord for the Lord hath said unto me I will preserve thy seed forever & the Lord hath
said I will raise up a man & I will give power unto him in a seed & I will give power
unto him in writing yet I will not loose his tongue that he shall speak much for
I will not make him mighty in speaking but I will write unto him my law by
the finger of mine own hand & I will make one a spokesman for him & the Lord
said unto me also I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins & I will make one
him a spokesman & I will give unto him that he shall write the
writing of the fruit of thy loins unto the fruit of thy loins & the spokesman of thy
loins shall declare it & the words which he shall write shall be the words
which are expedient in my wisdom & shall go forth unto the fruit of thy loins & it
shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust & they
will hear their faith & they shall rise from the dust & receive repentance unto their fathers
there is now that of many generations have gone by them & it shall come to pass
that their cry shall go even according to the simplicity of their words & because
their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren in
which are the fruit of thy loins & the weakness of their words will I make strong in
their faith unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers &
now behold my Son Joseph after this manner did my father of old prophesy
before because of his weakness their words were weak & their seed shall be

for they shall hearken unto the words of the Book & there shall raise up one
mighty among them, who shall do, much good, hath in word & indeed, being
an instrument in the hands of God with one edifying faith, to work mighty
works & do great things which shall be in the sight of God until the bringing to pass much
redemption unto the house of Israel & unto the seed of thy brethren & now blessed
be that day, for it is better than all little when thou shalt come unto the words of
thy brother Nephi & it shall be done unto thee even according to the words
which I have spoken remember the words of thy friend Latter-day seer
Chapter 111 - And now I will speak concerning the prophecies of ^{which}
my father hath spoken concerning Joseph who was carried into Egypt for he hold
he truly prophesied concerning all his seed & the prophecies which he wrote that
there are not many greater & he prophesied concerning us & our future generations
& he hath written upon the plates of brass wherefore & then my father had made
an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph he called the children
of Laman his sons & his daughters & says he unto them, he hold my sons & my da
ughters which are the sons & the daughters of my first born & would that ye should
be like unto my words, for the Lord God hath said that inasmuch as ye shall keep
my Commandments ye shall prosper in the land & in as much as ye will not keep
my Commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence but behold my sons &
my daughters & I cannot come to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon
you for behold I know that ye are brought up in the right way that ye should
do all which will not depart from it wherefore it is an curse behold I leave my ble
ssing upon you that the cursing may be taken from you & be an earnest upon the
heads of your parents wherefore because of my blessing the Lord God will not
suffer that ye shall perish wherefore he will be merciful unto you & unto your
ancestors for ever & it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking
unto the sons & daughters of Laman he caused that the sons & daughters of his
small to be brought before him & he spoke unto them saying behold my sons
& ^{my} daughters which are the sons & the daughters of my second son behold
I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons & daughters of
Laman wherefore shall I be destroyed but in the end they se
ed shall be blessed & it came to pass that ^{when} my father made an end of speaking
unto them behold it came to pass that he spoke unto the sons of Ishmael yea &
even all his household & of ten that he had made an end of speaking unto them
he spoke unto Sam saying blessed art thou & thy seed for thou shalt inherit
the land land like unto thy brother Nephi & thy seed shall be numbe
red with his seed & thou shalt be even like unto thy brother & thy seed

like unto his seed & there shall he be ⁱⁿ all thy days & it came to pass
that ^{my father} he had ^{his} share unto all his household according to the feelings of his
heart & the spirit of the Lord which was in him he wanted ^{it} & it came to pass that
he died & was buried & it came to pass that not many days after his death
on a & Leamed & the Lord & his small ^{children} were among with me because of the admo-
nitions of the Lord ^{and} he was constrained to speak unto them according to his
word for he had said many things unto them & also my father before his death many of
his sayings are written upon mine other plates for a more history past are writ-
ten upon mine other plates & upon these I write the things of my soul & many of the
Scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass for my soul delighteth in the
Scriptures & my heart ^{is} pondereth ^{them} & I write them for the learning & the profit of
my children behold my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord & my heart
pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen & heard & remembered
as not without seeing the great goodness of the Lord in showing me his great
& marvelous works my heart ^{is} enlarged with ^{his} power & he has made me that I am
glad my heart rejoiceth because of ^{his} ^{mercy} & I look my soul rejoiceth because
of mine iniquities ^{and} I am compassed about because of the temptations &
the Lins which doth so easily beset me & when I desire to rejoice my heart
is grieved because of my sins nevertheless I know in whom I have tru-
sted my soul hath been my support he hath lead me through mine afflictions
in the wilderness & he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep
he hath filled me with his love even unto the Consuming of my flesh he
hath confounded mine enemies with the causing of them to quake before
me behold he hath heard my cry by day & he hath given me knowledge by
visions in the night time & by day I have wanted hold in mighty pray-
er before him yea my voice have I sent upon high & Angels came down to
minister unto me & upon the wings of his spirit hath my body been carried
away upon exceeding high mountains & mine eyes hath he held great
things yea even to great for man therefore I was hidden that I should
not write them ^{and} then if I have seen so great things if the Lord in his con-
descension unto ^{the} children of men hath visited me in such manner
why should my heart weep & my soul linger in the vally of sorrow & my
flesh waste away & my strength slacken because of mine afflictions & why
should I yield to sin because of my flesh yea why should I give way
to temptations that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my
peace & afflict my soul why am I angry because of mine enemy and
my soul no longer snared in sin rejoice O my heart & glad place

Therefore I am the enemy of my soul do not anger again because of mine ene-
-mies do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions. I rejoice O my
-Lord I say unto the Lord & say O Lord I will praise thee forever yea my soul
will rejoice in thee my God & the rock of my salvation O Lord will thou
redeem my soul will thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies will
thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin may the gates of hell
be shut continually before me because that my heart is broken & my spirit
is contrite O Lord will thou shut the gates of thy righteousness before me
that I may walk in the path of the lowly that I may be shut in the planter
and O Lord will thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness O
Lord will thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies will thou
make my path straight before me will thou not place a stumbling block in
my way but that thou wouldst clear my way before me & hedge me up
my way but the ways of mine enemies O Lord I have trusted in thee & I will
trust in thee forever I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh for I know
that I cannot like that I put my trust in the arm of flesh yea I know that
that I put my trust in man or in the arm of flesh I know that God
will give liberally to him that asketh yea my God will give me if I ask in
amiss therefore I will lift up my voice unto the Lord I will cry unto thee my
God the rock of my righteousness behold my voice shall forever ascend up
unto thee my God & mine everlasting God Amen in Chapter IV
Behold it came to pass that I Nephi did cry much unto the Lord my God
because of the anger of my brethren but behold their anger did increase against me
inasmuch that they did seek to take away my life yea they did murmur against me
yea they murmured. Brother Hiram to write out as I have had much trial because
of him wherefore now let us slay him that we may not be afflicted in the
cause of his words for he told me with words that he shall be our ruler for it
be long enough unto us not to have the elder brethren to rule over this people now
I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me
but it sufficeth me to say that they did seek to take away my life & it came to
pass that the Lord did command me that I Nephi should depart from them & flee
into the wilderness & all they who would go with me wherefore it came to
pass that I Nephi did take my family & also Sam & his family & Sam's
elder brother & his family & also Joseph my younger brother & also my
sisters & all those who would go with me & all those who would go with
me were ~~they~~ ^{believed} ~~that~~ ^{in the} ~~would~~ ^{mornings} & the revelations of God
wherefore they did hearken unto my words & we did take our tents &

Yea, & thus saith the Lord God I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto
they shall save they shall repent of their iniquities & I will that the seed of him
that mineth with their seed for they shall be sown with the same causing
the Land of promise to be a land because of their sowing which was upon them
they did become an idolatrous people full of mischief & subtilty & did seek in their
holiness for beasts of prey like the Lion God said unto me they shall be a sponge
unto the seed to draw them up in summer & I will in as much as they will not
remember me & hearken unto my words they shall scourge them & I will to de-
struction & it came to pass that I prophesied of Jacob & Joseph that they should
be buried & I have been in the Land of my people & it came to pass that not
line of the manner of happiness & thirty years had passed away from the time
we left Jerusalem & I prophesied the records upon my plates which I had
made of my people that I came to pass that the Lord God said unto me make
other plates & thou shalt engrave many things upon them which are sealed in my
sight for the profit of thy people wherefore I prophesied to be obedient to the Commandments
of the Lord & I made these plates upon which I have engraven these things &
I engraven that which is pleasing unto God & if my people be pleased with the
things of God ^{will} let them be pleased with mine engravings which are upon these plates &
if my people desire to know the more particular part of the history of my people they may
search mine other plates & it sufficeth me to say that forty years had passed away
as yet we had already had wars & contentions with our Brethren Chapter V.

The words of Jacob the brother of Joseph which he spake unto the people of Ephraim
old my beloved brethren that I speak having been called of God & ordained of his
holy order & having been ordained by my brother Joseph unto whom ye look as a
thing in a protection & on whom ye depend for safety behold ye know that I have spoken
unto you concerning many things nevertheless I speak unto you again for I desire
to engrave the words of my brethren & I desire that ye may know that I have
known that it hath been for I have I exhorted you with all diligence & I have
taught you the words of my father & I have spoken unto you concerning all things which
are written from the creation of the world & now behold I would speak unto you
concerning things which are & which are to come wherefore I will read you the words
of Isaiah & they are the words which my Brother hath desired me that I should
speak unto you & I speak them unto you for your sakes that ye may learn to glorify
the name of your God & now the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah
saith concerning all the house of Israel wherefore they may be likened unto you for
ye are of the house of Israel & there are many things which have been spoken by Isa-
iah which may be likened unto you because that ye are of the house of Israel & I will

there are the words thus saith the Lord God, behold I will lift up mine hand & I
will set the Gentiles & I will set up my standard to the tower of the city, saying, they shall bring thy sons in
their arms & thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders & kings shall be thy
nursing fathers & their mothers shall be thy nursing mothers, they shall bow down to thee with
their faces towards the east & thou shalt be the dust of thy feet & thou shalt know that
I am the Lord for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me & none shall
speak of me some what concerning these things for behold the Lord hath shown me that
they who were at Jerusalem from whence I came have been slain & carried away
captive nevertheless the Lord hath shown unto me that they should return again & he
also hath shown unto me that the Lord God the Holy One of Israel should manifest
himself unto them in the flesh & after that he should manifest himself they should re-
ceive him & receive him according to the words of the angel which he spake unto me
& after that they have hardened their hearts & stiffened their necks against the
Holy One of Israel, behold the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them
& the day cometh that they shall be smitten & afflicted, wherefore after they are de-
stroyed to the top, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh & shall not
be suffered to perish because of the prayers of the faithful wherefore they shall be re-
turned & smitten & hated nevertheless the Lord will be merciful unto them
at which time they shall come to the knowledge of their redemption they shall be gather-
ed together again to the lands of their inheritance & he shall be the Gentiles
they of whom the prophet hath written, for behold if it so be that they shall repent
they shall not fight against Zion & do not war themselves to that great & abominable
church, they shall be saved, in the Lord God will fulfill his covenants which he
hath made unto his children & for this cause the prophet hath written these things
wherefore they that fight against Zion & the covenant people of the Lord shall lift up
the dust of their feet & the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed for the people
of the Lord are they which wait for him, for they shall wait for the coming of the
Messiah & behold according to the words of the prophet the Messiah will set him-
self again to redeem them ^{the second time} ^{the first time} he will manifest himself unto them in power
& great glory unto the destruction of their enemies when that day cometh when
they shall believe in him & none will be destroyed that believe in him & they
that believe not in him shall be destroyed both by fire & by the pest & by earth-
quakes & by bloodshed & by pestilence & by famine & they shall know that the
Lord is God the Holy One of Israel for shall the frag be taken from the mighty on the
lawful captive delivered, but thus saith the Lord even the captives of the in-
iquity shall be taken away & the spring of the transgression shall be delivered for the
Lord God shall fulfill his covenant people for thus saith the Lord I will enter

With them that can contend with thee as I will let them that oppose thee
with their own flesh & they shall be drunken with their own blood as with wine
and mine & all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Saviour & thy Redeemer the
mighty one of Israel & thou shalt say with the Lord I have put thee away as have I cast the
offscourings of this land where is the hill of your Mother's iniquity to
whom have I said that thou wast one of which of my children have I said you yet have
you have I said you behold for your iniquities have you sold yourselves & your own
transgressions against your Mother put away wherefore when I come there must I reward
you I call you there now, none to answer O House of Israel is my land that I said
at all that it cannot redeem me have I no power to deliver behold all my people
I lay up the Lord's wrath their iniquities & their wickedness & their iniquity to drink because
the waters are dried up & they ~~die~~ ^{die} because of thirst I clothe the heavens with
blackness & I make sackcloth their covering the Lord God hath given me the tongue
of the learned that I should know how to speak a word in season unto the Church
of Israel when ^{ye are} ye are away to make the morning by morning herewith mine ear to
hear as the learned the Lord God hath appointed mine ear & I was not rebellious
neither turned away back I gave my back to the smiters & my cheeks to them that
plucked off the hair I hid not my face from shame & spitting for the Lord God will
help me therefore shall I not be confounded therefore have I set my face like a
flint & I know that I shall not be ashamed & the Lord is near & he will justify
me who will contend with me let ^{ye} stand together who are mine adversaries let
him come near & I will smite him with the strength of my mouth for the Lord
God will help me & all they which shall condemn me behold all they shall stand
as a garment & the wrath shall eat them up who is among you that feareth the Lord
that obeyeth the voice of his servant that walketh in darkness & hath no light
behold all ye that kindle the fire that compass yourselves about with sparks and
kindle the light of your fire & in the sparks which ye have kindled this shall ye have
of mine hand ye shall go down in tomorrow's hearten to me ye that follow after vain
strains look unto the rock where ye are hewn & to the hole of the pit
from whence ye are digged look unto I have hewn you hewn & unto Jacob the
I have you I have called him a lover & blessed him for the Lord shall comfort him
will comfort all her waste places & he will make her wilderness like Eden
Eden & her desert like the garden of the Lord joy & gladness shall be found there
in thanksgiving & the voice of melody hearken unto me ^{highly} ~~highly~~ ^{highly} ~~highly~~ give
ear unto me O my people for a law shall be made from me & I will make
judgment to sit for a light ^{for} ~~for~~ the people my righteousness is near my
salvation is gone forth & mine arm shall judge the people the idols shall

upon me & on mine arm shall they trust. Let us your eyes to the heavens & look
upon the earth beneath, for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke & the earth
shall wax old like a garment & they that dwell therein shall die in like manner.
but my salvation shall be forever & my righteousness shall not be abolished. I have
written unto you that I knew righteousness the people in whose heart. I have written
my law. I am not the respecter of men neither be ye afraid of their revilings
for the moth shall eat like a garment & the worm shall eat them like wool but
my righteousness shall be forever & my salvation from generation to generation.
I make a wake for you strength to arm of the Lord awake in the ancient days
and shall not. ~~He~~ hath cut Rahab & wounded the dragon and shall not it
be. ~~He~~ hath dried the sea the waters of the great deep that hath made the deep
the of the sea away for the redeemed to pass over therefore the redeemed of the
Lord shall at last come with singing unto Zion & everlastingly by & holiness shall
be upon their heads & they shall obtain gladness & joy forever & mourning shall
be away. Can he get down he that comforteth you be told who art thou that
thou shouldst be afraid of man which shall die & of the Son of man which shall
be made like unto you & forgettest the Lord thy maker that hath stretched forth
the heavens & laid the foundations of the earth & shall persevere continually ev-
ery day because of the fury of the oppression as if he were ready to destroy & where
is the fury of the oppression the captive smile that he may be ^{loose} ~~loose~~
~~loose~~ that he should die in the pit now that his bread should fail but I am
the Lord thy God whose name is near the Lord of hosts is my name & I have put
my words in thy mouth & hath covered thee in the shadow of ^{mine} ~~thy~~ hand that
I may plant the heavens & lay the foundations of the earth & say unto Zion be-
hold thou art my people a wake a wake stand up O Jerusalem which hast drunk at the
hand of the Lord the Cup of his fury shall hast drink the dregs of the Cup of trembling
now & now to guide thee among all the Sons the hath brought forth neither that hath
with him by the hand of all the Sons she hath brought up these two Sons are. Come now
to this which shall be song for thee thy desolation & destruction & the famine & the sword
& by whom shall I comfort thee thy Sons have fainted some these two thy lie at
the head of all the streets as a wild Bull in a net they are full of the fury of the Lord there
hath of thy God therefore hear now this their affliction & drunkenness & not in mine
as saith the Lord the Lord & thy God pleadeth the cause of ^{his} ~~thy~~ people behold I have
out of thine hand the Cup of trembling the dregs of the Cup of my fury thou
drink it again but I will put it unto the hand of them that
is to thy God how down that we may go on in & there shall
stand & as he shall to them that men come

O Jerusalem the holy City for henceforth
 there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised & the unclean shall shake
 thyself from the dust arise & sit down (Jerusalem loose thyself from the bands of
 Captivity daughter of Zion) Chapter VI. And now my beloved
 Brethren I have read these things that ye might know concerning the Covenants of the
 Lord that he hath covenanted with all the house of Israel that he hath spoken unto thee
 us by the mouth of his holy prophets even from the beginning down from generation to ge-
 neration until the time cometh that they shall be united to the true Church & fold of
 God whereby they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance & shall
 be established in all their lands of promise behold my beloved Brethren I
 speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice & lift up your heads forever because of
 the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your Children for I know that
 there have been many many of you that know of things to come wherefore I know
 that ye know that our flesh must waste away & die nevertheless in our bodies we
 shall see God & yet I know that we know that in the body he shall show himself unto
 the people of Jerusalem from whence we came for it is expedient that it should be among
 them for it becometh the great Creation that he suffereth himself to become subject
 unto man in the flesh & that all men that all men might become subject unto
 him for as death hath passed upon all men to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator
 there must needs be a power of resurrection & the resurrection must needs come unto man
 as by reason of the fall & the fall came by reason of transgression & because man became
 fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord wherefore it must needs be
 an infinite atonement said it should be an infinite atonement this corruption
 could not put on incorruption wherefore the first judgment ^{which} came upon man
 must needs have remained to an end less duration & if the flesh must
 have laid down to rest & to remain till to it & no more earth to rise no more & the
 wisdom of God his mercy & grace for behold if the flesh should rise no more our
 spirits must become subject to that evil (which fell from before the crea-
 tion of the world) Eternal God & become like the Devil to rise no more & our spirits must
 have become like unto him & we become Devils Angels to a Devil to be shut
 out from the presence of our God & to remain with the father of lies in misery like
 unto himself & he that being who beguiled our first Parents who transformed
 himself right unto an Angel & light & stablished up the Children of men unto
 secret combinations of murder & all manner of secret works of darkness & he
 is great the goodness of our God who prepared a way for our escape from the grip
 of this awful monster & that monster death & hell which I call the
 father of the body & also the death of the spirit & because of the way of deliverance

of our God the holy one of Israel this death of which I have spoken which is the
temporal shall deliver up its dead which death is the great & this death of which
I have spoken which is the spiritual death shall deliver up its dead which spi-
ritual death is hell therefore death & hell must deliver up its dead & hell must de-
liver up its captive spirits & the grave must deliver up its captive bodies & the dead
of the spirits of men will be restored one to the other it is by the power of the holy one
of Israel I know great the plan of our God for on the other hand the paradise of God must
deliver up the spirits of the righteous & the grave deliver up the body of the righteous
& the spirit & the body is restored to itself again & all men become incorruptible
& immortal & they are living souls having a blessed knowledge like unto us in
the flesh save it be that acknowledge shall be brought wherefore we shall have
a perfect knowledge of all our guilt & our uncleanness & our nakedness & the rig-
hteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their enjoyment & their righteousness be-
ing clothed with living garments with the robe of righteousness & it shall come to
pass that when all men shall have risen from their first death unto life inso-
much as they have become immortal they must appear before the judgment seat
of the holy one of Israel & then cometh the judgment & then must they be judged ac-
cording to the holy judgment of God & assuredly as the Lord liveth in the Lord God
hath spoken it & it is his eternal word which cannot pass away that they who
have been righteous shall be righteous still & they who have been filthy shall be fil-
thy still wherefore they who are filthy are the Serpent & the Angels & they shall
go away into everlasting fire preparing for them & their torment is as a lake of fire
and brimstone whose flames ascendeth up forever & there is no end & the great
mass & the multitude of our God for he telleth all his words & they have gone forth
out of his mouth & his law must be fulfilled but he told the righteous that
Saints of the holy one of Israel they who have believed in the holy one of Israel
they who have endured the crosses of the world & despised the shame of it they shall inherit
the Kingdom of God which was promised ^{from} them from the foundation of the world &
they shall be full of power to the greatness of the mercy of our God the holy one of Israel
for he delivereth his Saints from that awful monster the Serpent & death
hell & that lake of fire & brimstone which is endless torment & how great the
holiness of our God for he knoweth all things & there is not any thing save he know-
eth & he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken
unto his voice for he holdeth the souls of all men & the pains of
living creature both men women & children & he long to the family of
man & he suffereth that the resurrection might pass upon all men that all
might stand before him at the great & judgment & he commandeth all men

that they must repent to be baptized in his name having perfect faith in the
Holy one of Israel or they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God & if they will not repent
& believe in his name & be baptized in his name & endure to the end they must be
damned for the Lord God the Holy one of Israel hath spoken it wherefore he hath
given a law & where there is no law given there is no punishment & where there is
no punishment there is no condemnation & where there is no condemnation the me-
rits of the Holy one of Israel ~~hath~~ ^{have} ~~been~~ ^{are} upon them because of the atonement for
they are delivered by the power of him for the atonement satisfieth the deman-
ds of his justice upon all those who both not the law given to them that they are
delivered from that awful moment death & hell & the devil & the lake of fire &
brimstone which is endless torment & they are referred to that God who gave them the
law which is the Holy one of Israel but we unto them that hath the law given
a that hath all the commandments of God like unto us & that transgresseth them &
that wasteth the days of his probation for as such is his state (that cunning
plan of the evil one) & the unbelief & the frailties & the foolishness of men
when they are learned they think they are wise & they hearken not unto the Council
of God for they will not suppose they know of themselves wherefore their
wisdom is foolishness & it profiteth them not wherefore they shall perish but
to be learned is good if it be that they hearken unto the Council of God but
no unto the rich which are rich as to the things of the world for because that
they are rich they despise the poor & they perceive the meek & their hearts are
lifted up on their treasures wherefore their treasure is their God & behold their treasure
shall perish with them also & no unto the deaf that will not hear for they sha-
ll perish no unto the blind that will not see for they shall perish also no unto the
uncircumcised of heart for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the
last day no unto the liar for he shall be thrust down to hell no unto the
murderer who deliberately killeth for he shall die no unto them who commit
it whereof they shall be thrust down to hell yea no unto ^{those} ~~they~~ that re-
verence idols for the Lord of all Spirits delecteth in them & anoint me unto all
~~those who~~ ^{those} that die in sin for they shall return to God & behold his face & re-
main in their sins O my beloved Brethren remember the awfulness in transgression
against that Holy God & also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning
one remember that he carnally minded is death & he spiritually minded is life & eter-
nal O my beloved Brethren give ear to my words remember the greatness of the Holy
one of Israel do not say that I have spoken hard things against you for ye do ye
will smile against the truth for I have spoken the words of your maker I know
that the records of truth are hard against all uncleanliness but the righteous

from ~~the~~ for they love the truth & are not shaken & then my beloved brethren & I
come unto the Lord the only one ^{eminent} ~~that~~ that his fathers righteousness behold the
may for man is narrow but it hath a shield come before him & the keeper
of the gate is the only one for ever & he will not let any man pass
other way save it be by the gate, for he cannot be deceived. O the Lord God who is
our Father in heaven he will be with the wise & the learned & they that are
rich will be able to pass up because of their learning & their wisdom & their riches
as well as the poor, who are the elect. I say they shall cast their things away &
consider themselves as a beggar before God & come down in the depths of humility he
will not fail unto them but the things of the world the prudent shall be hid from
them & even that happiness which is prepared for the saints O my beloved brethren
remember my words be bold & take off my garments & make them before you
prophets of my salvation that be mine, and with his all watching eye witness me &
shall know at the last day when all men shall be judged of their works that the God
of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul & that I stand with
brightness before him & am rid of all bond O my beloved brethren turn away from
your sins & shall be free of all chains of him that would bind you but come unto the God who
is the rock of our salvation prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice
shall be administered unto the righteous in the day of judgment & let us magnify
at shrink with awful fear that ye may not remember your awful guilt in secret
places & be constrained to confess before the Lord your God & his judgments O Lord God think
highly but know my guilt & transgressions the law & my transgressions are mine
& the evil hath obtained me that I am a prey to his awful mercy but behold my
brethren is it not sad that I should awake you to an awful reality of these things
would I know of your souls if your mind were pure would I be plain unto you
according to the plainness of the truth of ye were held from in behold if ye were
able I would speak unto you of holiness but as ye are not holy & ye look upon me
a sinner & must needs be unpardonable that I least you the consequences of sin
behold my soul at death in & my heart delighteth in righteousness & I will pro-
claim the holy name of my God now my brethren every one that shall come to the
water & be baptized hath no money come buy & let your money buy mine & shall without me-
roy & without price wherefore do not spend money for that which is of no worth nor
your labour for that which cannot satisfy Iarken diligently unto our remem-
ber the words which I have spoken & come unto the holy one of Israel & feast upon the
at which justice shall be ministered & let your soul delight in holiness
behold my beloved brethren remember the words of your God pray unto him con-
tinually by day & give thanks unto his holy name by night let your hearts

of which I beheld in great the covenants of the Lord & how great his covenants
were unto the children of men & because of his great mercies & his great mercy the
Father promised unto us that our lives shall not only be preserved according
to the flesh but that he would preserve them & in future generations they shall
become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel & in my Father's name I would the
Father would give more but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my
words. Amen. (Chapter VIII.) And now Jacob speak unto you
again my beloved Brethren concerning that right branch of which I have spoken
for behold the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the
flesh which I have been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in
the flesh because of unbelief nevertheless God will be merciful unto many & our Chi-
ldren shall be saved that they may come to that which will give them the truth the
knowledge of their redemption wherefore I said unto you it must needs be expedient
that Christ should come in the last night of the age I have said unto me that this should be the
name of the branch that should come among the Jews among whom shall be the more rich
ed part of the world & they shall crucify him for he hath our God & there is no
other salvation on earth that would crucify their God & should the mighty
ones be wrought among other nations they would reject & know that he is the
in God but because of his mercies & his great mercies they shall stiffen their
neck against him that he be crucified wherefore because of their iniquities de-
struction & famine & pestilence & blood shall come upon them & they shall
shall not be slain shall be scattered among all nations but behold this sa-
id the Lord God when the day cometh that they shall believe in me that I am the
Father I have covenanted with their Father that they shall be restored in the
flesh upon the earth unto the lands of their inheritance & it shall come to pass
that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion from the Isles of the Sea
& from the four parts of the earth & the fallow of the Gentiles shall be great in the
eyes of me saith God in changing them forth to the lands of their inheritance the
Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them & their Queens shall become
nursing mothers wherefore the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles for
he hath spoken it & who can dispute but behold this land saith God shall be a la-
nd of their inheritance & the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land & this land shall
all be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles & there shall be no King upon the land
which shall raise up unto the Gentiles & I will fortify this land against all other
nations & he that fighteth against Zion shall perish saith God for he that raiseth
up a King against me shall perish for the Lord the King of Heaven will be their
King & I will be a light unto them for ever that hear my words wherefore

[illegible]

68. even as I have seen him & my brother Jacob also hath seen him as I have seen
him & I will send their words forth unto my Children to know unto them
that my words are true wherefore by the words of three God hath said I will visit
bless my word nevertheless God is with me more richly than all his word
as he hath my soul delighteth in promising unto my people the truth of the com-
ing of Christ for this end hath the Law of Moses been given & all things which
have been given of God from the beginning of the world unto man are the type
& shadow of him & a true my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he ha-
th made to our fathers yea my soul delighteth in his grace & his justice & for
ever more in the grace & eternal plan of deliverance from death & my soul doth
delight in promising unto my people that save Christ should come all men must
perish for if there be no God if there be no God we are not
for then could have been no Creation but there is a God & he is Christ & he com-
eth in the fullness of his own time & now I write some of the words of Isaiah
that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts
and rejoice in all men now these are the words of the Lord which he hath
said unto all men the word that Isaiah the Son of Amos saw concerning Judah
& Jerusalem & it shall come to pass in the last days when the mountain of the
Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains & shall be exalt-
ed above the hills & all nations shall flow unto it & many people shall say come
ye & let us go up to the mountain of the Lord to the house of the God of Jacob & he will te-
ach us of his ways & we will walk in his paths for out of Zion shall go forth the la-
wy & the word of the Lord from Jerusalem he shall judge among the nations & shall
rebuke many people & they shall beat their swords into plowshares & their spears
into pruning hooks nation shall not lift up sword against nation neither shall
they learn war any more & the house of Jacob shall be as walk in the light &
the Lord shall come for ye have all gone astray & every one to his wicked way & the
Lord shall have his habitation by the house of Jacob because they have re-
mained from the east & have been unto soothsayers like the Philistines & they have re-
solved in the children of strangers their land also is full of silver & gold nei-
ther is there any end of their treasures their land is also full of houses neither is
there any end of their habitation their land also is full of idols & they worship
not at their own hands that which their own fingers have made & the meaner
man boweth down & the great man humbleth himself not therefore forgive him
that Oppressed ones enter into the net & hideth in the dust for the pe-
nalty of the Lord & the glory of his majesty shall smite them & it shall come to pass
that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled & the haughtiness of men shall

be bowed down in the Land alone shall be exalted in that day. For the day of the Lord
I will soon come upon all nations yet upon every one sea upon the proud
& lofty & upon every one which is lifted up & he shall be brought low & the
captives shall come & be with the prisoners & shall be higher than he
that was upon all the earth & I will be upon all the high mountains & upon all the hills
& upon all the great waters & I will be upon every high place & upon every high place
I will be upon every low place & upon all the ships of the sea & upon all the ships
I will be & upon all the mountains & the bottom of man's hall & I will be down
& the laughter of men shall be made low & the Land alone shall be exalted in
that day & the idols shall utterly be abolished & they shall go into the holes of the
earth into the caves of the earth for the Lord & the Lord shall come upon them & the
glory of his majesty shall smite them when he cometh to shake terribly the earth
in that day a man shall cast his idols of silver & his idols of gold which he hath
made for himself to worship to the moles & to the bats to go into the chests of the
rocks into the tops of the rugged rocks for the Lord & the Lord shall come upon them &
the majesty of his glory shall smite them when he cometh to shake terribly the earth
O ye ye men whose hearts are in the world for whom is he to be accounted
for he shall be low the Lord of hosts doth take away from hence him that is proud
the day & the state the whole staff of bread & the whole staff of water ^{the} might
many the man was the judge & the prophet & the seer & the ancient the captain
of fifty the honorable man & the counsellor the cunning abler & the eloquent
the old & I will give children unto them to be their princes & babes shall rule over
them & the people shall be oppressed every one by another & every one by his neighbor
the child shall be born himself proudly against the ancient & the last against the
honourable when a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father & he
shall say that his brother is his brother & he shall say that his brother is his brother & he
shall say that his brother is his brother & he shall say that his brother is his brother
there is neither bread nor clothing in the house not as a rule of the people for perara
there is neither bread nor clothing in the house because their tongues & their doings have been
against the Lord to provoke the eyes of his glory to show of them countenance doth not
against them & doth declare them to be enemies to the Lord & they cannot hide it
we are to their faces for they have rewarded evil unto themselves say unto the high
priests that it is well with them for they shall eat the fruit of their doings we are to
the wicked for they shall perish in the reward of their hands shall be upon them &
my people children are their oppressors & women rule over them & my people they
who have led the cause to be to have destroy the way of my paths the Lord stand
eth up to plead & standeth to judge the people the Lord will enter into their midst

To will the ancients of his people & the primeval kings have taken up the vine
and to the spoil of the same in your houses what mean ye, ye men of
the land? The fathers of the land will the Lord God of hosts overcome the land with his
arm the daughter of Zion are caught, & walk with stretched forth necks & wanton
eyes walking & minding as they go & making a laughing stock with them. Therefore the
Lord will smile with a scowl the crown of the head of the daughter of Zion & the Lord will dis-
cover their secret parts in that day the Lord will take away the beauty of looking
ornaments & cannot round their like the moon the crown & the bracelets the my-
stic the ornaments & the ornaments of the legs & the head bands & the tabrets & the
earrings the rings & nose jewels the changeable vails of apparel & the mantles &
the miniskirts & the covering like the clouds the fine linen & the robes & the masks & it
shall all come to pass in that day of wrath shall be broken & instead of a
girdle a rent & instead of a belt a halter & instead of a stomacher a
girding of sackcloth humming instead of beauty the men shall fall by the sword
& the mightily in the war & the gates shall be lamented & the wall shall be desolate
& shall sit upon the ground. In that day the women shall take hold of one man say-
ing we will eat our own bread & wear our own apparel only let us be called by the
name of the Lord our Redeemer in that day shall the branch of the Lord be be-
autified & glorified the fruit of the earth & the children shall come to them that are ex-
pect of the Lord & it shall come to pass in that day that are left in Zion ^{remaineth} & the
Salem shall be called by the name of the Lord that is written among the living in Jerusalem
in which the Lord shall have mercy on the daughter of Zion & shall
have mercy on the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment
& the spirit of burning & the Lord will create upon every dwelling place of mount
Zion & upon her assemblies a cloud of smoke by day & the shining of a flaming
fire by night for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defense & there shall be a
habitable for a shadow in the day time from the heat & for a place of refuge & a
cover from storm from rain & then will I sing to my beloved a song of my beloved to
singing in my vineyard my well beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill
& he fenced it & gathered out the stones thereof & planted it with the choicest vine &
he built a tower in the midst of it & also made a winepress therein & he looked that it
should bring forth grapes & it brought forth wild grapes & now O inhabitants of Jeru-
salem & men of Judah judge I pray you between me & my vineyard what could
I have done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it wherefore when
I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes & now
I go to I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard I will take away the hedge
thereof & it shall be eaten up & I will break down the wall thereof &

It shall be laden down, it will lay it waste, it shall not be burned, nor depth of
but there shall come up, hives & hives: I will also command the clouds that they
rain no rain upon it, for the vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the House of Israel & the
men of Judah, a pleasant plant & he looked for judgment & he beheld of justice for
righteousness ^{not} he beheld any, we will show them that we have to house till there
can be no place that there may be placed alone in the midst of the world in many
south, the land of hosts for truth many houses shall be isolated & great & fair
cities without inhabitant, your vineyards of vineyard shall yield one better & the
seed of a woman shall yield an offspring unto them that rise up early in the
morning that they may follow strong, drink that continue until night & wine
inflame them & the harp & the viol the tabret & pipe & wine are in their feasts
but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands
& they say, my people have gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge & their
honorable men are famished & their multitude dried up with thirst, therefore shall
they enlarge their mouth, & their mouth shall be without measure & their glory & their multitude
shall be brought down, & he that exalteth shall be divided into it & the mean man shall be
brought down & the mighty man shall be humbled & the eyes of the lofty shall be
humbled, but the Lord of hosts shall be exalted in judgment, & God that is holy shall
be sanctified in righteousness, then shall the lambs feed of their manner, &
the waste places of the holiness shall strangers call, we went to them that drew iniquity
into with cords of vanity & sin and ^{will} with a cart rope, that say, let him make
his speed, hasten his work that we may see it, & let the counsel of the holy one of God
shall draw nigh & come, that we may know it, we went to them that call evil good &
good evil, that put darkness for light & light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet
& sweet for bitter, we will be wise in their own eyes & prudent in their own
sight, we went to the mighty, to drink wine & men of strength, to mingle strong
drink, which has by the making, for reward & take away, the righteousness
of the righteous from them, therefore as the fire & earnest the stubble & the flame
consume them, the grass their meat shall be rottenness & their blossoms shall go up
as dust, because they have despised the law of the Lord & despised his word
& of the holy one of Israel, therefore is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people
& he hath stretched forth his hand against them & hath smitten them & the
hills did tremble, their carcasses were down in the midst of the streets for all
this, his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still, & he will
lift up his sign to the nations from sea to sea, with hiss unto them from the end of
the earth, & behold they shall come with speed swiftly, none shall be weary
nor stumble among them, none shall slumber nor sleep neither shall

the quills of thine arrows be loosed, nor the darts of thine shafts be broken
when arrows shall be sharp & all their bows bent & their bows shall be con-
stant like a lion & their voices like a whistling & their roaring like a lion they shall
all come like young lions ye shall have a lay hold of the prey & shall carry an
ay & none shall deliver it on that day they shall roar against them like the
roaring of the sea & if they look unto the land behold darkness & sound of the
light is darkened in the heavens thereof Chap. 18
In the year that King M^ghiah died I saw ^{the} the Lord sitting upon a throne
high & lifted up, his train filled the temple about it & I saw the Gophers, & I
saw the men with wings, with I saw the crown of his face & with the crown he covered his
face & with I saw, he did ^{the} & one cried unto another said hark hark hark is the
Lord of hosts the whole earth is full of his glory & the posts of the doors moved at
the voice of him that spake the house was filled with smoke then said I went
forth a man ^{and} and I saw him ⁱⁿ dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips for
no eyes have seen the King the Lord of hosts then flew one of the seraphims
in the twinkling of an eye in his hand which he had taken with the tongs
off the altar & he laid upon my mouth & said he this hath touched thy lips
thine iniquity is taken away & thy sin purged ^{the} I heard the voice of the Lord
saying whom shall I send & who will go for me then I said here ^{am} I send me & here
go to tell this people hearing indeed but they understand not & see indeed but
they perceive not make the heart of this people fat & make their ears heavy & shut
their eyes lest they see with their eyes & hear with their ears & understand with
their heart & ^{and} be converted be hear then said I saw how long & he said until the cities
be wasted without man & be laid out to the houses without man & the land be utterly
desert the Lord have removed men far away for there shall be a great forsaking in
the midst of the land but yet in it there shall be a tenth & they shall return & shall
be called as a tithing tree as an oak whose substance is in them when they eat
their leaves so the holy Lord shall be the substance thereof & it shall come to pass
the days of Abah the Son of Israhah the Son of M^ghiah King of Judah &
Hishim King of Syria & I saw the Son of Amalek King of Israel went up to
Jerusalem to war against it but could not prevail & it was told
house of David saying Syria is confederate with Ephraim & his heart was
merry the heart of his people as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind
then said the Lord unto Hishim go forth now to meet Abah & Hishim
then at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the wall
I saw him take heed he quiet fear not neither be faint hearted
thine eyes of these smoking line bands for the fierce anger of the Lord with

Counselor, the might of God, the Everlasting Father, the Father of Qual, of the increase of
of government & peace there is no end, upon the throne of David & upon his kingdom to order
to establish it with judgment, & with justice from hence forth even forever. The King of the
Land of Israel will perform this & the Lord sent his word unto Jacob & it hath lighted upon his
saint & all the people shall know even Ephraim & the inhabitants of Samaria that they
in the pride & the stoutness of heart, the bricks are fallen down but we will build
with hewn stones: the beams are cut down, but we will change them into Cedar.
Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Reuben against him, & join his ene-
mies together the Syrians, before & the Philistines behind: they shall devour Israel
tho' open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still
against the people to smite them, not only him that smiteth them, neither do they ^{seek} the Lord: but
therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head & tail, branch & rush in one day.
The ancient be is the head of the staff that he smiteth him, he is the tail, for the
leaders of this people cause them to err: they that are head of them are destroyed: there-
fore the Lord shall have mercy upon their young men, neither shall have mercy on their
old & widows: for every one of them is a hypocrite & conceit doeth every mouth speak
folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still
markedness, burneth as the fig tree shall devour the briars & thorns & shall kindle
in the thickets, & they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke. Strong is
the wrath of the Lord of hosts in the land: darkness to the people shall be as the fuel of the
fire: no man shall spare his brother. He shall snatch on the right hand, & he har-
asseth: he shall eat on the left hand, & they shall not be satisfied: they shall eat
every man the flesh of his own arm: Manasseh, Ephraim, & Ephraim transgressed:
they together shall lie against Judah: for all this his anger is not turned away, but his
hand stretched out still. He saith unto them that decrease in righteous desires, & that write
piousness, which they have professed to turn aside the needy from judgment, & to take
away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, & that they may
rob the fatherless: & what will ye do in the day of visitation, & in the desolation which
shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? & where will ye leave your glory? & it
come they shall bow down under the prisoners, & they shall fall under the slain:
all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand stretched out still. O Assyrian, the
rod of mine anger, & the staff in their hand is their indignation: I will send him
against a hypocritical nation, & against the people of my wrath: with I give him
Charge, to take the spoil & to take the prey, & to tread them down like the mire of
streets. Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so: but
he saith it is to destroy & cut off nations not a few for he saith, are not mine
to geth, & he is not Calno as Canaan: neither is he as the nations of the earth.

He reman as I reman as is my hand, I shall sound of the Kingdom of the Gods & will
graven in the form of Generation of I reman shall not as I have done unto I reman
nia & I reman shall do to I reman to be I shall not as I shall come to pass &
when the Lord shall perform his whole work upon I reman & upon I reman &
will punish the fruit of the stone, heart of the King of Assyria & the glory of his
high looks for beneath by the strength of my hand & by my wisdom I have done the
all things I have done I am proud of I have ordered the borders of the temple & have ruled
the inhabitants & I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man & my hand
shall be as a nest the riches of the people & as one gathereth eggs that are left
I shall gather all the earth & there shall be none that shall be able to open the mi-
nute or peeped shall the Lord be as I shall against him that shall be as I shall
all the way magnify itself against him that shall be as if the rod should strike it
if against him that shall be as if the staff should lillup itself as if it were
no man therefore shall the Lord the Lord of hosts send among his people
& under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire & the light
of Israel shall be for a light & his holy one shall burn & shall denounce
him & his name in one day & shall consume the glory of his name & of his fruit
his field both I shall & I shall they shall be as when a standard be as I shall
the rest of the trees of his forest shall be as that a child may write them & it shall
come to pass in that day that the remnant of Israel & such as are escaped of the house of
Israel shall no more again slay upon him that shall be as I shall slay upon the
Lord the holy one of Israel in truth the remnant shall return & even the rem-
nant of Israel unto the mighty God for though thy people be as the sand of the sea
a remnant of them shall return the consumption thereof shall be as I shall with righteousness
for the Lord God of Israel shall make a consumption even as I shall in all the land
therefore thus saith the Lord God of hosts O my people be not afraid of the Assyrian he shall smite thee with a rod & shall lift up his staff
against thee after the manner of Egypt thou shalt be as a very little while & the indignation
shall cease & mine anger in their destruction & the Lord of hosts shall stir up a camp
for him according to the slaughter of the wisdom at the root of Gilead & as he was
upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt & it shall come to
pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder & his yoke
shall be off thy neck & the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing he is come to
death he is cast to prison at Mishmach he hath laid up his carriages they go
over the passage they have taken up their lodging at Geba Ramoth is afraid
Gibeah of Saul is fled lest of the voice of Gath & Gath is heard
to Laish O ye men of Madmenah is removed the inhabitants of Gath

When that day shall come, I will call upon his name, declare his name among the
people, make mention that his name is exalted among the heathen, he hath done excellent
things, that is known in all the earth, and it shall be as the inhabitants of Zion for great is
that one of Israel in the midst of the people. Chapter X. The burden of Babylon
that Isaiah the Son of Man saw. Verily I say unto you, upon the high mountains and
the voice unto them, shall the Lord say, that they may go in, to the gates of the nobles. I have com-
manded my servants, and they have called down mightily, and I have mine anger, and I am not afraid
that I will be angry in my highness, the voice of the multitude, in the mountains like as of a
great assembly, tumultuous noise of the nations. Kingdoms of nations gathered together
the Lord of hosts mustered the hosts of the battle, they come from a far country, from the end
of heaven upon the Son of Man, the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land. Verily
I say, on the day of the Lord, as at a banquet shall come a destruction from the Almighty, there
shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt, and they shall be afraid, and
a sorrow shall take hold of them, they shall be amazed one at another, their faces shall
be as flames, he shall be the day of the Son of Man, and he shall be with wrath & fire, and he shall
lay the same to waste, and he shall destroy the sinners thereof, for the glory of heaven &
the constellations thereof shall not give them light, the Sun shall be darkened in his
going forth, & the Moon shall not give her light, & I will punish the world
for evil, & the wicked, for their iniquity, I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, &
will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible, I will make a man more precious than fine
gold, even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir, therefore I will shake the heaven,
& the earth shall remove out of his place, in the wrath of the Lord of hosts, in the day
of his fierce anger, & it shall be as the ~~white~~ ^{chaff} ~~chaff~~ ^{chaff} as a chaff that no man taketh,
they shall every man turn to his own, people shall be every one into his own land, &
every one that is proud shall be humbled, though they say, every one that is joined to the wicked
all shall be together, and their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes, their
eyes shall be spoiled of their wives, ravished, & held, I will stir up the Medes against them,
which shall not regard silver & gold, neither shall they delight in it, their bows shall
also dash the young men to pieces, & they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb by their eyes,
neither shall they spare children. Babylon the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' exaltation,
they shall say, when God overthrew Sodom & Gomorrah, shall we be inhabited? neither
shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation, neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there,
neither shall the Soudan dwell there, neither shall the kings of the desert dwell there, neither
shall the merchants come there, neither shall the merchants come there, neither shall the merchants
shall dance there, & the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, &
they shall sing in their pleasant palaces, for their time is near to come, & they shall not be
delivered. I will destroy her speedily, & I will be merciful unto my people.

[illegible]

of a unity at the time when they shall come to pass; wherefore they are of worth unto the children of
men; & he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, & Confine the
words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the
last day; for in that day shall they understand the things wherefore, for their good have I sent
them; & as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so
shall they be destroyed, from generation to generation, according to their iniquities; & never
hath any of them been destroyed, save it were, as I told them by the prophets of the Jews
before; it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them
immediately of ten my father, & of generations, nevertheless they hardened their hearts;
& according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away
Captives into Babylon; & now shall I speak because of the spirit which is in me, & to make
standing; that they have been carried away, they shall return again, & possess the land of
Jerusalem; wherefore they shall be restored again to the hands of their iniquity; but he
that they shall have wars, & rumors of wars, & when the day cometh that the only begotten of
the father, yea even the father of heaven & of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the
flesh, he shall be hated, they will reject him, because of ^{their iniquities} ~~their iniquities~~ & the hardness of their hearts,
& the stiffness of their necks; he shall be hated, they will crucify him, & of him that he is laid in a
Sepulchre; on the third day, he shall rise, from the dead, with healing in his wings;
all ^{those who} ~~the people~~ shall believe on his name, shall be saved in the kingdom of God; therefore, my
soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, & my heart doth magnify
by his holy name, & behold, it shall come to pass that after the Messiah shall rise from
the dead, & shall manifest himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe
on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again, & we unto them in the light again
to God, & the people of that land, wherefore the Jews shall be scattered among all nations, yea,
& also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations, &
that they have been scattered, to the Lord God hath reunged them by other nations, for the
sake of many generations, yea even down from generation to generation, until they shall be
persuaded to believe in Christ the Son of God, & the atonement, which is infinite for
all mankind; & when that day shall come, that they shall believe in Christ, & worship him, &
then in his ^{name} ~~name~~ will I give them hearts to believe, & look not forward any more for another
messiah; & at that time the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they
should believe these things; the Lord ^{will} ~~shall~~ set his hand again the second time to restore his
people from their lost & fallen state, wherefore he will provide tokens & manifest wonders
among the children of men, wherefore he shall bring forth his words unto them, which
words shall judge them at the last day; for they shall be given them for the purpose of con-
vincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them, & unto the convincing
of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for

I have beheld & say unto you, that the right way is to believe in Christ & to keep his
 not Christ is the only one of great righteousness must bow down before him & worship
 him with all your might, mind & strength, & give whole soul & give do this ye shall come
 wise he cast out & inasmuch as it shall be expedient ye must keep the performances &
 ordinances of God, untill the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses &
 after that Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you my
 children & my beloved brethren & the words which he shall speak unto you shall be
 the law which ye shall do, on the whole I say unto you that I have beheld that
 many generations shall pass away & there shall be great wars, contentions among
 my people & often that the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my
 people of his health & also of his death & resurrection & great & terrible shall that
 day be unto the wicked for they shall perish & they shall perish because they cast out the prophets
 & the Saints & I know them & I say I know wherefore the day of the blood of the Saints shall
 all ascend up to God from the ground again. I know wherefore all they ^{who} are proud & that
 do wickedly the day that cometh shall burn them up with the Lord of hosts for they shall
 be as stubble & they that kill the prophets & the Saints the riches of the earth shall be
 allowed them up with the Lord of hosts & mountains shall cover them & which winds shall
 carry them away & buildings shall fall upon them & crush them to pieces & grind them
 to powder & they shall be visited with thunders & lightnings & earthquakes & all man-
 ner of destructions for the fire of the angels of the Lord shall be kindled against them &
 they shall be as stubble & the day that cometh shall consume them with the Lord of hosts
 O the pain & the anguish of my soul for the loss of the blood of my people for I have both
 seen it & I will, with concernment, make known the presence of the Son of God I will that I say unto my
 God they may see that he hath the righteous that hearken unto the words of the
 prophets & do his commandments that I look forward unto Christ with a steadfastness for those
 who have given notwithstanding all persecutions & all things which shall come upon them
 shall not perish but the Lord of righteousness shall appear unto them & they shall have
 them & they shall have peace with them untill three generations shall have passed
 away & many of the days the generation shall have passed away in righteousness &
 when these things shall have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people
 for notwithstanding the pains of my soul I have seen that I have seen that it shall
 all come to pass & they shall themselves be brought to pass the reward of their pride & their
 wickedness they shall have destruction for because they could not see the Son of God
 who of dark men, rather than light therefore they must go down to hell for the spirit of
 the Lord will not always shine with man & when the spirit ceaseth to shine with
 man then cometh a speedy destruction & this grieveth my soul & as I spoke concerning
 the convincing of the Jews that Jesus is the very Christ it must needs be

[illegible]

mandated any that they should ^{behold} ~~behold~~ I say unto you that they
may but he hath given it for all men & he hath commanded his people that they
should persuade all men unto repentance behold both the Lord commanded any that
they should not partake of his goodness behold I say unto you nay, but all men are freely
of the one title unto the other & none are forbidden he commanded that there shall be
no priestcrafts for behold priestcraft is one that men preach & set themselves up for
a light unto the world that they may get gain & praise of ^{the} world, but they seek
not the welfare of Zion behold the Lord hath forbidden this thing wherefore the Lord
God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity which charity is
love & except they should have charity they were nothing, wherefore they should have
charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish but the laborer in
Zion shall be laborer for Zion for if they be laborers for money they shall perish & again
the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder that they should not
lie that they should not steal that they should not take the name of the Lord
their God in vain that they should not envy that they should not have malice that
they should not contend one with another that they should not commit whoredoms
that they should not do none of these things for whoso doeth them shall be
visited for none of these iniquities come of the Lord for he doeth that which is good and
bringeth forth wisdom & men shall do the nothing save it be plain unto the children of men
that he inviteth every one that come unto him & take of his goodness & he doeth with men
that come unto him to break white bonds & free male & female & he remembereth the
laborers all are alike unto him both Jew & Gentile but he be in the last day
when in the day of the Gentiles he had all the nations of the Gentiles & also the Jews both
^{those who} ~~those who~~ shall come upon that land & ^{those who} ~~those who~~ shall be of another land & yet
even in all the land of the earth he holdeth the will to denounce with iniquity & all
manner of abominations & when that day shall come they shall be visited ^{of} ~~with~~ the Lord
of hosts with thunder & with earthquake & with a great noise & with storm & tem-
pest & with the flame of devouring fire & all the nations that fight against Zion &
that despise her shall be as a dream of a night vision yea it shall be unto them
even as unto a hungry man which dreameth he eateth but he awaketh &
his soul is empty or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth he drinketh & he awaketh
& he is thirsty & he holdeth he is faint & his soul hath of petition yea even so shall
all the multitude of all the nations be that fight against mount Zion for
behold all ye that do iniquity I say unto you ye shall cry out &
cry ye shall be drunken but not with wine ye shall stagger but not with
strong ^{high} for behold the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of sleep & sleep
for he holdeth ye have closed your eyes & ye have rejected the prophets & your

36 & he shall fall to know the power of your iniquities & it shall come to pass that the
for God shall bring forth unto you the words of a Book & ^{they} shall be the words of them
which have it in heart to receive the Book & it shall be sealed in the Book shall be an
ordination from God from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof wherefore the
cause of the things which are sealed is the things which are sealed shall not be deli-
ivered in the days of the wickedness & abominations of the people wherefore the Book shall
be hid from them but the Book shall be delivered unto a man & he shall de-
liver the words of the Book which are the words of ^{those who} ~~the~~ hands which have been
sealed & he shall deliver the words of another but the words which are sealed he
shall not deliver neither shall he deliver the Book for the Book shall be sealed by
the power of God & the seal which was sealed shall be kept in the Book until
the own due time of the Lord that they may come forth in, behold, they reveal all things
and the ^{words} ~~words~~ of the Book shall be read & the day cometh that the words of the
Book which were sealed shall be read upon the same book & they shall be kept by the power
of Christ of all things shall be revealed in the children of men which have been ^{from} ~~been~~ ^{sealed} ~~sealed~~
the children of men which have been sealed until the end of the earth wherefore the
day when the Book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken the Book
shall be hid from the eyes of the world & the eyes of none shall be hold it save it be that
three witnesses shall be hold it by the power of God he will give him to whom the Book shall
be delivered & they shall testify to the truth of the Book & the things therein & there
is none other which shall witness save it be him according to the will of God to bear
testimony of his word unto the children of men for the Lord God hath said that the words
of the faithful shall speak as if it were from the dead wherefore the Lord God will pro-
ceed to bring forth the words of the Book in the mouth of as many witnesses as seem
eth him good will be establish his word & he will be unto him that receiveth the word of
God that he hold it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he
shall deliver the Book to be the words which are not sealed & deliver them to another
that he may deliver them unto the learned saying read this & he shall read & the learned shall
say having taken the Book & will read them & now because of the glory of the world
to get gain will they say this & not for the glory of God & the man shall say I cannot
bring the Book for it is sealed then shall the learned say I cannot read it wherefore it shall
come to pass that the Lord God will deliver again the Book & the words thereof to him
that is not learned & the man that is not learned shall say I am not learned
then shall the Lord God say unto him the learned shall not read them for they
have rejected him & I am able to do mine own works wherefore thou shalt
read the words which I shall give unto thee touch not the things which are
sealed for I will bring them forth in mine own due time for I will deliver

unto the children of men that I am able to determine even more ^{than} before what I intend
to do. I have read the words which I have commanded thee to do. I have the witnesses which I have
promised unto thee that thou shalt have. I will ^{again} ~~make~~ it appear unto thee that I will
represent the words which thou hast not read until I shall see fit in mine own
wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men, for he hath said I am God & I am able
to do miracles. I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today & forever
even & I will not among the children of men cease to be according to their faith. &
again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words
which shall be delivered him forasmuch as their people draw near unto me with
their mouth & with their lips do honor me but have removed their heart far
from me & their fear towards me is taught by the precept of men. Therefore I
will proceed to do a marvellous work among this people, yea a marvellous work &
a wonder in the wisdom of their heart & I cannot shall speak to the understanding of
their priests shall be hid ~~from~~ me unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel
from the Lord. & their works are in the dark & shall say who seek us & who know
us & they also see such signs & turnings of things which shall be esteemed as
the potter's clay. But behold I will show unto them with the Lord of hosts that I
will show all their works for that I will say unto them that I made it & made me not on
that the thing which I say of them that I made it & made me not on that I made it
with the Lord of hosts & will show unto the children of men that it is not yet a
very little while & I shall now shall be turned into a fruitful field & the fruit
ful field shall be esteemed as a forest & in that day shall the deaf hear the words
of the Book & the eyes of the blind shall be out of obscurity & out of darkness &
the meek also shall increase & they shall be in the Lord & the name among men
shall rejoice in the name of the Lord & inasmuch as the Lord himself shall see
that the Lord himself is bringing to naught & the remembrance of all that is
done for ever, and out of it shall make a man an offering for a word & by a name
for him that is present in the gate & I will make the just for a thing of naught. Therefore
thus saith the Lord who redeems. I have said concerning the Lord that shall not now be
as before neither shall he be ^{now} as before but when he shall be children the work of
my hands in the midst of him shall I shall glorify my name & sanctify the holy
one of ^{the} ~~the~~ & shall be the God of Israel. & also that which is in spirit shall come
to understanding & they that have been shall I shall do that in the 11th & 12th

And now beholding my brethren I have spoken unto you according as the spirit hath
constrained me. Wherefore I know that they must surely come to pass to the things
which shall be written out of the Book shall be of great ^{many} unto the children of men & espe-
cially unto our seed which are a remnant of the house of Israel for it shall come

It but thus saith the Lord God of Israel they shall have a Bible & it shall proceed forth from the
fleshy mine ancient covenant. I will & what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive
from them & what do the Gentiles receive the remembrance the hands & the labors & the blood
of the Jews & their diligence unto me in bringing forth the Salvation unto the Gentiles & the Jews
shall have remembrance of the fleshy mine ancient covenant. I will say that ye have been written
shall have them & shall not say ye receive them but he said I will return all these things
in giving you your heads for I the Lord shall not forget my people thou shalt that shall
say a Bible we have got a Bible & we need no more Bible have ye obtained a Bible and
it were by the Jews knowledge not that there are more nations than one know ye not that I
the Lord your God have created all men & that I remember ^{more from} they which are upon the Isles of
the Sea & that I rule in the Heavens above & in the earth beneath & I bring forth my word
unto the children of men ye are upon all the Nations of the earth, whether man or woman
because that ye shall receive mine & my word know ye not that the testimony of two
Nations is a ~~testimony~~ witness unto you that I am God that I remember one Nation like unto
to another wherefore I speak the same words unto one Nation like unto another &
when the two Nations shall run together the testimony of the two Nations shall run
together also & I do this that I may know unto many that I am the same as I said
ye today & forever & that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure & the
cause that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another
for my work is not yet finished neither shall it be until the end of man neither
and that time hence forth & forever wherefore because that ye have a Bible ye need
not suppose that it contains all my words neither ^{ye} suppose that I have
not caused more to be written for I command all men both in the east & in the
west & in the North & in the South & in the Islands of the Sea that they shall write
the words which I speak unto them in all of the Books which shall be written & I
will judge the words every man according to their words according to that which is written
I will be held & shall speak unto the Jews & they shall write it & I shall also speak
unto the Scribes & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house
of Israel which I have left away & they shall write it & I shall also speak unto all the
Nations of the earth & they shall write it & it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have
the words of the Scribes & the Scribes shall have the words of the Jews & the Scribes
& the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel & the lost tribes of Israel
shall have the words of the Scribes & the Jews & it shall come to pass that many
of the which are of the house of Israel shall come unto the lands of their possession
my word also shall be gathered in one & I will come unto them that fight
against my word & against my Spirit which are of the house of Israel that I am
I & I have covenanted with the Lord that I should remember his word forever

& now behold me his beloved brother it would speak unto you some of his words. I have
suffered that ye should suppose that ye are more right than the Gentiles, shall be ^{hated} for
enough ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord ye shall all likewise perish because of the work
which have been broken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed for he hath
I say unto you as many of the Gentiles ^{as} will repent and the commandments of the Lord as many
of the Jews as will not repent shall be ^{cut} off from the Lord's covenant with none saved
it be with them that repent ^{the} ~~the~~ ⁱⁿ his commandments which is the Holy One of Israel I know
I would not have come here more concerning the Jews & the Gentiles for after the time
of which I have spoken shall come forth & be written unto the Gentiles & sealed up a
gain unto the Lord then shall be many which shall believe the words which are written
& they shall come forth unto the remnant of an Israel then shall the remnant of an
Israel know concerning us how that we came not from Jerusalem & that they are a descendant of
the Jews & the Gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them wherefore they shall have
store unto the knowledge of their fathers & also the knowledge of Jesus Christ which was had
among their fathers & then shall they rejoice for they shall know that it is a blessing unto
them from the hand of God & their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes
& many generations shall not pass away among them save they shall be a white & a deli-
cious people & it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall
begin to believe in Christ & they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land & as
many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people & it shall co-
me to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations kindreds
tongues & people to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth & with
righteousness shall the Lord God judge the world & restore with equity for the meek
of the earth & he shall smile the earth with the seed of his mouth & with the
saying of his lips shall he slay the wicked on the time speedily cometh that the Lord
God shall cause a great division among the people & the wicked will be destroyed
he will spare his rebellious enemies so be that he must destroy the wicked by their
righteousness shall be the gentile of his land & lastfulness the gentile of his reins
& then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb & the Leopard shall lie down with the
kid & the calf & the young lion & the eating together & a little while shall feed them
& the cow & the bear shall feed their young ones shall lie down together & the Lion
shall eat straw like the ox & the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp & the
weaned child shall put his hand on the Cockatrice den they shall not hurt nor destroy
in all my holy mountain for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord and
waters cover the sea wherefore the things of all nations shall be made known unto
things shall be made known unto the children of men there is nothing which is hid
at all it shall be revealed there is no work of darkness save it shall be made

has come the voice of the Lord unto me saying after that ye have repented of your sins
and are not weary unto the death that ye are willing to keep my commandments by the Baptism
of water & have received the Baptism of fire of the Holy Ghost & can speak with a new
tongue even with the tongue of angels & after this should say, me it would have been better
for you that ye had not known me & I heard a voice from the Father saying ye the
words of my Son are true & faithful me that I will testify to the end the same shall be saved
& now my beloved, I desire to know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end in
following the example of the Son of the living God he cannot be saved, wherefore do the things
which I have told you that I have seen that your Lord & your Redeemer should do for
you this cause have they themselves unto me that ye might know the path by which ye
should enter for the gate by which ye should enter is repentance & Baptism by water
& then cometh a remission of sins & ye are brought to the Holy Ghost & then are ye in the
strait & narrow path which leads to eternal life & ye have entered in by the gate ye have
done according to the commandments of the Father the more ye have received the Holy Ghost
which is the witness of the Father & the Son unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath
made that if ye continue in by the way ye should receive & now my beloved, I desire to know
that ye have entered in the strait & narrow path & would ask of all is done, behold they say unto
me ye have not come thus, as I said unto you by the word of Christ with unshaking faith in
him relying wholly upon the merits of him who is ~~the~~ might to save wherefore ye must
press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope & a love of
God & of all men wherefore ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ & ye
shall dwell in the end, behold this saith the Father ye shall have eternal life & now behold
my beloved, I desire to know this is the way & there is none other way, none name given under heaven
whereby man can be saved in the Kingdom of God & now behold this is the doctrine of Christ &
the only true doctrine of the Father & the Son & the Holy Ghost which is ^{and} ~~is~~
God, the Father and the Son. Chapter XIV And now behold my beloved
Brethren, I suppose that ye would somewhat inquire ^{hence} ~~concerning~~ that which
ye should do after that ye have entered in by the way, but behold why do ye ponder upon the
things in your hearts do ye not remember that I said unto you that after that ye ^{had} ~~have~~ received
the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels & now how could ye speak with the
tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost, angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost where
fore they speak the words of Christ, wherefore I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ
& for behold the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do wherefore now
after that I have spoken these words if ye cannot understand them it will be because
ye ask not, needs do ye know wherefore ye are not brought into the light, but must
perish in the dark for behold again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way
& receive the Holy Ghost it will show unto you all things what ye should do behold

744 This is the doctrine of Christ & there will be no more doctrine given until
after that he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh & when he shall manifest
himself unto you in the flesh the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe &
I know I suppose cannot say more the spirit doth both mine utterance & I am left to man
in because of the unbelief & the wickedness & the ignorance & the stiffness of hearts
they will not search knowledge nor understanding great knowledge when it is given unto
them in plainness & every plain as word can be & now my beloved brethren I perceive that
ye ponder still in your hearts & I perceive that I must speak concerning this thing for
if ye would hearken unto the spirit which I teacheth a man to pray ye would know that ye
must pray for the evil spirit I teacheth not a man to pray but I teacheth him that he must
not know that he hold I say unto you that ye must pray always & not faint that ye
must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto
the Father in the name of Christ that he will consecrate the performance unto thee that
performance may be in the will of the Father (Chapter XV)

And now I suppose cannot write all the things which were taught among my people neither am
I mighty in writing like unto speaking for even a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost
the power of the Holy Ghost cometh it unto the hearts of the children of men but behold there
are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit that it hath no place in them
wherefore they cast many things which are written & esteem them as things of naught
but I suppose I have written what I have written for I esteem it as of great worth & I explain
it unto my people that they may ~~continue~~ continually by day & night & mine eyes make my pillow
night because of them & they are to be read in faith & I know that he will hear my cry
I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people & the ^{world} ~~people~~ ^{of the} ~~people~~
which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them for I have made them to
do good & make them known unto them & their fathers & it speaketh of Jesus & he teacheth
men to believe in him & to endure to the end which is life eternal & it speaketh harsh
against sin according to the plainness of the truth wherefore no man will be angry at
the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the Devil & of long in
laneness I glory in I trust & glory in my cross for he hath redeemed my soul from he
I have charity for my people & great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls
that I shall see his judgment that I have charity for the Jews I say Jew because I mean
them from whence I came I also have charity for the Gentiles but behold for none
of these ^{can I} ~~can I~~ hope except they shall be sanctified unto Christ & enter into the
narrow gate & walk in the straight path which leads to life & continue in the path
until the end of the day of probation & now my beloved brethren & also ye & all ye
ends of the earth hearken unto these words & believe in Christ & if ye believe not in the
words believe in Christ & if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words for

They are the words of Christ & he hath given them unto me & they teach all men that
 they should do so & if they are not the words of Christ Judge ye for Christ will show unto you
 with power & great glory that they are the words of the last day & you & I shall stand face
 to face before his face & ye shall know that I have been commanded of him to write these
 things notwithstanding my weakness & I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many
 of us if not all may be saved in his Kingdom at that great & last day & now my
 dear Brethren all they ^{those who} are of the house of Israel & all ye ends of the Earth I speak
 unto you as the voice of one crying from the dust I am well until that great day shall
 come & you that will not forsake of the goodness of God & resist the words of the Jews
 & the words which shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the Son of God
 behold I bid you an everlasting farewell for these words shall condemn you at the last
 day for which I feel on earth shall be brought again & you at the Judgment be sent
 to both the Lord Commanded me & I must obey Amen.

the back of Capt. (~~W. H. H.~~)

The brother of L. ph. ^{the} words of his preaching unto his brethren - He confounded
a man who sought to overthrow the testimony of his life - & few words concerning the histo-
ry of the people of Ephraim - I beheld & came to pass that fifty & five years had passed away
from the time ^{that} I left Jerusalem wherefore I gave in Ephraim a Commandment con-
cerning these ~~things~~ ^{small} plates upon which these things are signified & he gave me God's
Commandment that I should write upon these plates a record of the things which I consid-
ered to be most precious that I should not touch said it was lightly concerning the histo-
ry of this people which are called the people of Ephraim he said that the history of this people
should be engraven upon silver plates & that I should preserve these plates & hand them down
unto my son & my generation & of those who were preaching which was I have men-
tioned which was great in prophesying that I should engrave the words of the Lord upon these
plates & teach upon them as much as it was possible for Christ sake & for the sake of sanctify-
ing the people because of faith & great anxiety it had been made manifest unto us concerning
the people what things should happen unto them & we also had many revelations & the spirit
of much probings wherefore we know Christ & his Kingdom which should come in the
world & we have diligently among men & women that we might persuade them to come unto
Christ & partake of the good news of his Kingdom might enter into his rest but by any means
should I say in his wrath they shall not enter in as in the ^{divination} ~~day~~ in the day of recompensation
while the children of men were in the wilderness where we were would to God that we could
delivered all men not to rebel against God to provoke him to anger but that all men
would believe in Christ & receive his death & in ~~his~~ ^{his} name & bear the shame of the
world wherefore I have taken it upon me to fulfill the Commandment of our Father & the
Lord & he began to be old & he said that he must soon die wherefore he anointed a man

reduplicate before God which thing is pleasing unto God & it supports me that I
have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God upon the word which has
left the wounded soul (which I feel) burdeneth my soul that I should be
infirm because of the strict commandment which I have received from God
to aid, comfort, ease according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those which
are already wounded, instead of comforting & healing their wounds, & those which have not
been wounded instead of healing upon the pleasing word of God, have daggers placed to
pierce their souls & wound their delicate minds, but notwithstanding the greatness
of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, & tell you concerning
your wickedness & abominations in the presence of the pure in heart, & the Anointed
at & under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God, wherefore, I must tell you
the truth according to the plainness of the word of God, for behold, as I enquired of the Lord,
thus came the word unto me saying, Jacob get thee up into the temple on the morrow
& declare the word which I shall give thee, unto this people, & now behold, my Brethren,
this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for
Gold, & Silver & all manner of precious ores, in the which this land which is a land
of promise unto you & to your seed doth abound most plentifully, & the hand of the
midnight hath smiled upon you, most pleasantly, that ye have obtained many riches,
& because that some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your Brethren,
ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts & wear stiff necks & high heads, because of
the costliness of your apparel & persecute your Brethren, because that ye suppose that
ye are better than they, & now my Brethren, I ye suppose that God justifyeth you in this
thing, behold I say unto you, I say that he condemneth you & if ye hearken in these things,
his judgments must needs come unto you, & that he would show you that he com-
passeth you, with one glance of his eye, he can smite you to the dust, & that he would
rid you from this iniquity & abomination, & that ye would listen unto the word of the
Commandments & let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls, think of your
slaves, like to your robes, & be familiar with all & live with your substance, that
they may be rich like unto you, but before that ye seek for riches, seek ye for the Kingdom
of God, & if ye have obtained a hope in Christ, ye shall obtain riches if ye seek them,
& ye will not lose them, for the intent to do good, to chastise the nation, & to lead the things, & to
liberate the captive, & administer relief to the weak, & the afflicted, & now my Brethren,
I have spoken unto you concerning pride & those of you, which are of the seed of your
fathers & have revealed him, because that ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which
God hath given you, & what I say of it, I do not suppose that such things are abominable
unto him who created all things, flesh & the one thing is as precious in his sight as
another, & all flesh is of the dust of the earth, & the self same end hath he created them, that is

I should keep his commandments, & glorify him forever, & now I make an end of speaking
unto you concerning this bridge, & now it is that I must speak unto you concerning a
greater thing, my heart would rejoice exceedingly, because of you, but the word of God has
stayed me because of your great crimes, for he said thus saith the Lord, this people begin
to be a man in iniquity, they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to increase themselves
in committing wickedness, because of the things which are written concerning
David & Solomon his sons, he said David & Solomon truly had many wives & con-
cubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord, wherefore thus saith the
Lord, I have lead this people into all of the land of Canaan, by the house of mine
anointed, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins
of Joseph, wherefore if the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall be like unto the
of old, wherefore my brethren hear me & hearken to the word of the Lord, for there shall not
my ~~name~~ ^{name} among, we have said it be one wife, & concubines he shall have none, for the
Lord God delighteth in the chastity of women, & whoredoms ~~are~~ ^{are} abominations before me
thus saith the Lord of hosts, wherefore this people shall keep my commandments, saith
the Lord of hosts, on Counsel be the land, for this sake, for if I will saith the Lord of
hosts, I will raise up seed unto me, I will command my people, otherwise they shall bearken
unto these things, for he said, the Lord have seen the sparrow & heard the mourning of the
daughters of my people in the land of Canaan, & in all the lands of my people, because
of the wickedness & abominations of their husbands, I will not suffer, saith the Lord of hosts,
that the cries of the daughters of my people, which have lead out of the land of Canaan,
shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of hosts, for
I shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people, because of their tenderness
I shall visit them with a long curse, even unto destruction, for they shall not
commit whoredoms like unto Sodom, saith the Lord of hosts, & now he said my
brethren ye know that these commandments were given to our fathers, & he, wherefore
truly known them before, & ye have come unto great condemnation, for ye have done these
things, which ye ought not to have done, he said ye have done greater iniquity than the
Samaritans, & he said ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, & lost the con-
fidence of your children, because of your hardness of heart, & because of the hardness
of their hearts ascend up to God against you, & because of the strictness of the word
of God which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds,
but he said I will reach mine arm up unto you, that a pure in heart, look unto God, &
the firmness of mind, & pray unto him with exceeding faith, & he will console you in
your afflictions, & he will plead your cause, & send down fire upon those who seek
your destruction, I will that a pure in heart, lift up your heads, & receive
the pleasing word of God, & least of all, his love, for more of your minds and hearts

however but we write unto you that are not pure in heart, that are full of this sin
before God, for except ye shall repent, the land is cursed for your sakes & the Lamen-
ties, which are now in the life write unto you; nevertheless, they are Cursed with a curse
ing, shall stage you again unto destruction, & the time speedily cometh. Not except
repent, they shall possess the land of your iniquity & the Lord God will lead away
the righteous out from among you, & behold the Lamentation, ^{now on them} whom ye hate, because of the
iniquities, & the Cursings which shall come upon their skins, are, more righteous
than you, for they have not forgotten the Commandment of the Lord, which was
given unto even them, that they should have seen it, were over us & Conclude that
they should have none, & there should not be whoredoms committed among them & now
the Commandment they observe to keep; wherefore because of their observance in keep-
ing this Commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful
unto them, & one day they shall become a blessed People. Behold their husbands love
their wives, & their wives love their husbands, & their husbands & their wives love their
children, & their children love them, & their fathers towards you, is because of the iniquity of their fathers
wherefore how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator. O my
Brethren, I say, that unless ye shall repent of your sins, that their skins will be whi-
ten more than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God, wherefore a
Commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye will no more go
against them, because of the darkness of their skin, neither shall ye revile against them be-
cause of their filthiness, but ye shall remember your own filthiness, & remember that
their filthiness came because of their sins, wherefore ye shall remain like your children
in that ye have quickened their hearts, because of the example that ye have set before them
and also remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children un-
to destruction, & their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day. O my Brethren, be
warned unto, my words, because the subtilties of your souls shall be yourselves that ye may
awaken from the slumber of death, & loose yourselves from the pains of hell, that ye may
not become angels to the Devil, to be cast into that lake of fire & brimstone, which
is the second death, & now I speak unto many more things unto the People of Joseph
in warning them against fornication & lasciviousness & every kind of iniquity, the
evil of the awful consequences of them & a hundredth part of the proceedings of this
People, which now began to be numerous can not be written upon these plates
but many of their iniquities are written upon the larger plates & their names & ^{their} Con-
fessions & the signs of their things, these plates are called the plates of Jacob & they were
made by the hand of Ishmael & I make an end of speaking these words. Chap. III
Now behold it came to pass, that I Jacob, having ministered much unto my
People in word & I cannot write but a little of my words because of the dilatory

to the knowledge of a resurrection & the world to come behold my brethren he that prophesied
 let him prophesy to the understanding of men for the Spirit speaketh the truth & lieth not
 wherefore it speaketh of things as they really are & of things as they really will be wherefore
 all things are manifested unto us plainly for the salvation of our souls but behold we
 are not witnesses alone in these things for God also spake them unto the fathers of old that
 behold the Jews were a stiffnecked people & they despised the words of plainness & killed the
 prophets & sought for things that they could not understand wherefore because of their blind-
 ness which blind ness came by looking beyond the mark they must needs fall for
 both taken away his plainness from them & delivered unto them many things which
 they cannot understand because they desired it & because they desired it God hath done
 it that they may stumble & now I Jacob am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying
 for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me that by the stumble-
 ing of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build & have a safe
 foundation but he hold according to the scriptures this stone shall become the gra-
 ve & the last & the only safe foundation upon which the Jews can build & now my
 beloved how is it possible that men after having rejected the safe foundation
 can even build upon it that it may become the head of their corner behold
 my beloved brethren will understand this mystery unto you if I do not by any means
 get shaken for my journey in the spirit I stumble because of my own anxiety for
 you behold my brethren do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Is-
 aiah which spake unto the house of Israel saying hearken ye house of Israel & hear the
 words of our prophet of the Lord for behold thus saith the Lord I will liken the
 house of Israel like unto a land Olive tree which a man hath & nourished in his in-
 fancy & it grew & manifold & began to decay & it came to pass that the master of the
 vineyard went forth & he saw that his Olive tree began to decay & he said I will
 dig about it & I will plant it that perhaps it may shoot forth young & tender bran-
 ches & it flourish not & it came to pass that he pruned it & digged about it & nourished it
 according to his word & it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth some
 what a little young & tender branches but he held the main top thereof began to
 wither & it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it & he said I will
 say unto his servant it giveth me that I should loose this tree wherefore I will cut the branches
 from a wild Olive tree & bring them hither unto me & I will pluck off those main
 branches which are begining to wither away & I will cast them into the fire that
 they may be burned & he told saith the Lord of the vineyard I have taken away many of
 these young & tender branches & I will graft them whether I saw or whether it mattereth
 not that if it were that the root of this tree will flourish I may present the fruit
 unto myself wherefore I will take these young & tender branches & I will graft

I will take them the branches of the wild olive tree & graft them in
 in the side of the tree which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire & burn them
 that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard & it came to pass that the servant of
 the Lord of the vineyard stood according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard & grafted in the
 branches of the wild olive tree & the Lord of the vineyard came that it should be digged
 about & manured & manured he saying unto his servant it giveth me that it should be
 so this fall, winter, or that perhaps I might have seen the roots here of that they perish not
 that I might preserve them unto myself I have done this thing wherefore go thy way
 & water the tree & manure it according to my words & thou wilt. I shall in the win-
 termost part of my vineyard, whether it come I will it manure with me to the root & do
 it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree & also that I
 may lay up fruit thereof against the season unto myself for it giveth me that
 it should be lost this fall & the fruit thereof it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard
 came & he saw the natural branches of the same olive tree in the wintermost part
 of the vineyard some in one & some in another according to his will & he came & he
 to pass that a long time passed away & the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} unto his servant &
 come let us go down into the vineyard that we may see the labour in the vineyard & it came to
 pass that the Lord of the vineyard & also the servant went down into the vineyard to look
 on & it came to pass that the servant ^{said} unto his master he who look here like
 I do the tree it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked & he held the tree in
 the which the wild olive branches had been grafted & it had sprung forth & began
 to bear fruit & he beheld that it was good & the fruit thereof was like unto the natu-
 ral fruit & he ^{said} unto the servant he hold the branches of the wild tree ^{that}
 have I the master of the root thereof that the root thereof hath brought forth
 much strength & because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branch
^{have} hath brought forth much fruit now if we had not grafted in these branches the
 tree thereof would have perished & now behold I shall lay up much fruit which the
 tree thereof hath brought forth & the wintermost I shall lay up against the season
 unto mine own self & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} unto the servant
 come let us go to the wintermost part of the vineyard & he hold if the natural branch-
 es of the tree hath not brought forth much fruit also that I may lay up of the fruit
 thereof against the season unto mine own self & it came to pass that the servant ^{said} unto the
 master he has hid the natural branches of the tree & he ^{said} unto the servant
 behold here & he beheld the fruit that it had brought forth much fruit & he beheld
 also that it was good & he ^{said} unto the servant take of the fruit thereof & lay it up
 against the season that I may preserve unto mine own self for behold ^{that}
 is long time have I manured it & it hath brought forth much fruit & it came to pass

that the servant saith unto his master how cometh shall hither to plant this tree
 on this branch of the tree in behalf of was the earnest spot in all the land of the vine-
 yard & the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} saith unto him comest me not. I know that it is a
 poor spot of ground, wherefore I said unto thee I have named it this long time & the-
 re he holdeth that it hath brought forth much fruit & it came to pass that the Lord of
 the vineyard ^{said} saith unto his servant look hither he holdeth that I have planted another branch
 of a better sort than the first, that this soil of ground was better than the first, but he holdeth
 the tree I have named it this long time & it hath brought forth much fruit & the
 Lord gathereth & lay it up against the season that I may present it unto mine own
 self & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} saith again unto his servant look
 hither he holdeth another branch also which I have planted he holdeth that I have named
 also & it hath brought forth fruit & he saith unto the servant look hither & he holdeth the
 last he holdeth that I have planted in a good spot of ground & I have named it this long time
 and he holdeth a part of the tree hath brought forth fruit & the other part of the tree ha-
 th brought forth wild fruit he holdeth that I have named this tree like unto the others & it
 came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} saith unto the servant pluck off the branches
 that have not brought forth good fruit & cast them into the fire, but he holdeth the serv-
 ant ^{said} saith unto him, let us prune it & dig about it & nourish it a little longer that per-
 haps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee that thou comest lay it up against the season
 & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard & the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did
 nourish all the fruit of the vineyard & it came to pass that a long time had passed away & the
 Lord of the vineyard ^{said} saith unto his servant come let us go down in the vineyard, that we may
 labour again in the vineyard, he holdeth the time cometh near & the Lord saith comest where-
 fore I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self, & it came to pass that the
 Lord of the vineyard & the servant went down into the vineyard & they came to the tree & the
 natural branches had been broken off & the wild branches had been grafted in & he
 holdeth that all sorts of fruit did come from the tree & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard
 did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its name, & the Lord of the vineyard sa-
 id ^{said} he holdeth that long time, have we nourished this tree & I have laid up unto myself again
 at the season much fruit, but he holdeth that time it hath brought forth much fruit & there
 is none of it which is good & he holdeth that all kinds of bad fruit & it is of little use, nothing
 notwithstanding all our labour & now it giveth me that I should have this tree & the
 Lord of the vineyard saith unto the servant what shall we do unto the tree that I may
 present again good fruit thereof unto mine own self & the servant ^{said} saith unto his master
 he holdeth because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have more
 mischief, the roots, that they are dead & they have not nourished, wherefore thou he holdeth
 that they are not good & it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard ^{said} saith unto

unto his master, is it not the tendency of the vineyard? ~~that~~ not the branches strong /
overcome the roots which are good, & because ~~the~~ the branches have overcome the roots
thereof ~~to~~ behold they grow faster than the strength of the roots ~~strong~~ taking strength
unto themselves, ~~behold~~ I say, is not this the cause that the ~~branches~~ ^{Lord} of the vineyard ~~have~~
come to visit me & to say that the Lord of the vineyard ~~sayeth~~ ^{said} unto the servant ~~let~~
us go to & hew down the trees of the vineyard & cast them into the fire, that they shall
not cumber the ground of my vineyard. I have done all that I could, I have done more for
my vineyard but ~~behold~~ the servant ~~saith~~ ^{said} unto the Lord of the vineyard that it is a little
the longer & the Lord ~~saith~~ ^{said} yea I will spare it a little longer for it giveth me that I
should lose the trees of my vineyard wherefore let us take of the branches of these which
I have planted in the westernmost part of my vineyard & let us graft them into the
tree from whence they came & let us speak from the tree these branches shall fruit in me
it shall be grafted in the natural branches of the tree instead thereof & then will I do that
the tree may not perish that perhaps I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for more
own purpose & behold the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted in the
westernmost part of my vineyard I would as yet also therefore that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose
I will take ~~the~~ branches of this tree & will graft them in unto them yea I will graft in
unto them the branches of these ~~brother~~ tree that I may preserve the roots also unto me
in myself that when they shall be sufficiently strong ~~that~~ ^{may} perhaps they may bring forth
good fruit unto me & I get ~~some~~ ^{may} glory in the fruit of my vineyard & it came to pass
that they took from the natural tree which has become wild & grafted in unto the
natural tree which also has become wild & they also took of the natural tree which
has become wild & grafted into their mother tree & the Lord of the vineyard ~~sayeth~~ ^{said} unto
the servant ~~pluck~~ ^{pluck} not the wild branches from the trees save it be that ~~that~~ ^{which} ~~which~~
hath been the more shall graft according to that which I have said & we will name them
the trees of the vineyard & we will bring up the branches thereof & we will plant
from the trees these branches which are ripened that must perish & cast them into the
fire & thus do that perhaps the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness
& because of the ~~change~~ ^{change} of the branches that the good may overcome the evil & because that
I have preserved the natural branches & the roots thereof & that I have grafted in the natural
branches again unto their mother tree & I have preserved the roots of their mother tree
that perhaps the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit & that I may have
again in the fruit of my vineyard & perhaps that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have
preserved the roots & the branches of the first fruit. Wherefore go to & call servants that
we may labour diligently with our mights in the vineyard that we may prepare the
way that I may bring forth again the natural fruit which natural fruit is good
most precious above all other fruit & wherefore let us go to & labour with

no more corrupt. He call^d up his servants ~~to~~ ^{unto} them ^{to} behold ⁱⁿ the last time's
land, & ^{he} ^{has} ^{presented} ^{the} ^{natural} ^{fruit} ^{that} ^{it} ^{is} ^{good} ^{even} ^{like} ^{as} ^{it} ^{was} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{beginning}
of ^{the} ^{world} ^{and} ^{that} ^{for} ^{because} ^{that} ^{ye} ^{have} ^{been} ^{diligent} ⁱⁿ ^{labouring} ^{with} ^{me}
in ^{my} ^{vineyard} & ^{have} ^{kept} ^{my} ^{commandments} & ^{therefore} ^{have} ^{brought} ^{unto} ^{me} ^{again} ^{the}
natural ^{fruit} ^{that} ^{my} ^{vineyard} ^{is} ^{no} ^{more} ^{corrupted} & ^{the} ^{bad} ^{is} ^{cast} ^{away} ^{behold}
ye shall ^{have} ^{say} ^{with} ^{me} ^{because} ^{of} ^{the} ^{fruit} ^{of} ^{my} ^{vineyard} ^{for} ^{behold} ^{for} ^{also}
ye shall ^{with} ^{lay} ^{up} ^{of} ^{the} ^{fruit} ^{of} ^{my} ^{vineyard} ^{unto} ^{mine} ^{own} ^{self} ^{against} ^{the} ^{sea}
son, ^{which} ^{is} ^{readily} ^{cometh} ^{upon} ^{me} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{last} ^{time} ^{have} ^{dena} ^{minished} ^{my} ^{vineyard}
and ^{pruned} ^{it} ^{and} ^{say} ^{about} ^{it} ^{and} ^{changed} ^{it} ^{wherefore} ^{will} ^{lay} ^{up} ^{unto} ^{mine} ^{own}
self ^{of} ^{the} ^{fruit} ^{for} ^a ^{long} ^{time} ^{according} ^{to} ^{that} ^{which} ^I ^{have} ^{spoken} ^{and} ^{when}
the ^{time} ^{cometh} ^{that} ^{the} ^{fruit} ^{shall} ^{again} ^{come} ^{into} ^{my} ^{vineyard} ^{then} ^{will} ^I ^{cast}
all ^{the} ^{good} ^{of} ^{the} ^{bad} ^{to} ^{be} ^{gathered} ^{and} ^{the} ^{good} ^{will} ^I ^{bring} ^{unto} ^{myself} ^{and} ^{the} ^{bad} ^{will}
I ^{cast} ^{away} ^{into} ^{its} ^{own} ^{place} ^{and} ^{then} ^{cometh} ^{the} ^{season} ^{of} ^{the} ^{end} ^{of} ^{my} ^{vineyard} ^{and}
all ^I ^{cause} ^{to} ^{be} ^{pruned} ^{with} ^{the} ^{vine} ^{Chapter} ^{IIII} ^{In} ^{the} ^{name}
of ^{the} ^{Lord} ^{my} ^{father} ^{as} ^I ^{said} ^{unto} ^{you} ^{that} ^I ^{would} ^{show} ^{unto} ^{you} ^{behold} ^{this} ^{is} ^{my}
prophecy ^{that} ^{the} ^{things} ^{which} ^{the} ^{prophets} ^{have} ^{spoken} ^{concerning} ^{the} ^{house} ^{of} ^{Israel} ^{into}
which ^{he} ^{has} ^{branded} ^{them} ^{into} ^a ^{stamp} ^{that} ^{will} ^{surely} ^{come} ^{to} ^{pass} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{day}
that ^{it} ^{shall} ^{set} ^{his} ^{hand} ^{again} ^{the} ^{second} ^{time} ^{to} ^{renew} ^{his} ^{people} ^{is} ^{the}
day ^{ye} ^{saw} ^{the} ^{last} ^{time} ^{that} ^{the} ^{servants} ^{of} ^{the} ^{Lord} ^{shall} ^{go} ^{forth} ⁱⁿ ^{his} ^{power}
to ^{renew} ^{his} ^{vineyard} & ^{after} ^{that} ^{the} ^{end} ^{season} ^{cometh} ^{and} ^{how} ^{blessed} ^{are}
ye ^{who} ^{have} ^{laboured} ^{diligently} ⁱⁿ ^{his} ^{vineyard} & ^{now} ^{are} ^{renewed} ^{and} ^{ye} ^{who} ^{shall}
be ^{cast} ^{out} ^{into} ^{their} ^{own} ^{place} & ^{the} ^{vine} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{pruned} ^{with} ^{the} ^{vine} ^{and} ^{how} ^{merciful}
is ^{our} ^{God} ^{unto} ^{us} ^{as} ^{we} ^{remember} ^{the} ^{house} ^{of} ^{Israel} ^{both} ^{roots} ^{and} ^{branches}
of ^{his} ^{servants} ^{both} ^{his} ^{hands} ^{unto} ^{them} ^{all} ^{the} ^{day} ^{long} ^{and} ^{they} ^{are} ^{as} ^{the} ^{tree} ^{which}
is ^a ^{growing} ^{people} ^{that} ^{as} ^{many} ^{as} ^{will} ^{not} ^{harden} ^{their} ^{hearts} ^{shall} ^{be} ^{saved}
in ^{the} ^{kingdom} ^{of} ^{God} ^{wherefore} ^{my} ^{beloved} ^{brethren} ^{be} ^{each} ^{of} ^{you} ⁱⁿ ^{words} ^{of} ^{firmness}
that ^{ye} ^{would} ^{repent} ^{and} ^{come} ^{with} ^{all} ^{purpose} ^{of} ^{heart} ^{and} ^{cleanse} ^{unto} ^{God}
be ^{cleansed} ^{unto} ^{God} ^{and} ^{while} ^{his} ^{arm} ^{of} ^{mercy} ^{is} ^{extended} ^{towards} ^{you} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{light} ^{of} ^{the} ^{day}
harden ^{not} ^{your} ^{hearts} ^{ye} ^{today} ^{if} ^{ye} ^{will} ^{hear} ^{his} ^{voice} ^{hardness} ^{of} ^{heart} ^{is} ^{the} ^{cause}
for ^{why} ^{will} ^{ye} ^{die} ^{for} ^{behold} ^{with} ^{the} ^{eye} ^{ye} ^{have} ^{been} ^{renewed} ^{by} ^{the} ^{good} ^{word} ^{of} ^{God}
all ^{the} ^{day} ^{long} ^{will} ^{ye} ^{bring} ^{forth} ^{the} ^{fruit} ^{that} ^{ye} ^{must} ^{be} ^{branded} ^{and} ^{cast} ^{into} ^{the} ^{fire}
behold ^{will} ^{ye} ^{repeat} ^{these} ^{words} ^{will} ^{ye} ^{repeat} ^{the} ^{words} ^{of} ^{the} ^{prophets}
will ^{ye} ^{repeat} ^{all} ^{the} ^{words} ^{which} ^{have} ^{been} ^{spoken} ^{concerning} ^{Christ} ^{after} ^{that}
many ^{have} ^{spoken} ^{concerning} ^{him} ^{and} ^{deny} ^{the} ^{good} ^{word} ^{of} ^{Christ} ^{and} ^{the} ^{power} ^{of} ^{the} ^{gift} ^{of} ^{the} ^{Holy} ^{Ghost} ^{and} ^{quench} ^{the} ^{Holy} ^{Spirit} ^{and} ^{make} ^a ^{mock} ^{of} ^{the} ^{good}
plan ^{of} ^{redemption} ^{which} ^{has} ^{been} ^{laid} ^{for} ^{you} ^{know} ^{ye} ^{must} ^{not} ^{do} ^{this}

I do these things that the house of the redemption, the redemption which is in
Christ will bring you to stand with shame & awful guilt before the bar of God
according to the house of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ~~but~~ ye must go away in
to that lake of fire & brimstone whose flames are unquenchable & whose smoke ascend
eth up forever more which lake of fire & brimstone is endless torment, & then might
these brethren whom ye & I saw in at the great gate & continued in the way, while
in season will ye shall obtain eternal life & O be wise what I can say more, ^{truly}
I bid you farewell, unfilled I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which
has thickened the mist with awful dread & fear, I have seen in (Chapter V. &
O find now it came to pass ~~that~~ ^{after} some years had passed away, and a man among
the people of the house of Israel was there, and it came to pass that he began to preach un-
to the people & to declare unto them that there should be no Christ & he preached many
things which were flattering unto the people & that he ^{did} that he might overthrow the
doctrine of Christ & he laboured diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the
people inasmuch that he did lead away many hearts & he knowing that I ^{was} ~~was~~ had
faith in Christ ^{which} ~~which~~ should come, ~~therefore~~ ^{therefore} he sought much opportunity that he might
come unto me & he was learned that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of
the people wherefore he could use much flattering & much power of speech according
to the house of the devil & he had hope to shake me from the faith notwithstanding the
many revelations & the many things which I had seen concerning these things for I truly
had seen angels & they had ministered unto me & also I had heard the voice of the
Lord speaking unto me in many words from time to time wherefore I could not be
shaken & it came to pass that he came unto me & on this wise did he speak unto me saying
I do know, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you & I have
heard & also know that there is yet about much preaching that which ye call the
Gospel on the doctrine of Christ & ye have lead away much of the people that they
do leave the right way of God & keep not the law of Moses which is the right way
& convert the land of Israel into the worship of a being which ye say shall come ma-
ny hundred years hence & now he told the ^{ancient} ~~ancient~~ unto you that this is all
aspiring for no man knoweth of such things for he cannot tell of things to come
that he has seen, I have seen did I therefore contend against him but he told the Lord God
I have in his spirit into my soul inasmuch that I did confound him in all his
words & I ^{did} ~~did~~ ^{say} ~~say~~ unto him I charge thee the Christ which ^{shall} ~~shall~~ come & he sa-
id that there should be a Christ & I would not deny him but I know that there
is no Christ neither hath been nor ever will be & I ^{did} ~~did ^{say} ~~say~~ unto him he told
that the Scriptures & he ^{did} ~~did ^{say} ~~say~~ unto him then ye do not un-
derstand them & on this he ^{did} ~~did~~ ^{say} ~~say~~ unto him then ye do not un-
derstand them & on this he ^{did} ~~did ^{say} ~~say~~ unto him then ye do not un-~~~~~~

id & the Lamanites should not be ashamed that the Lord God would preserve a remnant of my people
 the Lamanites amongst them to be by the form of his holy name that it might be brought in
 the same, when they come to the Lamanites. For perhaps they might be brought into salva-
 tion in at the Lamanites' assemblies when again in restoring them to the true faith &
 the same in their small that if it were possible they would destroy our records as I
 also all the Lamanites' and others, when they knew that the Lord God was able to pre-
 serve our records & that unto him continued to go at that time unto me, who had been
 as that I should believe that I shall receive in the name of Christ & shall receive
 me it is that I shall not die by unto God, that it would preserve the records of his men
 and I, with me, that he would bring them, with me to the Lamanites in his own due time
 & I Enos have that I would be according to the covenant which he had made with
 me that I should not & that he said unto me the Lamanites have also required of me this
 thing & it shall be done unto them according to their faith. In their faith was like unto
 the Lamanites' when I came to pass that I, Enos, went down among the Lamanites, & I prophesied
 of things to come & testifying of the things which I had heard & seen & I have seen that
 the Lamanites did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith
 in God, but our labors were vain. Then I have seen that they were called by their evil
 nature that they became wild & evasive & a headstrong & fully full of idolatry & the
 idols, leading upon beasts & was dwelling in tents & wandering about in the wild-
 erness with a small thing in the hand of their hands, their heads & hands & their arms
 as in the hand of the Lamanites the Lord God said that they did not nothing until it was
 said that they were continually coming to destroy us & it came to pass that the Lamanites
 did take all the land & built all manner of graven images & black & black of birds &
 flocks of all manner of cattle, having kind & goats & wild goats & also much honey &
 there were exceeding many people among us & the Lamanites were exceedingly people, had
 to understand that there was nothing that it was exceeding hardness, breathing & prop-
 hering of wars & contentions & destructions & continually reminding them of death
 & of the duration of eternity & the judgments of the Lord God & all these things stirring them
 up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord & say there was nothing that of these
 things & exceeding great plagues of which would keep them from going down sheeily
 to destruction & I then began to write concerning them & I saw many things between the
 Lamanites & the Lamanites in the course of my days & it came to pass that I began to be slain
 an hundred & seven to & nine years had passed away from the time that I came to the Lamanites
 & I saw that I must soon go down to my grave having been wrought
 upon by the Lord & I must speak & prophesy unto this people & declare the word
 according to the truth which is in Christ & I have declared it in all my days & I have
 said in it above that of the world & I have gone to the place of my rest which is with

And my redemption, for I know that in him I shall rest, & I rejoice in the day when
my mortal shall be immortality, & I shall see him face to face, then shall I see his face
in all pleasure, & he will say unto me, come unto me, I will bless thee, there is a place prepared for
you in the mansions of my Father. Amen. *From the Book of Jarom* Chap. the first
Jarom the first. Jarom wrote a few words according to the Commandment of the Lord, that En-
os, that our genealogy may be kept, & as these plates are small, & as these things are written
in the end of the house of Aaron, & the things of the Lamanites, which said it must needs be
that I write a little, but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, none of my real-
lations, for which I could not write more, than my Father's hand, written, for I have not, they re-
vealed the plan of salvation, say unto you, & I will say with me, he said, it is my
edict, that mine hand shall be done among this people, because of the hardness of their
hearts, & the darkness of their law, & the blindness of their minds, & the stiffness of
their necks, none of them, God is exceeding merciful unto them, & I will not as yet smite
them off from the face of the land, & there are many among us, ^{who} have many re-
velations from the Lord, not all of them, as many as are not stiff-necked, & hard-hearted,
have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men
according to their faith, now, behold, two hundred years have passed away, & the people
of Lehi have made strong in the land, they have made to a cup the land, & Moses & the
sabbath day, they have made to a cup the land, & the people have made to a cup the land, &
the land of the land, were exceedingly fruitful, & they were scattered upon much of the face
of the land, & the Lamanites also, they were exceedingly more numerous, than were they of
the Lehi, & they were more numerous, & would drink the blood of hearts, & it came to pass
that they came many times against us the Lehi, to battle, but our hands & our
arms, were mightier men in the land, & the Lord & they they did, the people the ways of the
Lord, & we were not with them, the Lamanites & swept them away out of our lands, & he
gan to multiply our cities on whatsoever place of our inheritance, & we multiplied exceedingly
& spread upon the face of the land, & became exceedingly rich in gold, & in silver, & in precious
stones, & in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, & in machinery, & also in iron, & in
gold, & brass, & steel, making all manner of tools, & every kind of till the ground, & weapons
of war, & the sharp swords, arrows, & the quivers, & the darts, & the javalins, & all preparation
for war, & that being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us, but
more of the Lord, was wrought, which he spoke unto our Father, saying, that as much as ye
will keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land, & it came to pass that the people of
the Lord did prosper, the people of Lehi according to the word of the Lord, God, that if they did
not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off
the face of the land, wherefore the people of Lehi, the priests, & the teachers did labour diligenti-
ly, endeavoring with all long suffering, the people to diligence teaching the law of Moses.

& the intent for which it was given persuading them to look toward unto the Messiah
& believe in him to come as he is already was & after this manner did they teach them &
it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being despised when the Lord of the land
the Lord which them started with the more plentifully showing them up unto the Gentiles & it
came to pass that two hundred & thirty eight years had passed away of the manner of war
& contentions & discussions in the land of much of the time & I know do not make more
for the plates are small but he told me that things go on to the uttermost & I believe he
also shown them the more & am more and more according to the writings of the things
that which I have to be written & I believe these plates into the hands of my son
Omni that they may be kept according to the commandments of my father the Lord of
the Book of Omni. I hope this is so. He told it came to pass that I am
now being commanded by my father Jarom that I should write some what upon these
plates to preserve an genealogy wherefore in my days I want that ye should know that
I have much with me and to preserve my people that I have ~~put~~ putting into the hands
of their enemies the commandment that he told of myself am a wicked man & I feel not he
that the plates & the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have ~~but~~ done yet came
to pass that two hundred & twenty eight years had passed away & we had many seasons of
war & we had many seasons of peace was a blood shed year in line two hundred & eighty & two
years had passed away & I have kept these plates according to the commandments of my father
& I confide them upon my son Ammon I make an end And now I Ammon write the
things which I have written while I have been in the Book of my father he told it came to pass
that since hundred & twenty years had passed away & the more wicked part of the people were
& despised in the land would not suffer after he had read them out of the land of Jerusalem
& kept & preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies yea he would not suffer
that the words which he wrote unto our fathers saying ^{that} as ye will not keep
my commandment ye shall not prosper in the land wherefore the Lord did visit the
in in great judgment nevertheless he did spare the righteous that they should not
perish but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies & it came to pass that I did
deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish & now Chemish write what few things
I write in the same Book with my brother I am he told I saw the last which he wrote
all that he wrote it with his own hand & he wrote it in the day that he delivered it
unto me before this manner we keep the record for it is according to the Com-
mandments of our father to make an end He told it I Ammon. From the Lord of
Chemish he told it came to pass that I saw much war & contention between my
people the Nephites & the Ammonites & with mine own mind have taken the names of
any of the Ammonites the deliverer my brethren & he told the word of this people is en-
graven upon plates which he had by the things according to the revelations I know

116:18 I have to this day ~~written~~ fulfilled it as many as go beyond this day must surely
come to pass wherefore I chose these things to finish my record upon them which
remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of ~~Lehi~~ & I cannot write a hundred
th part of the things I have to write but I shall take these plates which contain
these prophecies & revelations & put them with the remainder of my record for they
are chosen unto me & I know they will be chosen unto my brethren & I do this for a wise
purpose for these I will have according to the workings of the spirit of the Lord
which is in me & now I do not know all things but the Lord knoweth all things with
which he will come to visit me & will best in me to do according to his will & my prayers
God is concerning us brethren that they may once again come to the knowledge of God
and the redemption of their souls that they may once again be a delight to the Father
I now I Mormon proceed to finish out my record which I take from the plates
of ~~Lehi~~ & make it according to the knowledge & the understanding which God hath
given me wherefore it came to pass that after Amalek had delivered up these pla-
tes unto the hands of King Benjamin he took them to put them with the other plates
which contained records which had been handed down by the kings from generation
to generation until the days of King Benjamin & they were handed down from King
Benjamin from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands & I
Mormon say to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth & I know
that they will be preserved for there are great things written upon them and of which
my people & the whole world shall be judged at the great & last day according to the words
of God which is written & now concerning this King Benjamin he was somewhat
ambitious among his own people & it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites
came down out of the land of Lehi to battle against his people but behold King
Benjamin gathered together his armies & a great cloud against them & he was with the
strength of his army with the sword & a bow in the strength of the Lord they did con-
quer against their enemies until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites & it
came to pass that the Lamanites against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of
all the lands of their inheritance & it came to pass that of the there has been Laban
& when man has been that the Lamanites according to their crimes & of their sin has
been justly punished & all preachers & teachers among the people & all these having been
punished according to their crimes & of their sin having been justly punished & many di-
visions came unto the Lamanites & it came to pass that King Benjamin with the
assistance of the people of his ~~who~~ were among him & all the whole King Benjamin
was a bold man & he did reign over us with a righteousness & there were many holy
men in the land & they did speak the word of God with power & with authority & they did
use much sharpness because of the disobedience of the people & with the

[illegible]

... in the temple of Jarahem & the temple of Mosiah ~~which~~ dwell in this land that
thereby they may be gathered together for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto ~~the~~ this
my people out of mine own mouth that ~~there~~ out a king & a ruler over this people ^{whom}
the Lord our God hath given us & moreover I shall give this people a name that shall
by no means be discompaired about all the people which the Lord God hath brought
out of the land of Jerusalem & this I do because they have been a diligent people in keep-
ing the commandments of the Lord & I will give unto them a name that never shall be blotted
out except it be through transgression & moreover I say unto you that if this highly
favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression & become a wicked & an adul-
terous people that the Lord will deliver them up that thereby they become weak like you
to their destruction & he will no more preserve them by his matchless & marvelous power
as he hath hitherto preserved our fathers for I say unto you that if he had not intended
his power in the preservation of you I think they must have fallen into the hands of the
enemies & become victims to their hatred & it came to pass that after King Benjamin
had made an end of these sayings to his son that he gave him charge concerning all
the affairs of the kingdom & moreover he also gave him charge concerning the records
which were engraven on the plates of brass & also the plates of silver & also the cures
of Laman & the ball of contention which had caused others through the rebellious who
in was subject to the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be lead everyone
according to the strict & diligence which they gave unto him they ~~thereby~~ were
unfalsified they did not prosper nor begin in their coming but were driven back &
therefore the Lord ceased to be upon them & therefore they were smitten with famine & not
afflictions to the point of imminent danger & their Gub & now it came to pass that the
high priest & did as he ~~the~~ had commanded him & proclaimed unto all the people who
were in the land of Jarahem that thereby they might gather themselves together
to go up to the temple to hear the words which the Lord should speak unto them & it
came to pass that after Mosiah had done as he father had commanded him & had made
a proclamation throughout all the land that the people gather themselves together to
meet at all the land that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which
King Benjamin should speak unto them & there were a great number even so many
that they did not number them for they had multiplied exceedingly & wanted
great in the land & they also took of the seedlings of their fathers that they might offer
sacrifice & burnt offerings according to the law of Moses & also that they might give
thanks to the Lord their God who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem & who
had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & had appointed said men to be
their teachers & also a just man to be their king who had established peace in the la-
nd of Jarahem & who had taught them to keep the commandments of God that

surely they might rejoice & be filled with love towards God & all men & it
 came to pass that when they came up to the temple they pitched their tents round about
 every man according to his family consisting of his wife & his sons & his daughters &
 their sons & their daughters from the eldest down to the youngest every family ^{of mine} ~~being~~
 separate one from another & they pitched their tents round about the temple every man
 having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple that thereby they might
 remain in their tents & hear the words which King Benjamin should speak unto them
 for the multitude being so great that King Benjamin could not reach them all with
 in the walls of the temple therefore because he loved to be useful that thereby his people
 he might hear the words which he should speak unto them & it came to pass that he
 began to speak to his people from the tower & they could not all hear his words because of
 the greatness of the multitude & he said that the words which he spoke should
 be written & sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice
 that they might observe his words & these are the words which he spake & cause to be
 written saying My Brethren all ye that have assembled yourselves together to day
 I can hear you words which I shall speak unto you this day for I have not commanded
 you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak but that you should
 understand & know that ye may have your hearts that ye may and
 understand & know that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view I
 have now commanded you to come up hither that ye should hear me on that ye
 should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man but I am like as you
 are subject to all manner of infirmities in body & mind yet as I have been cho-
 sen to this sign I was ordained to be a prophet I was suffered by the hand of the
 Lord that I should be a ruler & a king over this people & have been kept & preserved by his
 matchless power to stand still with all the might mind & strength which the Lord has
 granted unto me I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your
 midst even up to this time I have not sought gold nor silver nor ^{any} ~~any~~ ^{man} ~~man~~ of riches of
 you neither have I suffered that ye should be contented in dungeons nor that ye should
 make slaves one ^{of} another or that ye should murder or plunder or steal or commit
 adultery or sin which I have not suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness
 & I have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord in all things
 which he hath commanded you & even I myself have laboured with mine ^{own} ~~own~~
 hands that I might serve you & that ye should not be laden with taxes & that
 there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to ^{you} ~~you~~ & of all these
 things which I have spoken ye yourselves are witnesses this day for my Brethren I have
 not done these things that I might boast neither do I tell these things that the
 people might accuse you but I tell you these things that ye may know

I say that ^{you} have a clean conscience before God this day behold I say unto you
that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service I do not
desire to boast for I have only been in the service of God & behold I tell you these
things that ye may learn wisdom that ye may learn that when ye are in the service
of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God behold ye have called me
your king & I have said unto you that ye shall do as I say to serve God then had not ye ought
to labor to serve me another of which I bid ye also I who ye call your king what has spent
his days in your service & yet I have been in the service of God I do not merit any thanks for
any good I have had you ought to thank your heavenly King I say unto you my brethren
that ye should render all the tithing, levies, & what ye shall have ^{of the} tithing
to possess to that God who ^{has} created you & ^{has} kept & preserved you & ^{has} caused
that ye should rejoice & ^{has} granted that ye should live in peace one with another
I say unto you that if ye should serve him who ^{has} created you from the beginning
& has preserved you from day to day by lending you breath that ye may live &
merit to do according to his own will & even by lending you from one moment to another
I say if ye should serve him with all your whole heart & ye would be unfeeling
& able servants & behold all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments & he
^{will} promise you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land
& he never doth say from that which he hath said therefore if ye do keep his command-
ments he doth bless you & prosper you & now in the first place he hath created you & pro-
vided unto you your lives for which ye are indebted unto him & secondly he doth require
that ye should do as he hath commanded you for which if ye do he doth immediately
bless you & therefore he hath paid you & ye are still indebted unto him & thirdly he
promiseth unto you that if ye will he will be a Father unto you & ye shall be his people & now I ask of you
what ye will say that I have said I have said that I am a sinner as the dust of the earth
ye yet stand and threaten the dust of the earth but behold it belongeth to him who
created you & I even I whom ye call your king am no better than ye yourselves are for
I am also of the dust of the earth behold that I am old & am about to yield up
this mortal frame to its mother earth therefore as I said unto you that I had said
unto you nothing with a clean conscience before God I have said that this time ^{has} caused that
ye should assemble yourselves together that I might be found blameless & that your
blood should not come upon me when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things
whereof he hath commanded me concerning you I say unto you that I have caused
that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your
blood at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave that I might
go down in peace & my immortal spirit may praise his name a host in singing
praises of a Lord God & moreover I say unto you that I have caused that ye

should assemble yourselves together. But I might declare unto you that I can / 2 /
no longer be your teacher nor your lawgiver. At this time we whole heartedly trem-
ble exceedingly whilst attempting to speak unto you but the Lord is faithful & will
assist us. Therefore that I should speak unto ^{you} ~~us~~ I shall command me that I shall
declare unto you this day that my son Joseph is a living & a true one, & that he is
my brother. I would that ye should do as ^{have} ~~will~~ I do, as ye have kept my
commandments & also the commandments of my father & have prospered & have been
kept from falling into the hands of your enemies. I know of ye shall keep the Comman-
dments of me. You are the Commandments of God which shall be delivered unto ^{him} ~~you~~
~~you~~ ye shall prosper in the land & your enemies shall have no power over you, but
I my people beware but there shall arise contentions among you & ye shall be to obey
the evil spirit which was spoken of by my father Jacob, for he held there is a
~~promise~~ ^{promise} ~~made~~ ^{made} ~~upon him~~ ^{upon him} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~obey~~ ^{obey} ~~that~~ ^{that} ~~spirit~~ ^{spirit} ~~for~~ ^{for} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~will~~ ^{will} ~~not~~ ^{not} ~~obey~~ ^{obey}
him & remaineth & dieth in ~~that~~ ^{his} ~~sin~~ ^{sin} the same drinketh damnation to his own
soul for he receiveth for his wages in this last day. I am in haste having transcribed the
law of God & written to my own advantage. I say unto you that there are not ^{any} ~~many~~ among you
except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things. But
I know that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father to render to him
all that you have & are & also have been taught concerning the records which contain
the prophecies which ^{have} ~~have~~ been spoken by the holy prophets & written down to the time
of this light & consolation. Also all that ^{have} ~~have~~ been spoken by your fathers until now
I shall also say. This I shall say that which was commanded them of the Lord. I shall
say & then I now say unto you my brethren, that of these have known & have been
taught all these things. If ye should transcribe & go contrary to that which ^{has} ~~has~~ been
spoken that ye do with clean consciences from the spirit of the Lord that it may have no
saying in you to guide you in wisdom, that ye may be blessed, prosper & preserved.
I say unto you that the man that doeth ~~these things~~ the same cometh out in this
world against God. Therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit & becometh an enemy
to all righteousness. Therefore the Lord hath no place in him for he shall be not
in his whole family. Therefore if that man repent ^{not} ~~not~~ & remaineth & dieth an enemy
to God the demands of divine justice doth awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense
of his own guilt which doth come him to shrink from the presence of the Lord & doth fill his
breast with guilt & pain & anguish which is like an unquenchable fire whose
flames are endless & apparent. Now I say unto you that mercy hath no claim
on that man. Therefore his final doom is to endure an unending torment. I will
ye old men & also ye young men & your little children which can understand my words
I have spoken plain unto you ^{that} ~~that~~ ye might understand ^{that} ~~that~~ ye might

That which had been delivered unto him by the Angel of the Lord that he cast his eyes
round about on the multitude & he held they had fallen to the earth for the fear of the
Lord but some upon them & they had risen themselves in their own carnal state. Even less
than the dust of the earth & they all cried aloud with one voice saying O that mercy & of
ply the atoning blood of Jesus Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins & our
hearts may be purified for we believe in Jesus Christ the Son of God who created heaven
& earth & all things who shall come down among the children of men & it came to pass the
next day after he had spoken these words the spirit of the Lord came upon them & they were
as fellow with him having received a remission of their sins & having peace of conscience
because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ which should come according
unto the words which King Benjamin had spoken unto them & King Benjamin again open-
ed his mouth & began to speak unto them saying my friends & my brethren my kindred
& my people I would again call your attention that ye may hear & understand the rema-
inder of my words which I shall speak unto you for he hath ~~that~~ if the knowledge of
the goodness of God at this time hath awakened you to a state of your nothingness & your
wretchedness & fallen state I say unto you ~~that~~ if ye have come to ^{a knowledge} ~~the knowledge~~ of the good-
ness of God & his matchless power & his wisdom & his patience & his long suffering
towards the children of men & also the atonement which ~~hath been prepared~~ ^{hath been prepared}
prepared from the foundation of the world that thereby salvation might come to
him that should put his trust in the Lord & should be diligent in keeping his com-
mandments & continue in the faith even unto the end of his life I mean the
life of the mortal body I say that this is the man that receiveth salvation through
the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind
and which even was ~~prepared~~ ^{prepared} the fall of Adam on ^{which we} ~~which~~ ^{who are} ~~on earth~~ ^{who} ~~we shall~~
be even unto the end of the world & that is the means whereby salvation cometh &
there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of neither is there any
conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you he
believeth in ^{God} ~~in~~ believe that Jesus & that he created all things both in heaven & in earth he
believeth that he hath all wisdom & all power both in heaven & in earth believe that
no man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend & again
in believe that ye must repent of your sins & forsake them & humble yourselves before
God & ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you & now if you believe these
things see that ye do them & again I ^{say} ~~say~~ unto you as I have said before that as
ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God or if ye have known of his goodness
& have tasted of his love & have received a remission of your sins which easeth
such exceeding great joy in your souls I would that ye should remember
& always retain in remembrance the greatness of God & your own nothingness &

his good me & long suffering towards you, my worthy brethren & humble yourselves even like
 in the debt of ^{humility} ~~me~~ calling on the name of the Lord daily & standing stedfastly in the
 faith that which is to come which was spoken by the mouth of the Angel & which I say
 unto you that if ye do this ye shall always remain & be filled with the love of God & also
 retain a remission of your sins & ye shall grow in the knowledge of the Father ^{the Father} ~~that~~ who created you on
 in the knowledge of that which is past & present & ye will not have a mind to injure one an-
 other, but to love, cherish & to comfort every man according to that which is his
 due & ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry or naked neither will ye
 suffer that they transgress the laws of God to fight & quarrel one with another & that
 the Devil which is the master of sin on whom the evil spirit which hath been spo-
 ken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness, but ye will teach them
 to walk in the ways of truth & soberness ye will teach them to love one another & to re-
 ve one another & if ye yourselves will seek on those that stand in need of your substance
 will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need & ye will not su-
 pper that the beggar pulleth up his petition to you in vain & turn him out to perish
 perhaps then shall say the man, I have brought upon myself his misery therefore I will
 stay my hand & will not give unto him of my substance, nor impart unto him of my substan-
 ce that he may not say for his punishment and just but I say unto you O man who
 saith so, lo, this is the same, hath great cause to repent & except he repenteth of that
 which he hath done, he shall perish forever & hath no interest in the kingdom of God for he
 shall be no part, all beggars do me not all depend upon the same being even God for all
 the substance which we have, for both poor & cannot it for gold & for silver & for all the rich
 as which we have of every kind & behold even at this time ye have been calling on his name &
 crying for a remission of your sins & ~~hath~~ ^{have} suffered that ye have begged in vain may he that
 pressed out his spirit upon you & caused that your hearts should be filled with joy & that can
 see that your mouths should be closed that ye could not find utterance exceeding great
 was your joy & now if God who hath created you on whom you are dependant for your lives
 & for all that ye have & are doth grant unto you what ye ask that is right in
 faith believing that ye shall receive it then how had ye ought to impart of the substance
 that ye have one to another & if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your
 substance that he perish not & condemn him how much more fast will be your conde-
 mnation for withholding your substance which doth not belong to you but to God to whom
 also your life belongeth & yet ye put up no petition nor repentance of the thing which
 ye have done I say unto you as he said that man for his substance shall perish
 with him & now I say these things unto those ^{who} ~~which~~ are rich as pertaining to the things
 of this world & again I say unto the poor ye that ^{have} ~~have~~ not & yet doth sufficient to
 remain from day to day I mean all do that deny the beggar because he hath

now because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the child of
men of Christ his name his daughter so be hold this day he hath virtually begotten
you: & ye say that your heart are changed through faith in his name therefore ye are born
of him & have become his sons & his daughters & under this head ye are made free & the
law is no other head whereby it can be made free there is no other name given whereby
salvation cometh therefore I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ
in all you that name entrance into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient
unto the end of your lives & it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be
recorded at the right hand of God in the book which he shall know the name by which he is called for
he shall be called by the name of Christ & now it shall come to pass that whosoever
shall not take upon them the name of Christ must be called by some other name the
whereof he knoweth himself on the left hand of God & I would that ye should remem-
ber also that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that none should
be called out ~~except~~ it be through transgression therefore take heed that ye do not
transgress for the name be not blotted out of your hearts I say unto you that
that ye should remember & retain the name ~~which~~ written always in your hearts that
ye are not ~~loosed~~ from the left hand of God that that ye hear & know the name by which
ye shall be called & also the name in which he shall call you for now know them
on the margin ~~there~~ ^{there} is ~~lost~~ not ~~recorded~~ & ~~there~~ ^{there} is a change unto him & is ~~for~~
known the thought & in heart of his name & again doth a man take an ass which belon-
geth to his neighbor keep him & say unto you that he will not save himself that
he shall ~~be~~ among his flock but will drive him away & cast him out I say
unto you that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are
called therefore I would that ye should be steadfast & immovable always abou-
nding in good works that I might thank God our Father most that ye his that ye
may be brought to heaven that ye may have everlasting salvation & eternal life
through the wisdom of him I desire & more of him who dwelleth in all things in heaven
in earth in the air & in the water Amen Chapter 1111 and now
saith Benjamin thought it was expedient after having finished speaking to the people that
he should take the names of all those who had entered into covenant with God to keep his
commandments it came to pass that there was not one soul ~~that~~ ^{except} ~~that~~ ^{that} had
what had entered into the covenant & had taken upon them the name of Christ & again it
came to pass that when King Benjamin had made an end of all these ~~things~~ ^{things} & had
consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler & a king over his people & had given him all
the charges concerning the kingdom & also had appointed priests to teach the people that the
people might hear & know the commandments of God & to stir them up to remember
the path which they had made for themselves the multitude & they returned every

it is one according to their families to their own hearts. King Mosiah began to reign
 his father died & he began to reign in the thirty-fifth year of his age making in the whole
 all about four hundred & seventy five years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.
 When Benjamin lived three years & he died & it came to pass that King Mosiah did as
 all in the ways of the Lord & did wisdom his judgments & his statutes & did the things
 commandments in all things & he gave the commandments him & King Mosiah did even
 his things that he should tell the land & he also himself did tell the land that
 thereby he might not become burdensome to his people that he might do according to
 that which his fathers had done in all things & there was no contention among all his
 people in the space of these years. (Chapter V) & it now came to pass that
 after King Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years he was desirous
 to know concerning the people ^{which} went up to dwell in the land of Lehi
 upon in the city of Lehi. His people had heard nothing from them from
 the time they left the land of Haran. He therefore ^{inquired} of them with their
 writings & it came to pass that King Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong
 men might go up to the land of Lehi to enquire concerning their brethren & it
 came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up having ^{with} them one Ammon
 he being a strong & mighty man & a descendant of Haran. He was also their leader
 & now they knew not the way they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the
 land of Lehi. Therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness even forty days
 did they wander & when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill which was
 south of the land of Lehi. There they pitched their tents & Ammon took the chief
 of his brethren & their names were Amalek & Helem. Then they went down into
 the land of Lehi & they met the king of the people ^{which} was in the land
 of Lehi & in the land of Lehi. They were surrounded by the king's guard & was taken &
 was bound & was carried to prison & it came to pass when they had been in prison three
 days they were again brought before the king & their hands were loosed & they stood
 before the king & he said unto them in soft commandments that they should answer the questions
 which he should ask them. He said unto them he held them in the Son of Jacob who
 was the Son of Jacob ^{who} came up out of the land of Haran to inhabit the land
^{which} was the land of the Lehi. ^{who} was made a king by the voice of the people & now
 I desire to know the cause whereby ye came so late as to come near the walls of the city
 when I myself was with my guards without the gate & now for the cause have I
 supposed that ye should be asking that I might enquire of you on else I should have
 caused that my guards should have put you to death & ye are permitted to speak. Now
 when Ammon saw that it was permitted to speak he went forth & bowed himself before
 the king & rising again he said O King I am very thankful before God this day

the people of the land of the Nephites doth in heart of a man sinners. & now is not this
judicious to be known, is not. The sin of the people great. now behold how great reason have
we to know that I say unto you, great are the reasons, which we have to mourn for be-
cause our many of our brethren have been slain & their blood ^{has} been spilt in vain &
all because of iniquity & of this. I will not allow into transgression. The Lord would
not have suffered that their great evil should come upon them, but he hath ^{that} they would
not listen unto his words but there are small contentions among them & even so much that
they did shed blood among themselves & a prophet of the Lord have told them ye a chosen
man of God, who told them of their wickedness & abominations & of the things which they
which ^{are} to come & even the coming of Christ & because he ^{did} ~~spoke~~ ^{said} them that Christ was
the God the Father of all things & ^{that} ~~that~~ that he should take upon him the image of man
& it should be the image of God which man was created in the beginning or in a thousand
years he said that man was created after the image of God & that God should come down
among the children of men & take upon him flesh & blood & go forth upon the face of the earth
& now because he said that they did put him to death & many more things did they
do which brought down the wrath of God upon them therefore who wondereth that they are
in bondage & that they are written with sin of the people for he said I will
not smite my people in the day of their transgression but I will hedge up their ways
that they prosper not & their doings shall be a stumbling block before them & again he
said if my people shall sow plow & reap they shall reap the chaff of the wind & the seed of the
evil shall be sown & again he said if my people shall sow, although they shall reap
not & even so shall bring it immediate destruction & now behold the promise of the Lord is
fulfilled & ye are written & afflicted but if ye will turn to the Lord with all your heart
with all your might & with all your mind & with all your strength ye do this, he will
according to his own ^{will} & pleasure deliver you out of bondage & will come to pass that of the
things which he had made known speaking to his people he shall make many things unto them &
only a few of them have I written in this book he told his people all the things, once
saying their mission ^{to} ~~was~~ ^{was} in the land of the Nephites & he caused that from the
land of the Nephites on the multitude & he caused unto them all that had happened unto
them from the time that he will send upon of the land even until the time
that he himself came up out of the land & he also he caused unto them the law
which King Benjamin had taught them & explained them to the people of King Benjamin
he so that they might remember all the words which he spoke & it came to pass that
after he had done all this that King Benjamin dismissed the multitude & caused that
they should return every one unto his own house & it came to pass that he caused
that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left
the land of Jacob should be brought before him that he might read them

[illegible]

Chapter VI - The record of Geniff

On account of his Popes from the time they left the land of Jaraschunla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the same.

Joseph having fought in all the language of the prophets & having had a knowledge of the land of Egypt in of the land of our fathers first indentured & having been sent as a slave among the Egyptians that I might see and thing, even that our army might come upon them & destroy them but when I saw that which was gone among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed therefore I contended with my brethren in the wilderness that would that our ruler should make a treaty with them but he being an austere & a bloodthirsty man commanded that I should do them but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood, my father fought against them & broken against broken until the greatest number of our army was slain in the wilderness & we returned those of us that were spared to the land of Haran where that time to their wives & their children & yet being over zealous to inherit the land of our fathers ~~that~~ we called as many as were desirous to go up to the land & started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land, but we were smitten with famine & sore afflictions for we were slow to remember the Lord our God nevertheless after many days wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place ^{where} ~~that~~ our brethren were slain which was near to the land of our fathers & it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the City in unto the King that I might know of his disposition of the King & that I might know if I might go in with my people & possess the land in peace & I went in unto the King & the Counselors with me that I might possess the land of Egypt & the land of Chanaan & he commanded that his people should depart out of that land & I & my people went into the land that we might possess it & we began to build our houses & to retain the walls of the City & again the walls of the City of Solithphi & the City of ^{the} ~~the~~ our men began to till the ground & sow with all manner of seeds with seeds of Corn & of wheat & of barley & with meadow & with flax & now with seeds of all manner of seeds & we did begin to multiply & prosper in the land now it was the cunning & the craftiness of King Sennacherib to bring my people into bondage that he gathered up the land that we might possess it & there he came to

pass that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that King Lib
 began to grow weary, but by any means my people should remain strong in
 the land & that they could not overcome ^{us} & bring them into bondage now they were
~~strong~~ & an idolatrous people therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage
 that they might glut themselves with the labours of our hands & that they might
 feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields, therefore it came to pass that King Lib
 began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people therefore there began
 to be wars & contentions in the land, on in the thirtieth year of my reign in the
 land of Zarahemla away on the south in the land of Shiloh when my people were
 driving & leading their flocks & tilling their lands a numerous host of Lamanites
 came upon them & began to slay them & to take of their flocks & the corn of their field
 & they & it came to pass that they fled all that were not overtaken even into the City
 of Lehi & did call upon me for protection & it came to pass that I did arm them with
 bows & with arrows with swords with similes & with darts & with things &
 with all manner of weapons ^{which} we could invent & my people did go forth
 against the Lamanites to battle & in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to battle
 against the Lamanites for my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would
 deliver us out of the hands of our enemies for we were awakened to a remembrance of the
 deliverance of our fathers & God did hear our cries & did answer our prayers & we did go
 forth in his might & we did go forth against the Lamanites in one day & we did slay the
 thousand & so that we did slay them even until we had driven them out of our land
 & we did with mine own hands did help bring them dead & behold to our great sorrow &
 lamentation how humbled & wretched were our brethren now & it came to pass
 that we again began to establish the Kingdom & we again began to possess the land
 in peace & I caused that there should be weapons made of every kind that
 thereby we might have weapons in our people against the time the Lamanites should
 come up again, so we agreed my people that guards should stand about the
 land that the Lamanites might not come upon us again, unawares & destroy us
 & that I did guard my people & my flocks & keep them from falling into the hands
 of our enemies & it came to pass that we did inhabit the land of our fathers for many
 years & we for the space of twenty & two years & I did cause that the men should till
 the ground & raise all manner of grain & all manner of fruit of every kind & I did cause
 that the women should spin & loom & work all manner of fine linen & of wool
 of every kind that we might be clothed in & thus we did prosper in the land
 & thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty & two years &
 it came to pass that King Lamanites & his son began to reign in his stead & he began to
 stir his people up in rebellion against my people & therefore they began to prepare for war

134 & to come up to battle against my people but ~~before~~^{hard} sent my spies out round
about the land of Shemon that I might discover their preparations that I might
guard against them that they might not come upon my people & destroy them & kill
me to pass that they came up upon the south of the land of Shimon with their numerous
battles men armed with bows & with arrows & with swords & with slings & with stones
& with clubs & they had their heads shaved, that they were naked & they were girt about
with a lether girdle about their loins & it came to pass that I caused that the women
& children of my people should be hid in the wilderness & I also caused that all my
old men that could bear arms & also all my young men that were able to bear arms
should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites & I did place
them in their ranks every man according to his age & it came to pass that we did
go up to battle against the Lamanites & I even in my old age did go up to battle
against the Lamanites & it came to pass that we did go upon the strength of the Lord
to battle & now the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord nor the strength of the
Lord therefore they depended upon their ^{own} strength that they were a strong people as to the
strength of men they were wild & fierce & a hardy & a bloody people believing in the traditions
of their fathers which is this believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem
because of the iniquities of their fathers & that they were wronged in the wilderness by the
sin of their fathers & they were also wronged while crossing the sea & again that they were wronged
in the land of their inheritance after they had crossed the sea & all this because
that Lehi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord therefore he was favored
more of the Lord than the Lord heard his prayers & answered them & he took the lead
of their journey in the wilderness & his brethren were wroth with him because they audaciously
contemned the dealings of the Lord they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they
hardened their hearts against the Lord & again they were wroth with him when they had
arrived to the promised land because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people
out of their hands & they sought to kill him & again they were wroth with him because
he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him & took the records which
were engraven on the plates of brass for they said that he had taken them & thus they have taught
their children that they should hate him & that they should murder him & that they should
rob & plunder him & do all they could to destroy him & therefore they have an eternal hate
ed towards the children of Lehi for this very cause that taking Laman by his cunning &
by his guile & his fair promises ~~he~~^{he} deceived me that I have brought this my
people up into this land that they may destroy them & we have suffered this many
years in the land & now I have told all these things unto my people
concerning the Lamanites & I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might putting
their trust in the Lord therefore we did contend with them face to face & it came to pass

that we did drive them again out of our land & we slew them with a great slaughter & even so many that we did not number them & it came to pass that we did again & again & our own land & my people ^{again} began to line their flocks & to till their ground & to new & bring old & to comfort the Kingdom upon one of my Sons therefore I say now is my may the Lord bless my people Amen. Chapter VIII.

And now it came to pass that Zeniff ^{Confessed} the King down upon each one of his Sons & each began to reign in his stead & he did not walk in the ways of his father for he did not keep the Commandments of God but he did walk after the desires of his own heart & he had many wives & concubines & he did cause his people to commit sin & do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord yea they did commit whoredoms & all manner of wickedness & he laid a law upon all that they possessed & a fifth part of their gold & of their silver & a fifth part of their tithes & of their copper & of their brass & their iron & a fifth part of their fathings & also a fifth part of all their grain & all this did he take to support himself & his wives & his concubines & also his priests & their wives & their concubines thus he had changed the affairs of the Kingdom for he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father & consecrated new ones in their stead such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea thus went this substance in their largeness & in their holiness & in their whoredoms & in their lasciviousness which King Zeniff had put upon his people thus did the people labour & sweating to support an unequal yoke & they also became idolatrous because they were deceived by the vain & flattering words of the King & priests for they did offer up flattering things unto them & to come to sacrifice King Zeniff built many elegant & spacious buildings & he ornamented them with fine work of wood & of all manner of precious things of gold & of silver & of iron & of brass & of tithes & of copper & he also built him a spacious palace & a throne in the midst thereof all of which was of fine work & was ornamented with gold & silver & with precious things & he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple of fine wood & of copper & of brass & the staves ^{which} were set round for the high priests which were above all the other staves he did ornament with ^{pure} gold & he caused a breastwork to be built before them that they might rest their heads & their arms upon while they should speak & give counsel to his people & it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple & it was a very high tower even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof & overlook the land & the tower was also the land of Shemlon which was possessed by the Ammonites & he could even look over all the land saying about & it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land ^{thereof} & he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shemlon which had been a resort for the children of Ishmael at the time they were out of the land & thus he did do with the riches which he obtained

35 By the Tension of his People & it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his
nights & he spent his time in fasting & in prayer with his wives & his concubines & so did
also his servants spend their time with him & it came to pass that his land was made
sound about on the land & he built wine presses & made wine in abundance & thus
he became a wine drinker & also his People & it came to pass that the Lamanites began to be
come upon his People upon small numbers & to slay them in their fields & in the places
meeting their flocks & King Noah sent servants round about the land to keep them off
but he did not send a sufficient number & the Lamanites came upon them & killed them
& drove many of them out of the land & thus the Lamanites began to destroy them
& to increase their hatred upon them & it came to pass that King Noah sent his arm-
ies against them & they were driven back & they drove them back a time that
they returned regarding in their spirit & now because of this great wailing they were li-
fled upon the pride of their hearts they did boast in their own strength saying that
their army could stand against thousands of the Lamanites & thus they did boast & did
right in blood & the shedding of the blood of their brethren & this because of the wickedness of
their King & priests & it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi
& he went forth among them & began to prophesy saying behold thus saith the Lord
thus hath he commanded me saying go forth & say unto this People thus saith the Lord we believe
to this People for I have seen their abominations & their wickedness & their whoredoms & be-
cause they repent I will spare them in mine anger & except they repent & turn to the Lord
their God behold I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies yea & they shall be brought in
bondage & they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies & it shall come to pass that
they shall know that I am the Lord their God & am a jealous God visiting the iniquity
of my People & it shall come to pass that except this People repent & turn to the Lord
their God they shall be brought into bondage & none shall deliver them except it be
the Lord the Almighty God yea & it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will
be slow to hear their cry & yea & I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies
& except they repent in sackcloth & ashes & cry mightily to the Lord their God I will not hear
their prayers neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions & thus saith the Lord
Thus hath he commanded me & now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken
these words unto them they were wroth with him & sought to take away his life but
the Lord delivered him out of their hands now when King Noah had heard of the words
which Abinadi had spoken unto the People he was also wroth & he said who is Abinadi
that he says my People should be judged of him or who is the Lord that shall bring
on my People such great affliction I command you to bring Abinadi hither that I may
slay him for he hath said these things that he might stir up my People to anger one
with another & to raise contentions among my People therefore I will slay him

[illegible]

140 Now then we will tell you anything that is by right

Chapter 7 And it came to pass in the afternoon that the king had made an
 and these ~~his~~ sayings that he said unto them have ye taught this people that
 they should observe unto all these things, to keep these commandments & say unto you
 for if ye had the word would not have caused me to come hither to prophesy and concerning
 this people's new state have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses & say unto
 you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet but I say unto
 you that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of
 Moses & moreover say unto you that salvation doth not come by the law alone
 neither not for the alone merit which God himself shall make on the basis of my
 atonement of his people that they must unavoidably incur notwithstanding the law of
 Moses & now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the
 children of Israel ye came very short law for they were a stiffnecked people quick to do
 iniquity & slow to remember the Lord their God therefore there was a law given to you a
 law of righteousness & obedience a law which ye were to observe daily from day to day
 to keep them in remembrance of God & their duty towards him but behold I say
 unto you that all these things which ye have thought to come & now did they understand the law
 say unto you now they did not all understand the law & this because of the hardness of
 their hearts for they understood not that it should not any man be saved except he
 were through the ~~law~~ ^{redemption} of God for he had said unto Moses prophesy unto them concerning
 the coming of the messiah & that God should redeem his people yet & even all the prophets who
 have prophesied ^{ever} since have said that God himself should come down among the children
 of men & take upon him the form of man & so on in mighty power upon the face of the sea
 & ye have not said also that he should come to pass the resurrection of the dead
 & that he himself should be oppressed & afflicted yet even doth not Isaiah say which
 he believed and report of whom is the arm of the Lord revealed in a vision of his for him
 as a lowly person & as a man out of the ground for him we have no confidence & when we
 shall see him that is no beauty that we should desire him he is despised & despised of men &
 is an of scorn & acquainted with grief & we have as a man of sorrows for him he was despised
 & we esteemed him not surely he hath borne our griefs & carried our sorrows yet we did
 esteem him as one smitten of God & afflicted but he was wounded for our transgressions
 he was bruised for our iniquities the chastisement of our peace was upon him & with his stripes
 we are healed all we like sheep have gone astray we have turned every one to his own way
 & the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all he was oppressed & he was afflicted
 yet he opened not his mouth he is thought as a lamb to the slaughter & as a sheep he
 before his shearers is dumb & he opened not his mouth he was taken from prison &

from judgment & who shall die for his generation for he was cut off early the land of the 41
living for the transgressions of my people. For he shall be made manifest with the meekness
with the meekness of his death because he had done no evil neither was any deceit in his mouth
yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him he hath put him to grief when thou shalt make
his soul an offering, in sin he shall see his seed he shall prolong his days & his pleasure
at the Lord shall increase in his hand he shall see of the travail of his soul & shall be
satisfied by his knowledge shall my right hand servant justify many for he shall cleanse
iniquities therefore will I divide him a portion with the great & he shall divide the
spoil with the strong because he hath poured out his soul unto death & he was numbered
with the transgressors & he bore the sins of many & made intercession for the transgre-
ssors & now I have made ^{him} manifest unto them I would that ye should understand that God himself
shall come down among the children of men & shall redeem his people & because he dwelt
in flesh he shall be called the Son of God & having suffered the flesh to redeem
us of the Father being the Father & the Son the Father because he was conceived by
the power of God & the Son because of the flesh thus becoming the Father & Son & they
are one God & the many eternal Father of Heavenly Creatures & thus the flesh becoming
subject to the will of the Son to the Father being one God but with the temptation & ye
didst not to the temptation but ye suffered him to be mocked & scourged & crowned
with thorns & disowned by his people & after all this & after working many mighty miracles among
the children of men it shall be said ye were as a sheep before the shearer
ye were dumb so he opened not his mouth yet even so he shall be lead crucified & slain the
flesh becoming subject even unto death in mercy & the Son being swallowed up in the will
of the Father & thus God himself the Father & the Son being joined the Father & the Son giving
the Son himself made manifest ^{in the children of men} having ascended into heaven hav-
ing the Father & the Son being joined with compassion toward the children of men standing before
him in their flesh having broken the bands of death & given upon himself their iniquities & their
transgressions having redeemed them & ^{satisfied} the demands of justice & I now say unto
you who shall declare his generation behold I say unto you that when his soul has been made
an offering then he shall see his seed & now I say ye & who shall be his seed behold
I say unto you that whosoever ^{shall} hear the words of the prophets ye all the day & is
witnessed ^{by} have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord & say unto you that all
those who have hearkened unto their words & believed that the Lord would redeem his
people & have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins I say unto you that
these are his seed in the kingdom of God for these are they whose sins
he hath borne these are they whom he hath died to redeem them from their transgre-
ssions & now are they not his seed & are not the faithful every one that has opened
his mouth to prophecy that has not fallen into transgression I mean all the

The King being in the borders of the land having been informed by time in at seasons by word
hearts now there was in Incomen a mountain of pine wood & Alma resorted thither there being
near the water a flock of small trees where he did hide himself in the day time from
the search of the King & it came to pass that as many as believed him went forth with
single hearts & minds & it came to pass after many day there were a great number gathered together to
the place of Incomen to hear the words of Alma yea all were gathered together that believed
in his word to hear him & he did teach them & did lead them to repentance & adven-
turing their lives for the Lord & it came to pass that he said unto them behold here is the matter of
Incomen for thus said Alma called to know as yet are desirous to come into the fold of God & to be
called his People & are willing to bear one anothers burdens that they may be light yea
are willing to mourn with those that mourn yea & comfort those that stand in need of
comfort & to stand as witnesses of God at all times & in all things & in all places that
ye may be in even until death that ye may be redeemed of God & be numbered with
those of the first resurrection that ye may have eternal life now I say unto you if this
be the desire of your hearts what have you against being Baptized in the name of the
Lord as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him that ye will
obey him & keep his commandments that he may pour out his spirit more abundantly
upon you & now when the people had heard these words they clasped their hands for joy
& exclaimed this is the desire of our hearts & now it came to pass that Alma took
Helaman the being one of the first & went & took forth in the water & cried saying
O Lord pour out thy spirit upon thy servant that he may do this work with holiness
of heart & when he had said these words the spirit of the Lord was upon him & he said I be-
lieve & I baptize thee having from the Father Almighty God as a testimony that ye have
entered into a covenant to serve him until ye are dead as to the mortal body &
may the spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you & may he grant unto you eternal life
through the redemption of Christ ^{wherein} he hath prepared from the foundation of the world
& after Alma had said these words both Alma & Helaman ^{were} buried in the water
& they arose & came forth out of the water rejoicing being filled with the spirit again
& Alma took another & went forth a second time into the water & baptized him ac-
cording to the first only he did not bury himself again in the water & after this manner
he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Incomen & they were in number
about two hundred & four ^{yea} & these were baptized in the water of Incomen & were filled with
the spirit of God & this man ^{was} called the house of God on the Church of Christ from
that time forward & it came to pass that who so ever was baptized by the power & ac-
tivity of God ~~the~~ was made to rise & change & it came to pass that Alma having authority
from God ordained ^{in commandment} thirty & twenty by of their number did he ordain to preach the
thing to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the Kingdom of God & he

the king, & there began to be a great contention among them: and now there was
a man among them whose name was Gideon, & he being a strong man & an enemy
to the king, therefore he drew his sword & was in his mouth, that he would slay
the king: and ~~when~~ came to pass that he fought with the king, & when the king saw
that he was a hard to conquer, he fled & ran & got upon the tower, which was near
the temple: but Gideon pursued after him, & was a hard to get upon the tower to slay
the king: & the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, & that
all the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land: and now the king
cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying, Gideon, spare me for the Lamanites are upon
me: they will destroy thee, & they will destroy my people. And now the king was not
at all concerned about his people, as he was about his own life: nevertheless Gide-
on did spare his life: and the king commanded the people that they should flee before
the Lamanites, & he himself did go before them, & they went into the wilderness
with their women & their children: and it came to pass that the king did fear the Lamanites,
did forsake them, & began to slay them: and it came to pass that the king commanded them
that the men should leave their wives & their children, & flee before the Lamanites, now
as many men that would not leave them, but did rather try to speak with them,
the next night were wives & their children, & fled: & it came to pass that those that tarried
with their wives & their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth
& speak with the Lamanites, that they would not slay them: & it came to pass that the La-
manites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women:
therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, & took them captives, & carried them back to the
land of Lehi, & quailed unto them, that they might possess the land under the conditions
that they would deliver up the king into the hands of the Lamanites, & deliver up their property
even one half of all they possessed, & one half of their gold, & their silver, & all their precious
things: that they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, from year to year: & now there
was one of the sons of the king among them, that was taken captive, whose name was Lin-
hi: & now Linhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed: nevertheless Lin-
hi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father: & he himself, being a just man, it came
to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness, & were to search for the king, & those that were
with him: & it came to pass, that they met the king in the wilderness, all save the king & his priest:
now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Lehi, & if their wives
& their children were living, & also those that had tarried with them, that they would not
return: & also speak with them: & the king commanded them that they should not return,
& if they were angry with the king, & caused that he should suffer unto death by fire:
they were about to take the priests also to put them to death, & they fled before them: & it
came to pass, that they were about to return to the land of Lehi, & they came to me

148 of Gideon & the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to them
& their children & that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the
land paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed & the people told
men of Gideon that they had slain the king & his priests had fled from them farther
into the wilderness but came to pass that night they had ended the ceremony that they
returned to the land of Lehi repairing because their wives & their children were needed
and they told Gideon what they had done to the king & it came to pass that the king
of the Lamanites made an oath unto them that his people should not slay them & also
Limhi being the son of the king having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people made
oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him even one
half of all they possessed & it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom & to
establish peace among his people & the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the
land that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land that they might not
depart into the wilderness & he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did
receive from the people & now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for
the space of two years that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them
now there was a place in the land where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather them
selves together to sing & to dance & to make themselves merry & it came to pass that
there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing & to dance & now
the priests of king ~~Shash~~ ^{Shash} being informed he returned to the city of Lehi & also
learning that the people would slay them therefore they durst not return to their wives
& their children & having tarried in the wilderness & having discovered the daugh-
ters of the Lamanites they laid & watched them & when there were but few of the
young women gathered together to dance they came forth out of their secret places & took
them & carried them into the wilderness & it came to pass that when the Lamanites found
that their daughters had been missing they were angry with the people of Limhi
for they thought it was the people of Limhi therefore they sent their armies forth
yea even the king himself went before his people & they went up to the land of Lehi
to destroy the people of Limhi & now Limhi had discovered them from the Lamanites
all their preparations, & now did he discover therefore he gathered his people together
and laid wait for them in the fields & in the forests & it came to pass that when
the Lamanites had come up that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from
their waiting places & began to slay them & it came to pass that the battle became sore
for they fought like lions for their prey & it came to pass that the people of
Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them & yet they were not half so numerous
as the Lamanites but they fought for their lives & for their wives & for their children

Therefore they smitten them as the dragons did they fight & it came to pass that he
they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead, yet he was not he
having been wounded & left upon the ground so speedily was the flight of his people
& they took him & bound up his wounds & brought him before Limhi & said behold he
is the king of the Lamanites he having received a wound hath fallen among their
dead & they have left him & behold we have brought him before you & now let us
slay him but Limhi ^{said} unto them ye shall not slay him but bring him hither
that I may see him & they brought him & Limhi ^{said} unto him what cause have ye to be
come to war against my people behold my people have not broken the oath that I
made unto you therefore why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my peo-
ple & now the king said we have broken the oath because thy people did carry
away the daughters of my people therefore in my anger I did cause my people to come
up to war against ^{thy} people now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this mat-
ter therefore he ^{said} I will search among my people & whosoever hath done this thing shall
perish therefore he caused a search to be made among his people now when
Gideon had heard these things he being the king's captain he went forth & said unto
the king's men they shall not search this land for they lay not this thing to their
charge & do not remember the promise of the Lord that he would not suffer his people to be
carried away into the wilderness & that they ^{the king's men} have stolen the daughters of the
Lamanites & now behold & tell the king of these things that he may tell his wife
that she may be ^{assured} towards us for behold they are all ready for
coming to come against us & behold also there are but few of us & behold they come
with their numerous hosts & except the king doth pacify them towards us
we must perish & we will not the words of the Lord which he prophesied
against us & all this because we would not hearken unto the word of the Lord & turn
from our iniquities & now let us pacify the king & we fulfil the oath which we have
made unto him for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should
lose our lives therefore let us put a stop to ^{this} shedding of blood & now
Limhi told the king ^{the} things concerning his father & the priests that had
fled into the wilderness & ~~that~~ attributed the carrying away of their
daughters to them & it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his
people & he said unto them let us go forth to meet my people without arms & I will
speak unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay ^{the} people that came to
pass that they followed the king & went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites
& it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites & the king of the Lamanites did
throw himself down before them & did lead in behalf of the people of Limhi & so
on the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi that they were without arms & so

The had compassion on them & were pacified towards them & returned with their king
 in peace to their own land & it came to pass that Limhi & his etc. returned to the
 city of Jershon & began to dwell in the land again in peace & it came to pass that after many
 days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Jephthas & they began
 to come into the borders of the land round about now they durst not stay them because
 of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi but they would smite themselves
 their cheeks & exercise authority over them & began to put heavy burdens upon their
 backs & drive them as they would a dumb ass yea all this was done that the people
 the Lord might be humbled to hear the afflictions of the Jephthas ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{and} that
 was no way that they could drive the millers out of their hands for the Lamanites
 had surrounded them on every side & it came to pass that the people began
 to murmur with the king because of their afflictions & they began to be desirous
 to go against them to battle & they did of that the king smothered their complaints & there
 fore he granted unto them that one should do according to their desire & they gathered them
 selves together again & put on their armour & went forth against the Lamanites to drive them
 out of their land & it came to pass that the Lamanites did hear them & ^{there} ~~there~~ ^{where}
 leader ^{there} ~~there~~ ^{where} many of them & now there was a great mourning & lamentation among
 the people of Limhi the widows & mourning for their husbands the sons & the
 daughters mourning for their fathers & the brothers for their brethren now there were
 a great many widows in the land & they did cry mightily from day to day for a
 great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them & it came to pass that their continual
 cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the
 Lamanites & they went again to battle but they were driven back again suffering
 much loss yea they went again even the third time & suffered in the like
 manner & those that were not slain returned against the city of Jershon & they did
 humble themselves even to ^{the} ~~that~~ ^{the} durst subverting themselves to the yoke of bondage
 submitting themselves to be smitten & to be driven to & fro & burdened according to
 the desires of their enemies & they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility
 & they did cry mightily to God year even all the day long & they cry unto their God that
 he would deliver them out of their afflictions & now the Lord was slow to hear their
 cry because of their iniquities & nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries & began
 to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens yet the
 Lord did not altogether deliver them out of bondage & it came to pass that they began
 to prosper by degrees in the land & began to raise grain more abundantly & their
 flocks & herds that they did not suffer with hunger now there was a great number
 of women more than there was of men therefore King Limhi commanded that every
 man should impart to the support of the widows & their children that they

might not perish with hunger & this they did because of the greatness of their
number that had been slain now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much
as it was possible & rescue themselves & their flocks & the king himself did not trust
his person without the walls of the City unless he took his guards with him fearing that
by some means fall in to the hands of the Lamanites & he feared that his people should wa-
te the land round about that by some means they might take those priests that
fled into the wilderness which had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites & that had
caused such a great desolation to come upon them for they were desirous to take them
that they might punish them for they had come into the land of Nephi by night
& carried off of their grain & many of their precious things therefore they laid wa-
it for them & it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between
the Lamanites & the people of Limhi even until the time that Ammon & his Bre-
thren came into the land & the king having been without the gates of the City with
his guard he discovered Ammon & his Brethren & supposing them to be priests of
that there one he caused that they should be taken & bound & cast in to prison & had
they been the priests of God he would have caused that they should be put to death
when he found that they were not but when they were his Brethren & had come from the
land of Judah he was filled with exceeding great joy now King Limhi had
been previous to the coming of Ammon a small number of men to search for the land of Ga-
rahemba but they could not find it & they were lost in the wilderness nevertheless they
did find a land which had been peopled yea a land which was covered with
houses, on a land which had been peopled & which had been destroyed & they having re-
ported it to be the land of Garahemba returned to the land of Nephi having marked the
boundaries of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon & they brought a
record with them & when a record of the people's lands they had found & they were engraven on
plates of ore & now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of
Ammon that King Benjamin had a gift from God whereby he could interpret such
engravings yea & his son also did receive yet Ammon & his Brethren were filled with
sorrow because so many of their Brethren had been slain & also that King Noah & his priests
had caused the people to commit so many sins & iniquities against God & they also
did mourn for the death of Shishadi & also for the departure of Alma & the people
that went with him who had founded a Church of God through the strength & power
of God to faith on the words which had been spoken by Shishadi yea they did mourn
for their departure for they knew not whether they had sinned now they would have gladly
joined with them for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve
him & keep his commandments & now since the coming of Ammon King Limhi
had also entered into a covenant with God & also many of his people to serve him

...the king his commandments & it came to pass that king Limhi & many of his people
were desirous to be baptized but there was none in the land that had authority
from God to command them doing this thing considering himself an unworthy servant
therefore they did cast at that time from themselves into a church waiting upon the
will of the Lord now they were desirous to become even as Alma & his brethren who
had fled into the wilderness they were desirous to be baptized as a witness & a testimony
that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts nevertheless they did pro-
long the time & an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter & now all
the study of Ammon & his people & king Limhi & his people was to deliver themselves
out of the hands of the Lamanites & from bondage (baptism) x

And now it came to pass that Ammon & king Limhi began to consult with the people
how they should deliver themselves out of bondage & even they did cease that all the
people should gather themselves together & thus they did that they might have the
aid of the people concerning the matter & it came to pass that they could find none
to deliver themselves out of bondage except it were to take their women & children
& their flocks & their herds & their tents & depart into the wilderness for the Lamanites be-
ing so numerous that it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them
therefore to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword would come to pass to
hideous war & blood before the king & said unto him now O king there have be-
en to be heard unto my words many times when we have been contending with
our brethren the Lamanites & now O king if thou hast not found me to be an unfaithful
able servant or if thou hast hitherto hearkened to my words in any degree & they
have been of service to thee even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my
words at this time & I will be thy servant & deliver thy people out of bondage &
the king granted unto him that he ^{might} speak & Gideon ^{wait} unto him he held
back for though the back wall on the back side of the City the Lamanites on the guards
of the Lamanites by night and darkness therefore let us send a proclamation among all the peo-
ple that they gather together their flocks & herds that they may drive them into the wilder-
ness by night & all will go according to thy command & say the tribute of wine to the
Lamanites & they will be drunken & we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their
camp when they are drunken & asleep & we will depart with our women & our children
our flocks & our herds into the wilderness & we will travel around the land of Shiloh
& it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon & the king
Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together & he sent the
tribute of wine to the Lamanites & he also sent more wine as a present unto them
they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them & it came
to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with

And it came to pass that they were a nation about the land of Shinarum in 143
the wilderness & they turned towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by
Shinarum & his brethren & they had taken with them gold & silver & precious things,
which they carried along with them provisions with them into the wilderness & they
went on for many days in the wilderness. They were in the land
of Zarahemla & found his blood & became his subjects & it came to pass that a Jewish
man came with gold & silver & precious things & he saw the records which had been
discovered by the people of Shinarum & he came to pass among the Lamanites & he
said that the people of Shinarum had departed out of the land by night that they were
an army into the wilderness to serve the king of Babylon & they had provided them two days they
could no longer allow their trading & they were lost in the wilderness.

Chapter 10 I the recorder of the land to the people of the Land ^{who}
~~were~~ ^{who} ~~came~~ ^{came} into the wilderness by the people of Shinarum & he said
having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Babylon would come upon them &
had made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks & the
flocks of their grain & departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Babylon & the Lord
did strengthen them, that the armies of king Babylon could not overtake them, & as they
went it came to pass that they were in the wilderness & they came
to a land, yea even a very beautiful & pleasant land; a land of Shinarum & they
came to dwell there & they pitched their tents & began to till the ground & began to
build buildings & they were industrious & did labour & they began to
to pass that the people were desirous that a king should be thinking, for he was be-
loved by his people, but he ~~said~~ ^{said} unto them, he told, it is not expedient that we
should have a king, for thus saith the Lord ye shall not as them one flesh a house
after you one man shall not think himself a head another therefore say unto
you it is not expedient that ye should have a king, nevertheless if it were possi-
ble that ye could always have ~~just~~ ^{just} to have kings, it would be well for you
to have a king, but I remember the iniquity which king Babylon & himself was caught
in many & did many things which ~~were~~ ^{were} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ the sight of the Lord & the Lord
which caused us to be separated from the Lord & the Lord did he
in my heart did answer my prayer & ^{now} made me an instrument in his hands in br-
ing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth, nevertheless in this I do not glory for
I am unworthy to glory of myself now say unto you, as you have been ~~oppressed~~ ^{oppressed} ~~by~~ ^{by}
king Babylon & have been in bondage to him & his priests & have been brought
into iniquity by them, therefore ye were bound with the hands of iniquity & now as
ye have been released by the power of God, out of their hands, ye are out of the hands of
king Babylon & his people & also from the hands of iniquity & I desire that ye

14 And Alma said unto the people, I desire that ye should have a man to be king, and ye shall also have a man to be your teacher, now your minister, except he be a man of God, and doing in his ways, & keeping his Commandments, thus did Alma teach the people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that they should be in contention among themselves, now Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their Church, & it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach, except it came by him from God, therefore he consecrated all their priests, & all their teachers, & none were consecrated except ^{they} were first, inasmuch as before they did, he took over their people, & did nourish them, with things pertaining to righteousness, & it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land, & they called the land Helaman, & it came to pass that they did multiply & prosper exceedingly ~~in the land~~ in the land of Helaman, they built a City which they called the City of Helaman, nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people, yea, he took their patience & their faith, nevertheless, who are patient in him, the same shall be lifted up at the last day, yea, & thus it was with this people, for behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, & none could deliver them, but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham, & of Isaac, & of Jacob, & it came to pass that he did deliver them, & he did show forth his mighty power unto them, & great ^{was} their rejoicing, for behold it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helaman, yea, in the City of Helaman, while telling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites were in the borders of the land, now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, & gathered themselves together into the City of Helaman, & they were much distressed because of the appearance of the Lamanites, but Alma went forth, & stood among them, & exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God, & he would deliver them, therefore they washed their eyes, & began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, & their wives, & children, & it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites, & Alma & his brethren went forth, & delivered themselves up into their hands, & the Lamanites took possession of the Land of Helaman, now the armies of the Lamanites which had followed after the people of King Limhi had been lost in the wilderness for many days, & behold they had found those priests of King Noah, in a place which they called Amulon, & they had begun to possess the land of Amulon, & had begun to till the ground, now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon, & it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites, & he also sent forth their wives, ^{who were} the daughters of the Lamanites, to plea with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands, & inasmuch as the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon & his brethren, & did not destroy them.

because of this, Amulon & his brethren did gain the Lamanites they used the
travelling of the wilderness in search of the land of Shiloh when they discovered the land
of Shiloh which was possessed by Shiloh & his brethren & it came to pass that the Lamanites
promised unto Shiloh & his brethren that if they would show them the way which led
to the land of Shiloh they would grant unto them their lives & their liberty but
~~Shiloh & his brethren~~ & the Lamanites had sworn them the oath that lead to the land of Shiloh
the Lamanites would not keep them prisoner but they set guards round about the land
of Shiloh & Amulon & his brethren & the remainder of them went to the land of Shiloh
& a part of them returned to the land of Shiloh & also brought with them the
55 & the children & the servants ^{who} had been in the land & the king of the Lamanites
had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king & a ruler over his people ^{who were} in the land of Shiloh
nevertheless he should have no power to do any thing contrary
to the will of the king of the Lamanites & it came to pass that Amulon did gain favour in
the eyes of the king of the Lamanites & the king of the Lamanites granted unto him
& his brethren that they should be appointive teachers over his people yea even over the
people ^{who were} in the land of Shiloh & the land of Shiloh in the land of Shiloh
for the Lamanites had taken possession of all the lands there & the king of the Lamanites
had appointed him king over all these lands & now the name of the king of the Lamanites
was Amulon being called after the name of his father & thus he was called
king Amulon & he was king over all the Lamanites & he appointed teachers of the brethren
of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people & thus the language
which he began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites & they were a people
friendly one with another nevertheless they knew not God neither did they brethren of
Amulon teach them any thing concerning the Lord their God neither the law of Moses
nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi but they taught them that they should
keep their record & that they might write one to another & thus the Lamanites began to
write in reed & began to trade one with another & were great & began to be a cunning & a
wise people as to the wisdom of the world yea a very cunning people delighting in all manner
of wickedness & slandering which it was among them & now Amulon began to pass the Amulon
began to exercise authority over Shiloh & his brethren & began to persecute him & said
that his children should persecute their children for Amulon knew Alma that he had
been one of the king's priests & that it was he that had been the words of Abinadi & was the
man who had been the king's servant & he was wroth with him for he was subject to king Amulon
& he exercised authority over them & but taking upon him the name of Amulon over them
& came to pass that in great ^{many} nations that they began to cry mightily to God
& Amulon ~~persecuted~~ Amulon commanded them that they should stop their voices & set
guards over them that watch day that whosoever should be found calling upon God

It should be said to death: it is come to pass that Alma & his people did not raise their voice to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him: for he did know the thoughts of their hearts. And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying, Lift up your heads, be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me: and I will covenant with this one, his posterity, the more of bondage, I will also ease their burdens which I have put upon their shoulders, that even ye cannot feel them upon your backs, when ye are in bondage: for this will I do, that ye may stand as mine witnesses before me hereafter, that ye may know of a small part of the Lord God do visit his people in their afflictions. And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma & his brethren, were made light: yea, the Lord did strengthen them, that they could bear up their burdens with ease; & they did submit cheerfully & with patience to all the will of the Lord. And it came to pass that so great was their faith & their patience, that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying, Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver ~~you~~ ^{you} out of bondage, & he said unto Alma, Thou shalt gather out this people, & I will go with thee, & deliver this people out of bondage: now it came to pass that Alma & his people, in the night time, gathered their flocks together also of their grain; yea, even all the night time were they gathering their store together: and in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, & all their task-masters were in a profound sleep: ~~it came to pass that~~ Alma & his people departed into the wilderness, & when they had traveled all day, they pitched their tents in a valley, & they called the name of the valley Alma, because he had led them way in the wilderness; yea, & in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God, because he had been merciful unto them, & eased their burdens, & had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, & none could deliver them, except it were the Lord their God. And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men, & all their women, & all their children, that could speak, lifted their voices in the praises of their God. And now the Lord said unto Alma, Hasten thee, & get thou & this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awoken, & do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, & I will stop the Lamanites in this valley, for they come no further in pursuit of this people. And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, & took their journey into the wilderness. And it came to pass that after they had been in the wilderness twelve days, they arrived to the land of Gadiamanah. Mosiah did also receive them with joy, & nourishing. Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together; now there were not so many of the children of Joseph, or so many of those ~~which~~ ^{who} were descendants of Joseph, as there were of the people of Gadiamanah; ~~which~~ ^{who} was a descendant of Mulek, & those which came with him into the wilderness. There were not so many of the people of Joseph, of the people of Gadiamanah, as were ~~of~~ ^{of} the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

153. King Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches
throughout all the land of Zarahemla and gave him power to ordain
priests and teachers over every church, now this was done because there
^{was} so many people that they could not be all gathered by one teacher, neither
could they all hear the word of God in one assembly, therefore they did as-
semble themselves together in different bodies being called churches, every
church having their priests and their teachers and every priest preach-
ing the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma;
and thus notwithstanding there being many churches, they all one church
yea even the church of God, for there was nothing preached in all the church
~~except the word of God~~ - except it were repentance and faith in
God, and now there ^{were} seven churches in the land of Zarahemla, and it
came to pass that whosoever was desirous to take upon them the name
of Christ of God, they did join the churches of God, and they were called
the people of God, and the Lord did pour out his spirit upon them, for
they were blessed and prospered in the land, now it came to pass that
there were many of the rising generation that could not understand
the words of King Benjamin being little children at the time he spake un-
to his people, and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers
they did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection
of the dead neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ
and now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of
God and their hearts were hardened and they would not be baptized
neither would they join the church and they were a separate people as
to their faith and remained so ever after even in their carnal and sinful
state for they would not call upon the Lord their God and now in the
reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God, but
because of the desertions among the brethren they became more numerous
for it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering
words ^{which} were in the church & did cause them to commit many sins
therefore it became a judgment that those who committed sin that ^{was} in
the church should be admonished by the church, and it came to pass
that they were brought before the priests & delivered up unto the
priests by the teachers & the priests brought them before Alma ^{who} ~~was~~
~~and he was the high priest~~ was the high priest, Now King Mosiah had
given Alma the authority over the church and it came to pass
that Alma did ^{not} know concerning them for there were many witnesses

157 against them yea the people stood & testified of their iniquities in a burnt
- dance now there had not any such thing happened before in the church
therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit & he caused that they should
be brought before the King & he said unto the King behold here are many
~~which~~ ^{which} we have brought before thee ^{which} are accused of their brother
yea & they have been taken in divers iniquities and they do not repent of
their iniquities therefore we have brought them before thee that thou mayest
judge them according to their crimes but King Mosiah ^{said} ~~said~~ unto Alma
behold I judge them not therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be
judged and now the spirit of Alma was again troubled and he went
enquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter for he
feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God & it came to
pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God the vo-
- ice of the Lord came to him saying blessed art thou Alma blessed
are they ~~which~~ ^{which} were baptized in the waters of Mormon thou art
- blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my serv-
- ant ~~Ammon~~ Abinadi and blessed are they because of their ex-
- ceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them
& blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people
& they shall be established & they shall be my people yea blessed is this peo-
- ple ^{which} ~~which~~ are willing to bear my name for in my name shall they call & they
are mine & because thou hast enquired of me concerning the transgressor
thou art blessed thou art my servant and I covenant with thee that thou
shall have eternal life and thou shalt serve me & go forth in my name &
shall gather together my sheep & he that will hear my voice shall be
my sheep & him shall ye receive into the church & him will I also receive
for behold this is my church whosoever ~~that~~ is baptized shall be bapti-
- zed unto repentance & whosoever ye receive shall believe in my name
& him will I freely forgive for it is I that take upon me the sins of the
world for it is I that have created them & it is I that granteth unto him that
believeth in the end a place at my right hand for behold in my name
are they called & if they know me they shall come forth and shall have
a place eternally at my right hand and it shall come to pass that
when the second trumpet shall sound then shall they that never
knew me come forth & shall stand before me & then shall they know
that I am the Lord their God that I am their redeemer but they would not
be redeemed & then will I confess unto them that I never knew them &

at they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil & his
angels therefore I say unto you that he that will not hear my voice the
same shall ye not receive into my church for him I will not receive at
the last day therefore I say unto you go and whosoever transgresseth
against me him shall ye judge according to the sins which he ^{has} committed & if he confess his sins before thee and me and repenteth in
the sincerity of his heart him shall ye forgive & I will forgive him also
yea & as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses
against me & ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses for verily
I say unto you he that forgiveth not his neighbors trespasses when he
saith that he repenteth ^{saith} the Father hath brought himself under condemnation
now I say unto you go & whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall
not be numbered among my people and this shall be observed from this time
forward. And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote
them down that he might have them & that he might judge the people of
that church according to the commandment of God, and it came to pass
that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity
according to the word of the Lord and whosoever repented of their sins & did
confess them, he did number among the people of the church &
those that would not confess their sins & repent of their iniquity, the same
were not numbered among the people of the church & their names were
blotted out. And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of
the church & they began again to have peace & to prosper exceedingly in the
affairs of the church walking circumspectly before God receiving many &
baptizing many & now all these things did Alma and his fellow labourers
do, ^{which} were over the church walking in all diligence teaching the
word of God in all things suffering all manner of afflictions being
persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God &
they did admonish their brethren & they were also admonished every
one by the word of God according to his sins or to the sins which he
had committed. Being commanded of God to pray without ceasing & to give
thanks in all things, and now it came to pass that the persecutions which
were ^{were} inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that
the church began to murmur & complain to their leaders concerning
the matter and they did complain to Alma & Alma laid the case be-
fore their king Mosiah and Mosiah consulted with his priests, and it
came to pass that King Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the

181 land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of these
people belonged to the church of God, & there was a strict command through
out all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them that
there should be an equality among all men that they should let no pride
nor haughtiness disturb their peace that every man should esteem his
neighbor as himself labouring with their own hands for their support
yea and all their priests & teachers should labour with their own hands
for their support in all cases save it were in sickness or in much want
& doing these things they did abound in the grace of God and there began to
be much peace again in the land and the people began to be very
numerous and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth yea on
the north & on the South on the east & on the west building large cities
and villages in all quarters of the land & the Lord did visit them and
prosper them & they became a large & a wealthy people. Now the
sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers & also one
of the sons of Alma was numbered among them he being called
Alma after his father nevertheless he became a very wicked & an adu-
erous man & he was a man of many words & did speak much flattery to the people
therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities &
he became a great hindrance to the prosperity of the church of God stealing
away the hearts of the people causing much discontent among the people
giving a chance for the enemies of God to exercise his power over them & now
of God to exercise his power it came to pass that while he was going ab-
out to destroy the church of God for he did go about secretly with
the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church & to lead astray the
people of the Lord contrary to the commandments of God or even the
king & as said unto you as they were going about ^{rebelling} against God
Behold the angel of the Lord appeared unto them & he descended as it were in
a cloud & he shoke as it were with a voice of thunder which caused the
earth to shake upon which they stood, & so great was their astonishment
that they fell to the earth & understood not the words which he spake
unto them nevertheless he cried again saying Alma arise & stand
forth for why persecutest thou the church of God for the Lord hath said
this is my church & I will establish it & nothing shall overthrow it
save it is the transgressions of my people & again the angel said Behold
the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people & also the prayers of his
servant Alma who is thy father for he hath prayed with much faith.

162 concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth
therefore for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power & au-
-thority of God that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to
their faith. & now behold can ye dispute the power of God for behold
doth not my voice shake the earth & can ye not also behold me before
you & I am sent from God, now I say unto thee go & remember the captivity
of thy fathers in the land of Hemen & in the land of Nephi & remember how great
things he hath done for them for they were in bondage & he hath delivered
them, now I say unto thee Alma go thy way & seek to destroy the church no
more that their prayers may ~~and~~ answered & this even if thou wilt of
thyself be cast off. & now it came to pass that these were the last words which
the angel spake unto Alma & he departed & now Alma & those that were
with him fell again to the earth for great was their astonishment for
with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord & his voice
was as thunder which shook the earth & they knew ^{that} there was nothing like
the power of God that could shake the earth & cause it to tremble as this
-up it would part asunder & now the astonishment of Alma was so great
that he became dumb that he could not open his mouth & he became
weak even that he could not move his hands therefore he was taken
by those that were with him & carried helpless even until he was laid
before his father & they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened
unto them & his father rejoiced for he knew that it was the power of
God & he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might
witness what the Lord had done for his son & also for those that were with
him & he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together & they
began to fast & to pray ^{to the} Lord their God that he would open the
mouth of Alma that he might speak & also that his limbs might receive
their strength that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and
know of the goodness & glory of God & it came to pass after they had fasted
and prayed for the space of two days and two nights the limbs of Alma received
their strength & he stood up & began to speak unto them bidding them to be
of good comfort for said he I have repented of my sins & have been redeemed
of the Lord, behold I am born of the spirit & the Lord ^{said} unto me marvel not
that all mankind yea men & women all nations ^{from} ~~from~~ ^{from} tongues & people
must be born again yea born of God changed ^{from} ~~from~~ ^{from} their carnal & fallen state
to a state of righteousness being redeemed of God becoming his sons & daugh-
-ters & thus they become new creatures & unless they do this they can.

is I in now I inherit the kingdom of God. I say unto you unless this be the case they
must be cast off, and this I know because I was like to be cast off never the life after
wading through much tribulation repenting night unto death the Lord in
mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning & I am born
of God my ^{my} hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness & bonds of iniquity
I was in the darkest abyss but now I behold the marvelous light of God my
soul was writhed with eternal torment but I am snatched & my soul is pained
no more I rejected my redemption & denied that which had been spoken of by
our fathers but now that they may foresee that he will come & that he rem-
-embeth every creature of his creating & he will make himself manifest
unto all, yea every knee shall bow & every tongue confess before him yea
even at the last day when all men shall stand to be judged of him then &
-all they confess that he is God then I shall they confess who live without
God in the world that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is
just upon them & they shall quake & tremble & shrink beneath the glance
of his allsearching eye & now it came to pass that Alma began from this
time forward to teach the people & those ~~which~~ ^{who} were with Alma at
the time the angel appeared unto them traveling round about through all
the land publishing to all the people the things which they had
heard & seen & preaching the word of God in much tribulation being
greatly persecuted by those ^{who} were unbelievers being smitten
by many of them but notwithstanding all this they did impart much
consolation to the church confirming their faith & exhorting them with
long suffering and much travel to keep the commandments of God, And ^{our}
of them were the sons of Mosiah & their names were Ammon and
-e Aaron and Omner and Himni then were the names of the sons of
Mosiah ~~after they~~ ^{and} traveled throughout all the land of Zarahem-
-la & among all the people ~~which~~ ^{who} were under the reign of King Mosiah
Zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done
to the church confessing all their sins & publishing all the things which
they had seen & explaining the prophecies & the ~~other~~ ^{other} scriptures
to all who desired to hear them & thus they were instruments in the
hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth yea to the
knowledge of their redemption & how blessed are they for they did publish
peace they did publish good tidings of good and they did
-declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth Chapter 13

164

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things they took a ~~small~~ number with them and returned to their father the King and besought of him that he would grant unto them that they might with those whom they had selected to go up to the land of Nephi that they might ~~preach~~ ^{preach} the ~~good~~ things which they had heard and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren the Lamanites that by so doing they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers in that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God that they might become friendly to one another that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God ^{had} given them now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature for they could not bear that any human soul should perish yea even the very thought that any ^{soul} should endure endless torment did cause them to quake & tremble & thus did the spirit of the Lord work upon them for they were the vilest of sinners & the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities & suffering much fearing that they should be cast off forever And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi and it came to pass that King Mosiah went & enquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word & the Lord said unto Mosiah let them go up for many shall believe on their words & they shall have eternal life and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go & do according to their request & they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites And I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter Now King Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon for there was not any of his sons ^{which} would accept of the kingdom therefore he took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass & also the plates of Nephi & all the things which he had kept & preserved according to the commandments of God & after having translated & caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi which ~~was~~ ^{had} been delivered to him by the hand of Limhi and this he ~~done~~

165- because of the great amity of his people for they were desirous beyond meas-
-ure to know concerning these people ^{who} which had been destroyed now he
translated them by the means of these ^{two} stones which ^{were} ~~were~~ ^{restored} ~~restored~~ into
the two rims of a box now these things ^{were} ~~were~~ ^{were} prepared from the beginning
of ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~world~~ ^{world} handed down from generation to generation for the purpose of inte-
-rpreting Languages & they have been kept & preserved by the hand of the
Lord that he would discover to every
creature ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{who} should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of
his people & whosoever has these things is called ~~sure~~ ^{sure} after the manner of old
times. Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records behold it
gave an account of the people ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{who} was destroyed from the time that they
were destroyed back to the building of the great tower at the time the
Lord confounded the Languages of the people & they were scattered abro-
-ad upon the face of all the Earth yea & even from that time until the creation
of Adam, now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn ex-
-ceedingly yea they were filled with sorrow nevertheless it gave them much
-the knowledge in the which they did rejoice & this account shall be writ-
-ten hereafter, for behold it is expedient that all people should know the
things which are written in this account

Chapter 14th

And now as I said unto you that after King Mosiah had done
these things, he took the plates of Brass, and all the things which he had
kept, and conferred them upon ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{who} was the son of Calane, yea
the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and
commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also
keep it record of the people handing them down from one genera-
-tion to another; even as they had been handed down from the time
that Lehi left Jerusalem, now when Mosiah had done this, he set
it out through all the land, among all the people, desiring ~~them~~ ^{them} to
know their will concerning who should be their King, until it came
pass that the voice of the people came, saying, We are desirous that
Aaron, thy son, should be our king, and our ruler, now Aaron was
gone up to the land of naphtali, therefore the king could not confer
the Kingdom upon him; ^{neither would Aaron take upon him the Kingdom,} ~~neither~~ ^{neither} ~~would~~ ^{would} ~~he~~ ^{he} ~~take~~ ^{take} ~~upon~~ ^{upon} ~~him~~ ^{him} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~Kingdom~~ ^{Kingdom}
ling to take upon them the Kingdom, therefore King Mosiah
sent again among the people, yea, even a ~~very~~ ^{very} written word sent he a
among the people, and these were the words that were ~~sent~~ ^{sent} ~~sent~~ ^{sent}

166

Saying: Behold, O ye my people, on my Brethren, for I esteem you as such.
for I desire that ye should consider the cause which you are called to
consider for ye are desirous to have a king, now I declare unto you,
that he to whom that Kingdom both rightly belong, hath declared
and will not take upon him the Kingdom, and now if their should
be another appointed in his stead, Behold I fear their would
rise contentions among the you; and who knoweth. But what say
I, to whom the Kingdom both belong, should return to the
^{unhappy} state down among a part of this people after him, which will
cause ~~it~~ wars & contentions among you; which would be the
cause of shedding much blood, and perverting the way of the
Lord, you, and destroy the souls of ^{many} people. Now I say unto
you, let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no
right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right
to destroy another; if he should be appointed in his
stead, and if ^{my} son should turn again to his pride and vain thou-
ghs, he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his
right to the Kingdom, which would cause him and also this to
~~commit~~ people to commit much sin, and now let us be wise,
and look forward to these things, and do that which will make
for the peace of this people, therefore I will be your king the
remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us ~~appoint~~ ^{appoint}
c. appoint judges to judge this people according to our law; and
we will wisely arrange the affairs of this people; for we will
appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people
according to the commandments of ~~the Lord~~ god, now it is that
that man should be judged of god more of man, for the
judgements of god are all ways just, but the judgements of man
are not all ways just; therefore, if it ~~was~~ possible that ye
could have just men to be your judges, kings, ^{which} would esta-
blish the laws of god, and judge this people according to his com-
mandments, you, if ye could have men for your kings, ^{which} would
be even as my father Benjamin did for this people, I say unto you,
if this could be all ways be the best, then it would be
expedient that ye should all ways have kings to rule over you, and
even I myself have laboured with all the power and ~~force~~ of

167

summarized which I have promised to teach you the Commandments of
God and to establish peace through out the land that there should be
no wars nor contentions no slaying nor plundering nor murdering nor
any manner of unrighteousness and whosoever hath committed unrighteousness have
I punished according to the crime which he hath committed according to
the law which hath been given to us by our fathers now I say unto you
that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have
a king or kings to rule over you for behold how much unrighteousness doth one
wicked king begin to be committed ye see and what great destruction
ye remember ^{of} his wickedness and his abominations and also the
wickedness and abominations of his people behold what great destruction
hath come upon them and also because of their Enmities they were brought
into bondage and were it not for the interposition of their alms they would
have perished because of their sinners repentance they must unavoidably
remain in bondage until now, but behold he did deliver them be-
cause they ~~did~~ ^{pleaded} humble themselves before him in prayer
and he did deliver them out of bondage & thus doth the
Lord work with his Power in all cases among the children of men extend-
ing the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him & behold
now I say unto you ^{ye} cannot ~~have~~ ^{as the} have an iniquitous king save it be
through much contention & the shedding of much blood, for behold he
hath his friends in iniquity & he keepeth his ^{guards} ~~guards~~ about him and
he teacheth up the Laws of those ^{in his} ~~which~~ have reigned in righteousness before
him & he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God & he enacteth
Laws & sendeth them forth among his people, yea Laws after ^{the} manner of his own
wickedness & whosoever doth not obey his Laws he causeth to be destroyed & whoso-
ever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war.
& if he can he will destroy them & thus an unrighteous king doth pervert
the way of all righteousness. And now behold I say unto you it is not expedient
that such abominations should come upon you therefore choose ye by the voice
of this people judges that ye may be judged according to the Laws which ^{ye} ~~have~~
been given ye by our fathers which are correct & which ^{have} ~~was~~ given them by the
hand of the Lord, now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth any
thing contrary to that which is right but it is common for the lesser part of the
people to desire that which is not right, therefore this shall ye observe &
make it your law to do your business by the voice of the people.

168 time cometh that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity then is the
time that the judgments of God will come upon you yea then is the time he will
visit you with great destruction even as he hath hitherto visited this land
and now I ye have judges & they do not judge you according to the law
which has been given ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher Judge
if your high Judge doth not Judge righteous judgments you shall cause that
a small number of your lower Judges should be gathered together and
they shall Judge ~~the~~ your high Judges according to the voice of the people
& I Commanded you to do these things in the fear of the Lord & I Commanded
you to do these things & that ye have no fear that if these people committed sin
and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads for be-
hold I say unto you the sins of many people have been counted by the
iniquities of their kings therefore ~~hence~~ their iniquities are answered
on the heads of their kings and now I desire that their people's iniqui-
ty should be no more in this land especially among this my people but
I desire that this land be a land of liberty and every man may
enjoy his rights and privileges alike so long as the Lord shall
fit that we may live and inherit the land ye even as long as any
of our posterity remaineth upon the face of the land and many
things did King Mosiah write unto them unfolding unto them all
the things and words which a righteous king you all the troubles of
for their people and also all the murmurings of the people to the
king and he explained it all unto them and he told them that
these things had not ought to be but that the burden should come
upon all the people that every man might bear his part and he
also unfolded unto them all he did verily say they should labour under
by having an unrighteous king to rule over them yea all his iniquities & abominations
and all the wars and contentions and blood shed and the stealing and the
plundering and the committing of whoredoms and all manner of iniquities which
cannot be enumerated telling them that these things ought not to be that
they ~~was~~ ^{were} expressly ~~refugnant~~ ^{reluctant} to the commandments of God. And now it
came to pass after King Mosiah had sent these things forth among the peo-
ple they were convinced of the truth of his words therefore they relinquished their
desires for a king and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an
equal chance throughout all the land yea & every man a priest & willing-
ness to answer for his own sins, therefore it came to pass that they assembled
themselves together in bodies throughout the land to cast in their voices conun-

They who should be their judges to judge them according to the law which had
 been given them & they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which
 had been granted unto them & they did wax strong in love towards him
 - such was they did esteem him more than any other man for they did
 not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain yea for that
 which which doth corrupt the soul for he had not desired riches of thine
 neither had he delighted in shedding of blood but he had established
 Peace in the land & he had granted unto his people that they should be
 delivered from all manner of bondage therefore they did esteem him
 yea exceedingly beyond measure. And it came to pass that they did ap-
 - point judges to rule over them or to judge them according to the law &
 this they ~~did~~ ^{had} throughout all the land. And it came to pass that Alma
 was appointed to be the Chief Judge he being also the High Priest his
 Father having conferred the office upon him & had given him the char-
 - ge concerning all the affairs of the church, and now it came to pass
 that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord & he did keep his com-
 - mandments & he did judge righteous judgments & there was continual
 Peace through the land & thus commenced the reign of the Judges thro-
 - ughout all the land. Laman was among all the people ^{who were} ~~who were~~
 called the Nephites, and Alma was the first & Chief Judge. And now
 it came to pass that his Father died being Eighty and two years old
 having lived to fulfill the commandments of God. And it came to pass
 that Mosiah died also in the thirty & third year of his reign being sixty
 and three years, making in the whole five hundred & nine years from
 the time Lehi left Jerusalem, and thus ended the reign of the Kings over
 the people of Nephi, and thus ended the days of Alma who was the fou-
 - nder of their Church. The End of the First Chapter of the Book of Alma.

The Account of Alma who was the Son of Alma the First and Chief Judge over the people of Nephi & also the high Priest over the Church. an account of the reign of the Judges and the wars & contentions among the people, and also an account of a war between the Nephites & the Lamanites according to the Record of Alma the first and Chief Judge ————— c Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Nephi from this time forward, King Mosiah having gone the way of all the Earth having waged a good warfare walking uprightly before God, leaving ^{none} no one to lighten his burden — nevertheless he established Laws & they were acknowledged before the people.

170 Therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made
And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the
Judgment seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged a man
which was large & was noted for his much strength & he had gone about
among the people preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of
God, bearing down against the Church declaring unto the people that
every Priest & teacher had ought to become popular & they ought not to labor
with their own hands but that they had ought to be supported by the people
And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be sa-
ved at the last day & that they need not fear nor tremble but that they
might lift up their heads & rejoice for the Lord had created all men
& had also redeemed all men & in the end all men should have Eter-
nal Life, And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much
that many did believe on his words even so many that they began to su-
port him & give him money & he began to be lifted up in the pride of
his heart & to wear very costly apparel yea & even began to establish
a Church after the manner of his preaching. And it came to pass as
he was going to preach to those who believed on his word he met a man
which belonged to the Church of God, yea even one of their teachers & he began
to contend with him sharply that he might lead away the people of the Ch-
urch, but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the ^{words} of God.
Now the name of the man was Gideon & it was him that was an instrument
in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage now
because Gideon withstood him with the words of God, he was wroth with Gi-
deon & drew his sword & began to smite him, now Gideon being tri-
-bun with many years therefore he was not able to withstand his blows
therefore he was slain by the sword & the man who slew him was
taken by the people of the Church & was brought before Alma to be
Judged according to the crime which he had committed, & it came to pass
that he stood before Alma & jild for himself with much boldness, but
Alma said unto him behold this is the first time that Priestcraft has
been introduced among this people & behold thou art not only guilty
of sacrilege but thou hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword & were priestcraft to
be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction
and thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man yea a man which has
done much good among this people & were we to spare thee his blood wou-
ld come upon us, for vengeance, therefore thou art condemned to die

171- according to the Law which had been given us by ^{the} Messiah our last King & they
have been acknowledged by this people therefore this people must abide by the
Law, & it came to pass that they took him & his name was Jehor. & they car-
ried him upon the top of the hill mantle & there he was caused or rather did
acknowledge between the Heavens & the Earth, that what he had taught to the people
was contrary to the word of God. & there he suffered an ignominious death. & ever-
theless this did not put an end to the spreading of Priestcraft through the land;
for there ~~were~~ ^{were} many ~~who~~ ^{who} loved the vain things of the world & they went
forth preaching false doctrines; & this they did for the sake of riches & hon-
our. & the last they durst not lie if it were known for fear of the Law for
Lies were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their
beliefs; & ~~they~~ now the Law could have no power on any man for ^{their} ~~the~~ belie-
-of & they durst not steal for fear of the Law for such were punished;
neither durst they rob, nor murder for he that murdered was
punished unto death. But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong
to the Church of God, began to persecute those that did belong to the church
-of God & had taken upon them the name of Christ; yea, they did per-
-secute them, & afflict them with all manner of words; & this because of
their humility, because they were not proud in their own eyes, & because
they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money & without
price. & now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there
should not any man belonging to the church, arise & persecute those that did
not belong to the church, & that there should be no persecution among them-
-selves. Nevertheless there were many among them who began to be proud,
and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows;
yea, they would smite one another with their fists. Now this was in the second
year of the reign of Alma, & it was a cause of much affliction to the church;
yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church, for the hearts of many
were hardened, & their names were blotted out, that they were remembered
no more among the people of God, and also many withdrew themselves from
among them, now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the
-faith. Nevertheless they were still fast & immovable in keeping the
commandments of God, & they bore with patience the persecution which was
heaped upon them. & when their Priests left their labour, to impart the word
of God unto the people, the people also left their labours to hear the word of God.
& when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God, they all returned
again diligently unto their labours, & the priest, not returning himself.

And his hearing for the instructor was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher
any better than the learner, & thus they were all equal, & they did all labour
every man according to his strength, & they did impart of their substance every
man according to that which he had to the poor, & the needy, & the sick, & the
afflicted, & they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat & comely.
And thus they did establish the affairs of the church, & thus they began to
have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions, & now
because of the gladness of the Church, they began to ^{be exceeding} ~~exceeding~~ rich, having
abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need; abundance of
black & white, & fattings of every kind, & also abundance of grain, & of gold,
& of silver, & of precious things, & abundance of silk & fine twisted linen, & all
manner of good homely cloths, & thus in their prosperous circumstances they
did not send away ^{any} ~~any~~ ^{poor} ~~poor~~ ^{that were} ~~that were~~ ^{hungry} ~~that were~~ ^{or that were} ~~or that were~~
or that ^{were} ~~were~~ ^{sick} ~~sick ^{or that had not been nourished} ~~or that had not been nourished~~. They did not set their
hearts upon riches, therefore they were liberal to all, both old & young,
both bond & free, both male & female, whether out of the Church or in the
Church, having no respects to persons, as to those who stood in need, and
thus they did prosper & become far more wealthy than those who did
not belong to their Church, for those who did not belong to their Church
did indulge themselves in sorceries, & in sorcery or sorceries, & in babbings,
and in envyings & strife, and wearing costly apparel, being lifted
up in the pride of their own eyes, persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing,
committing whoredoms, murdering, & all manner of wickedness;
Nevertheless the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress
it, in as much as it were possible, and it came to pass that by ~~this~~ ^{the} thus
exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which
he had done, they became more still, & durst not commit any wickedness, if
it were known; therefore there was much peace among the people of Joseph,
until the fifth year of the reign of the judges. And it came to pass in the
commencement of the fifth year of their reign, there began to be a contention
among the people, for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very
cunning man & a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after
the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed ac-
cording to the law. Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much
people after him, even so much that they began to be very powerful, & they
began to endeavour ~~to~~ ^{to} establish Amlici to be a king over the people, now
this was ~~the~~ ^{very} alarming to the people of the Church, and also to all those who~~

173 had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici for they knew
that according to their Law that such things must be established by the
voice of the people; therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain
the voice of the people, he being a wicked man, would deprive them
of their rights & privileges of the Church &c. for it was his intent to de-
stroy the Church of God. And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves
together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether
it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and
wonderful contentions one with another. & thus they did assemble themselves
together to cast in their voices concerning the matter, and they were laid before
the judges, and it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici,
that he was not made king over the people. Now this did cause much joy in the
hearts of those ~~which~~^{which} were against him, but Amlici did stir up those ~~which~~^{which}
were in his favor to anger against those ~~which~~^{which} were not in his favor. And it
came to pass that they gathered themselves together, & did Consecrate Amlici to
be their King. Now when Amlici was made King over them he commanded
them that they should take up arms against their Brethren. & this he
did that he might subject them to him. Now the people of Amlici were
distinguished by the name of Amlicites, being called Amlicites; & the remain-
-ing were called Nephites, or the people of God; therefore the people of the
Nephites ~~was~~^{were} aware of the intent of the Amlicites; & therefore they did
prepare for to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, with
dimiters, with bows, with arrows, with stones, with slings, with all man-
-ner of weapons of war, of every kind; & thus they were prepared to meet the
Amlicites at the time of their coming. & there was appointed Captains, & High
Captains, & Chief Captains, according to their numbers. And it came to pass
that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every
kind. & he also appointed rulers & leaders over his people to lead them
to war against their Brethren. & it came to pass that the Amlicites came
up upon the hill Amnihu, which was East of the River Sidon, which ran
by the land of Zarahemla; & there they began to make war with the Nephites,
Nephi & Lehi being the chief judge & the governor of the people of Nephi;
therefore he went up with his people, yea with his Captains & Chief Captains,
yea at the head of his armies against the Amlicites to battle. & they began to
slay the Amlicites upon the hill East of Sidon. & the Amlicites did contend with
the Nephites with great strength in so much that many of the Nephites did
fall before the Amlicites; nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hands

174

the Nephites did they slew the Amlicites with a great slaughter that they began to flee before them, and it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue the Amlicites all that day, & did slay them with much slaughter in so much that there was slain of the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred & thirty or two souls. And there was slain of the Nephites with a thousand five hundred sixty or two souls. And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon the valley being called after that Gideon ^{who} was slain by the hand of Ishor with the sword. & in this valley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night; & Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the Amlicites that he might know of their plans & their plots whereby he might guard himself against that he might preserve his people from being destroyed, now these ^{whom} he had sent out to watch the camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram & Amnor & Manti & Limher these were they ^{who} went out with their men to watch camp of the Amlicites, & it came to pass that on the morrow they returned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste being greatly astonished & struck with much fear saying, Behold we followed the camp of the Amlicites to our great astonishment in the land of Minon above the land of Karahemla in the course of the land of Nephi we saw a numerous host of the Lamanites, and behold the Amlicites have joined them and they are upon our brethren in that land & they are fleeing before them with their flocks and their wives & their children towards our city & except we make haste they obtain possession of our city & our fathers & our wives and our children be slain, and it came to pass that the people of Nephi took their tents & departed out of the valley of Gideon towards their city which was the city of Karahemla, and behold as they were crossing the river Sidon the Lamanites & the Amlicites being as numerous almost as it were as the sands of the sea ^{came} upon them to destroy them, & nevertheless the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord having prayed mightily to him ^{that} he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies therefore the Lord did hear their cries & did strengthen them & the Lamanites & the Amlicites did fall before them, and it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword fall to fall & they did contend mightily one with another and it came to pass that Alma ^{being} a man of God being exercised with much faith ^{as a} bride saying O Lord have mercy & spare my life.

176

were dark according to the mark which was set upon their Fathers which was
a curse upon them because of their transgression & their rebellion against their brother
-en, ^{who} consisted of Nephi Jacob Joseph & Sam ^{who} were just & holy men
& their brethren sought to destroy them therefore they ^{were} cursed & the Lord God set a
mark upon them yea upon Laman & Lemuel and also the sons of Ishmael & the Ish-
-maelitic women & this was done that their seed might be distinguished from
the seed of their brethren that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people
that they might not mix & believe in iniquitous traditions which would prove
their destruction. And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his
seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed there-
-fore whosoever suffered himself to be led away ^{by} the Lamanites were call-
-ed under that head & there was a mark set upon him. And it came
to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lam-
-anites but believed those records which were brought out of the land of
Jerusalem & also in the tradition of their Fathers which were correct
^{who} believed in the commandments of God & kept them were called
the Nephites or the people of Nephi from that time forth & it is they ^{who} ~~have~~
have kept the records which are true of their People & also of the people
of the Lamanites. Now we will return again to the Amlicites for they also
they had a mark set upon them yea they set the mark upon themselves yea ^{even} a
mark of red upon their foreheads thus the word of God is fulfilled ^{for} these are the words
which he ~~said~~ ^{said} to Nephi. Behold the Lamanites have I cursed & I will set a mark
upon them that they & their seed may be separated from thee & thy seed from
this time henceforth and for ever except they repent of their wickedness
& turn to me that I may have mercy upon them. And again I will set a
mark upon him that minglith his seed with thy Brethren that they may
be cursed also and again will I set a mark upon him that fighteth agai-
-not thee and thy seed & again I say he that departeth from thee shall no
more be called thy seed and I will bless thee & and whosoever shall be call-
-ed thy seed henceforth and forever. And these were the promises of the Lord unto
Nephi and to his seed. Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling
the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads now
- or the less as they had come out in open rebellion against God therefore
it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them now I would that
ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse & even so accit-
-every man that is cursed bringeth upon himself his own condemnation

Now it came to pass that not many days after the Battle which was fought
- in the land of Zarahemla by the Lamanites & the Amlicites that there
was another Army of the Lamanites ~~Lamanites~~ came in upon the People of
Nephi in the same place where the first Army met the Amlicites.
And it came to pass that there was an Army sent to drive them out
of their land. Now Alma himself, being afflicted with a wound did
not go up to Battle at this time against the Lamanites but he sent
up a numerous Army against them & they set up & slew many of the Lamanites & drove
the remainder of them out of the borders of their land & then they returned again &
began to establish peace in the land being troubled no more for a time with their
Enemies now all these things were done yea all these wars & contentions ~~were~~
commenced & ended in the fifth year of the Reign of the Judges & in one year ~~were~~
thousands & tens of thousands of souls ~~were~~ sent to the Eternal world that they
might reap their rewards according to their works whether they were good or
whether they were bad to reap Eternal happiness or Eternal misery
according to the spirit which ^{they} listened to Obey whether it be a good spirit
or a bad one for every man receiveth wages of him ^{when} he listeth to obey &
this according to the words of the spirit of Prophecy therefore let it be accord-
-ing to the truth. And thus ended the fifth year of the reign of the Judges
- Chapter 2.

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the Reign of the Judges over the peo-
-ple of Nephi there ~~were~~ no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla
^{but} the people ~~were~~ ^{were} afflicted ye greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren &
also for the loss of their flocks & herds & also for the loss of their fields of grain which ~~were~~
trampled under foot & destroyed by the Lamanites & so great ~~were~~ ^{were} their afflictions that
every soul had cause to mourn & they believed that it was the judgment of
God sent upon them because of their wickedness & their abominations
therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their history. And they be-
-gan to establish the Church more fully. yea & many were Baptised in the
waters of ~~Sidon~~ ^{Sidon} & were joined to the Church of God. yea they were Baptised
by the hand of Alma who had been consecrated the High Priest over the
People of the Church by the hand of his Father Alma. And it came to pass in the
seventh year of the Reign of the Judges there ~~were~~ ^{were} about three thousand five hundred
souls that united themselves to the Church of God & were Baptised. And thus en-
-ded the seventh year of the Reign of the Judges over the People of Nephi & there
~~were~~ ^{were} continual peace in all that ~~one~~ ^{one} time. And it came to pass in the eighth
~~were~~ ^{were} year of the Reign of the Judges that the People of the Church began to wax proud.

178 because of their exceeding riches & their fine silks & their fine twined linens
& because of their many flocks & herds & their gold & their silver & all manner
of precious things which they had obtained by their industry & in all these
things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes for they began to wear
very costly & expensive apparel now this was the cause of much affliction & it came
and to many of the people ^{in Jerusalem} Alma had consecrated to be teachers & priests
and elders over the church & many of them were sorely grieved for
the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people for they
saw & beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted
up in the pride of their eyes & to set their hearts upon riches & upon the vain things
of the world that they began to be covetous one towards another & they
began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will
and pleasure & thus in this eighth year of the reign of the judges there began to be
great contentions among the church & there ^{was} ~~was~~ ^{were} envyings & strife & malice
and persecutions & pride even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong
to the church of God and thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges
and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling block to those who
did not belong to the church & thus the church began to fail in its prog-
ress and it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year Alma
^{and} ~~showing~~ ^{showing} the wickedness of the church & also that the example of the church began
to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another
- thus bringing on the destruction of the people & ^{the Lord} ~~there~~ ^{was} great une-
quality among the people some lifting themselves up with their pride dispi-
sing others burning their backs upon the naked & those ^{which} ~~who~~ were
hungry & those ^{who} ~~that~~ were athirst & those ^{which} ~~who~~ were sick & afflicted, now this was
a great cause for lamentations among the people while others were abusing them
- seeing & succoring those who stood in need of their succor such as imparting their substance
to the poor & the needy feeding the hungry & suffering all manner of afflictions for
Christ's sake ^{who} ~~which~~ should come according to the spirit of prophecy looking forward
to that day thus retaining a remission of their sins being filled with great joy
because of the resurrection of the dead according to the will & power and
deliverance of Jesus Christ from the ^{power} ~~power~~ of death and now it came to pass
that Alma having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God & the persecutions
which ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~was~~ upon them by the remainder of his people drawing all their
unequalities began to be very sorrowful & nevertheless the spirit of the Lord did
not fail him and he selected a wise man ^{who} ~~which~~ ^{was} among the elders of the church
and gave him power according to the voice of the people that he might

179 have power to enact Laws according to the Laws which had been given to
to put them in force according to the wickedness & the crimes of the people. For this
mans name was Sephiak & he was appointed Chief Judge & he sat ~~upon~~ in the
Judgment seat to Judge & to govern the people, now Alma did not grant unto
him the ^{high} Priesthood over the Church but he retained the Office of high
Priest unto himself, but he delivered the Judgment seat unto Sephiak &
thus he said that he himself might go forth among his people or among the peop-
le of Sephi that he might preach the word of God unto them to stir them up in
remembrance of their duty & that he might pull down by the word of God all
the pride & crattiness & all the contentions which ~~was~~ ^{were} among his people
saying now that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down
in pure testimony against them and thus in the ~~month~~ ^{the} commencing
of the ninth year of the ^{reign of the} Judges over the people of Sephi Alma delivered
up the Judgment seat to Sephiak & conjoined himself wholly to the
High Priesthood of the holy order of God to the testimony of word ascer-
-ting to the spirit of revelation and Prophecy

Chapter 3rd

The words which Alma, the high priest, according to the holy order of God
delivered to the people in their Cities & Villages throughout the land. Now
it came to pass that Alma began to declare the word of God unto the people, first
in the land of Zarahemla, & from thence ^{went} ~~came~~ ^{unto} all the land & thus are the
words which he spake to the people in the Church which was established in the
City of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying: I, Alma, having been
consecrated by ^{him} ~~him~~ ^{the Lord} & thus Alma to be a High Priest over the Church of God,
he having power and authority from ^{God} to do these things, Behold, I say unto
you that he began to establish a Church in the land which was in the borders of
Sephiya, the land was called the land of Mormon, yea & he did baptize
his brethren in the waters of Mormon. Behold, I say unto you, they were deliv-
-red out of the hand of the people of King Noah, by the mighty power of God and
Behold, after that they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites, in
their wickedness, yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity & again the Lord did del-
-iver them out of bondage by the power of his word, & we were brought into this
land, & here we began to establish the Church of God throughout this land, also.
And, Behold, I say unto you, my Brethren, ~~ye~~ ^{ye} you that belong to this Church,
have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your Father's
yea & have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his many & long suffer-
-ings towards them? & more over have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance

180 that he had delivered their souls from Hell. Behold he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep; & they awake unto God. Behold they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of Death; the chains of Hell & an everlasting destruction did await them. Until now I ask of you my Brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you nay, they were not. & again I ask, ^{were} the Bands of death broken, & the chains of Hell which encircled them about were they loosed? I say unto you, yea, they were loosed, & their souls did expand, & they did sing, redeeming love. & I say unto you that they are saved. Now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? what is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, & also, the chains of Hell? Behold, I can tell you; did not my Father Alma believe in the words which ^{were} delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? & was he not a holy Prophet? did he not speak the words of God? and my Father Alma believed them, & according to his ~~faith~~ faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold, I say unto you that this is all true. & Behold, he preached the word unto your Fathers, & a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts; & they humbled themselves, and put their trust in the true & living God. & behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved. & now behold, I ask of you my Brethren of the Church, have ye spiritually been born of God? have ye received his image in your own countenances? have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts? do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? do you look forward with an eye of faith, & view this mortal body raised in immortality, & this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which ^{have} been done in the mortal body? I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day come unto me, ye blessed, for ye have done my will? Behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth? Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord at that day, & say, Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth; that he will save you, or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the Tribunal of God, with your souls filled with guilt & remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at naught & despised the commandments of God? I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God

181 ¹⁸¹improven upon your countenances. I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the Devil? I say unto you, ye will know at that day, that ye cannot be saved, for there can no man be saved except his garments be ~~cleansed from all stain~~ ^{are washed white} and his garments must be purified until ~~they are~~ ^{they are} cleansed from all stain through the blood of him of whom it ~~has~~ ^{has} been spoken by our Father ~~which~~ ^{who} should come to redeem his people from their sins. Now I ask of you, my Brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall all stand before the Bar of God, having your garments stained with blood, & all manner of filthiness? Behold what will these things testify against you? Behold, will they not testify that ye are murderers, ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness? Behold, my Brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the Kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, & with Jacob, & also all the Holy Prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless pure & white? I say unto you, nay, except ye make our Father a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, or if ye cannot suppose that such ~~men~~ ^{men} can have place in the Kingdom of Heaven, but ~~they~~ ^{they} shall be cast out, for they are the children of the Kingdom of the Devil. And now Behold I say unto you, my Brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, & if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, would ye not have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble, that your garments have been cleansed & made white, through the blood of Christ, ~~which~~ ^{who} will come to redeem his people from their sins? Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not, ~~ye are not~~ ^{ye are not} prepared to meet God. Behold, ye must prepare quickly, for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not Eternal life. Behold I say, ~~is there~~ ^{is there} one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you, that such an one is not prepared, & I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, & he knoweth not when the time shall come: for such an one is not found guiltless. Again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions, would ye not such an one, for he is not prepared, & the time is at hand that he must repent, or he cannot be saved, ye even woe unto all ye workers of iniquity, repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it. Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, ~~for the arms of mercy~~ ^{are} ~~extended towards them~~ ^{as he saith}, Repent, & I will receive you, ye shall come unto me, & ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life, ye shall eat & drink of the ~~fruit~~ ^{bread} & the waters of life freely, ye are come unto me, I bring forth the works of

182
righteous men, shall not be put down & cast into the fire for behold the time
is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doth not the
works of righteousness, the same ^{shall} ~~shall~~ cause to wail & mourn. O ye workers of iniquity
ye that are puff'd up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed
to have known the ways of righteousness, nevertheless ye have gone astray as sheep ha-
ving no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you & art still calling
after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice, behold I say unto you that
the good shepherd doth call you, yea, & in his own name he doth call you, wh-
ich is the name of Christ, if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to
the name by which ye are called, behold ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd,
and now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd of what fold are ye?
Behold, I say unto you, that the Devil is your shepherd, & ye are of his fold, & now who
can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever doth this is a liar & a child of
the Devil; for I say unto you, that whatsoever is good, cometh from God, & whatsoever
is evil, cometh from the Devil; therefore if a man bringeth forth good works,
harkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him, but
whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the Devil;
for he harkeneth unto his voice, & doth follow him, & whosoever doth this must re-
ceive his wages of him; therefore for his wages he receiveth Death, as to things pertain-
ing unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works. And now my Brethren, I
say ~~unto you~~ would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul;
for behold, I have spoken unto you plain, that ye cannot err, or have spoken ac-
cording to the commandments of God, for I am called to speak after this manner,
according to the Holy Order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded
to stand & testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our Fa-
thers concerning the things which ^{are} to come, & this is not all, do ye suppose that
I know ~~not~~ of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you, that I do know
that these things, whereof I have spoken, are true, & how do ye suppose that I know
of their surety? Behold, I say unto you, they are made known unto me by the
Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted & prayed many days, that I might know
these things of myself, & now I do know of myself that they are true, for the Lord God
hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit, & this is the spirit of revela-
tion which is in me; moreover, I say unto you, that as it has thus been revealed unto me
that the words which have been spoken by our Fathers, are true, even so according
to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the
spirit of God, I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you
concerning that which is to come, is true, & I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ

183 shall come ye, the son of the only begotten of the Father full of grace &
mercy and truth & behold it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the
world ye the sins of every man ^{who} still fastly believeth on his name & now say
unto you that this is the order of the which I am called, ye, to ^{preach} ~~preach~~ unto my
beloved Brethren ye & everyone that dwelleth in the land ye to preach
unto all, both old to young, both bond and free, ye & say unto you, the ag-
ed & also the ~~young~~ middle aged & the rising Generation, ye to cry unto them that
they must repent & be born again, ye & thus saith the spirit, & first all the
ends of the earth for the Kingdom of Heaven is soon at hand, ye, the Son of God
cometh in his glory, in his might, magistry, power & dominion, ye, my beloved
Brethren say unto you that the spirit saith, Behold the glory of the King
of all the earth, & also the King of Heaven shall very soon shine forth among all
the children of men, & also the spirit saith unto me, ye, crieth unto me with a
mighty voice, saying go forth & say unto this people, repent, for except ye repent
ye can in no wise inherit the Kingdom of Heaven, & again I say unto you the
spirit saith, behold, the axe is laid at the root of the tree, therefore every tree
that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down & cast into the fire, ye
a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unconquenchable fire, Behold, & remem-
ber, the holy one hath spoken it, & now my beloved Brethren, I say unto you,
can ye withstand these sayings, ye, can ye lay aside these things, & trample the
holy one under your feet, ye, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your heart, ye,
will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel, & setting your heart upon
the vain things of the world, upon your riches, ye, will ye persist in supposing
that ye are better one than another, ye, will ye persist in the persecutions
of your Brethren who humble themselves, & do walk after the holy order
of God, wherewith they have been brought into this Church, having been sanctified
by the holy Spirit, & they do bring forth works which ^{are} meet for repentance,
ye, will ye persist in turning your backs upon the poor, & the ⁱⁿjudicious, & withholding your
substance from them, & finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto
you that these are ^{they} which shall be hewn down & cast into the fire, except they
speedily repent, & now say unto you all ye that are desirous to follow the voice
of the good shepherd come ye out from the wicked and be ye separate and touch
not their unclean things, and their names shall be blotted out that the names
of the wicked shall not be remembered among the names of the righteous that the
word of God may be fulfilled, which saith the names of the wicked shall not be ^{shall}
remembered with the names of my people for the names of the righteous ^{shall}
be written in the Book of life and ^{unto} them will I grant an inheritance at my

184 right hand & now my Brethren what have ye to say against this I say unto
you if ye speak against it it matters not for the word of God must be fulfilled
for what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch
over them that the wolves enter not and devour his flock and behold if
a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out yea at the last if he
can he will destroy him and now I say unto you that the good shepherd
doth call after you & if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold
and ye are his sheep and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf
to enter among you that ye may not be destroyed, and now I Alma do com-
mand you in the language of him who hath commanded me that ye observe to
do the words which I have spoken unto you I speak by way of Command unto you
that belong to the Church & I do unto those ^{which} do not belong to the Church ~~and~~
~~that I have said by way of invitation saying come~~
and be baptised unto repentance that ye also may be partakers of the ^{fruit} of the
tree of life —

Chapter 4th

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speak-
ing unto the people of the Church which was established in the City of Zarahem-
la he ordained Priests & elders by laying on his hands according to the
order of God & preside and watch over the Church & it came to pass that whosoever
did not belong to the Church who repented of ^{their sins} ~~their sins~~ ^{and} were baptised unto rep-
entance and ~~had~~ received into the Church & it also came to pass that whosoever
did belong to the Church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble
themselves before God ^{by} ~~and~~ were lifted up in the pride of their hea-
rts the same were rejected and their names were blotted out that their names
were not numbered among those of the righteous & thus they began to establish
the order of the Church in the City of Zarahemla now would that ye should
understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that ~~no man~~ ^{no man} was depriv-
ed of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God
nevertheless the Children of God were commanded that they should ga-
ther themselves together oft & join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of
the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God & now it came to pass
that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them & ^{from}
from the Church which was in the City of Zarahemla & went over upon the east
of the river Sidon into the valley of Gideon there having been a City built
which was called the City of Gideon which was in the valley that was
called Gideon being called after the man which ^{was} slain by the hand
of ~~the~~ ^{the} Lord with the sword and Alma went and began to declare the word

And now I say unto this people, saying, repent ye and prepare the way of the Lord and walk in his paths which are strait, for behold the Kingdom of Heaven is at hand and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the Earth and behold he shall be born of Mary at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers she being a virgin a precious and chosen vessel who shall be over shadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost and bring forth a son yea even the Son of God and he shall go forth suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people and he will take upon him Death that he may loose the bands of Death which bind his people, and he will take upon him their infirmities that his bowels may be filled with mercy according to the flesh that he may know according to the flesh how to suffer his people according to their infirmities, now the spirit knoweth all things nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance and now behold this is the testimony which is in me, now I say unto you that ye must repent, and, ~~and~~ be born again for the spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the Kingdom of Heaven, therefore come and be Baptized unto repentance that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God ^{who} ~~take~~ take away the sins of the world ^{who} ~~is~~ is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness; yea I say unto you come and far out and lay aside every sin which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, ye come and go forth and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of Baptism and whosoever doth this and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth the same will remember that I say unto him ye he will remember that I have said unto him he shall have eternal life according to the testimony of the holy spirit which testifieth in me, and now my beloved Brethren as you believe these things, behold I say unto you yea I know that you believe them and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestations of the spirit which is in me and now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea concerning the things which I have spoken great is my joy for as I said unto you from the beginning that I had much desire that ye ^{had} ~~was~~ not in the state of dilemma like your Brethren even as I have found that my desires have been gratified for I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the Kingdom of God yea I perceive that ye are making his paths strait I perceive that it hath been made known unto you

1870. The testimony of his word that he cannot walk in crooked paths neither doth he
vary from that which he ~~saith~~ hath said neither hath he a shadow of turning
from the right to the left or from that which is right to that which is wrong therefore
his course is one eternal round ^{and} he doth not dwell in unrighteousness neither can filthiness
or anything which is unclean be received into the Kingdom of God therefore I say unto
you the time shall come yea and it shall be at the last day that he ~~shall~~ ^{who} is filthy
shall remain in his filthiness and now my beloved Brethren I have said these
things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God that ye
may walk blameless before him that ye may walk after the holy ^{and} of God after
which ye have been received and now I would that ye should be humble
and be submissive and gentle easy to be entreated full of patience and longan-
-suffering being temperate in all things, being diligent in keeping the comman-
-ments of God at all times asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need both
spiritual and temporal always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever
things ye do receive and see that ye have faith hope and charity and then ye will al-
ways abound in good works, and may the Lord bless you and keep your garments
spotless that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham Isaac and Jacob
and the holy Prophets ~~which~~ ^{who} have been ever since the world began having
your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless in the Kingdom of
Heaven to go no more out, and now my beloved Brethren I have spoken these
^{words} unto you according to the spirit which testifieth in me and my soul doth exee-
-dingly rejoice because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have giv-
-en unto my word, and now may the peace of God rest upon you and upon
your houses and lands and upon your flocks and herds ^{and} all that you possess
your women and your children according to your ^{and} good works from this
time ~~thence~~ forth ~~and~~ forever ~~with~~ ^{amen} I have spoken Amen

Chapter 6th

And it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon after hav-
-ing taught the people of Gideon many things which can not be written having
established the order of the Church according as he had before done in the land of
Zarahemla yea he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself
from the labors which he had performed, and thus ended the ninth year of
the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, and it came to pass in the
commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of
Nephi that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land
of Melek on the west of the river Sidon on the west by the borders of the wilderness
and he began to ~~preach~~ teach the people in the land of Melek according

188 to the holy order of God by which he had been called and he began to teach
the people throughout all the land of Mulek and it came to pass that the
people came to him ^{throughout} all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness
side and it came to pass that they were baptized throughout all the land
so that when he had finished his work at Mulek he departed thence &
traveled three days journey on the north of the land of Mulek and he
came to a city which was called Ammonihah, now it was the custom of
the people of Nephite to call their Lands and their Cities and their villages
yea even all their small villages after the name of him who first
possessed them and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah and it
came to pass that when Alma had come to the City of Ammonihah
he began to preach the word of God unto them, now Satan had got great
hold upon the hearts of the people of the City of Ammonihah there-
fore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma nevertheless Alma
labored much in the spirit wrestling with God in mighty prayer
that he would pour out his spirit upon the people ^{who were} in the City that
he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance neverthe-
less they hardened their hearts saying unto him behold we know that
thou art Alma and we know that thou art high Priest over the Church
which thou hast established in many parts of the land accord-
ing to your tradition and we are not of thy Church ~~and we do not believe in such foolish traditions and~~
~~and we do not believe in such foolish traditions and~~
and we do not believe in such foolish traditions and
now we know that because we are not of thy Church we know that thou ha-
st no power over us and thou hast delivered up the judgment seat unto
Nephihah therefore thou art not the Chief judge over us now when the
people had said this and had withstood all his words and reviled him &
spit upon him and ^{charged} that he should be cast out of their City and he departed thence
and took his journey towards the City which was called Iared and it came to pass
that while he was journeying his heart being weighed down with sorrow walking through
much tribulation and anguish of soul because of the wickedness of the people ^{who were}
~~in the City of Ammonihah~~ it came to pass that while Alma was thus weighed
down with sorrows the angel of the Lord appeared unto him saying Blessed
art thou Alma therefore lift up thy head and rejoice for thou hast great cause to
rejoice for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the
time which thou receivedst thy first message from him behold I am he that deli-
vered it unto thee and I hold I am sent to command thee that thou return to the City
of Ammonihah and preach again unto the people of the City yea preach unto them yea

184 I say unto them except they repent the Lord God will destroy them for behold they are steady
at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy People for thus saith the Lord, which
is contrary to the statutes and judgments and commandments which he hath given unto
his People, now it came to pass that after it was had received his message from the an-
gel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Munnahab, and it came to pass
that he entered the City by another way yea by the way which was on the south of
the City Ammonihab, and it came to pass that as he entered the City he was an hunger-
ed and he said to himself will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat
and the man said unto him I am a Gephrite and I know that thou art a holy
Prophet of God for thou art the man ^{whom} an angel said in a vision thou
shalt receive therefore go with me into my house and I will impart unto
thee of my ^{food} ~~power~~ and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house
and it came to pass that the man received him into his house and the man was
called Amulek and he brought bread and meat and sat before Alma and it
came to pass that Alma ate to meat ^{and} was filled and he blessed Amulek and his
house and he gave thanks unto God. And after he had eat and was filled he said
unto Amulek I am Alma and am the high Priest over the Church of God through-
out the land, and behold I have been called to preach the word of God among all
this People according to the spirit of revelation and Prophecy, and was in the land
and they would not receive me but they cast me out and I was about to set my
back towards this land forever, but behold I have been commanded that I should
turn again and prophesy unto this People yea and to testify against them
concerning their iniquities & now Amulek because thou hast fed me and taken me in
thou art blessed for I was an hungered for I had fasted many days, and it came to
pass that Alma tarried many days with Amulek before he began to preach
unto the people, and it came to pass that the people did wax more & more in
their iniquities, and the word came to Alma saying go and also say unto my ser-
vant, Amulek go forth & prophesy unto this People saying repent ye for thus saith
the Lord except ye repent I will visit this People in mine anger yea & I will not
turn my fierce anger away and it came to pass that Alma went forth and also
Amulek among the people to declare the words of God unto them and they
were filled with the holy ghost and they had power given unto them in so much that they
could not be compassed in dungeons neither were it possible that any man could lay
hands upon them the less they did not wear their power until they were bound in bonds
and cast into prison now this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in
them and it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prop-
hesy unto the people according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given
them —

The words of Alma and also the words of Amulek which ^{were} declared unto the
people ^{while} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ the land of Zimmoniah and also they are cast into prison and deli-
-vered by the miraculous power of God which was in them according to the power of
Alma. — And again Alma having been commanded of God that he should take
-time to go forth, I went again unto this people or the people ^{who were} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ
in the city of Zimmoniah ~~and~~ it came to pass and began to preach unto them and
-I began to contend with me saying, who art thou suppose ye that we shall
believe the testimony of one man although he should preach unto us that the
earth should pass away now they understood not the words which they spake
for they knew not that the earth should pass away and they ^{also} ~~also~~ ^{also} will not
believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be des-
-troyed in one day now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works for
they were a hard hearted & a stiff necked people & they ^{say} ~~say~~ ^{say} who is God that
sendeth no more authority than one man among this people to declare unto
-them the truth of such great and marvelous things and they stood forth to lay
their hands on me but behold they did not and I stood with boldness to declare unto
-them yea I did boldly testify unto them saying Behold O ye wicked and hypocrite
-ation how have ye forgotten the traditions of your fathers yea how soon ye have forgotten
the commandments of God do ye not remember that our Father Lehi was brought
out of Jerusalem by the hand of God do ye not remember that they were all led
by him through the wilderness and have ye forgotten so soon how many times
-as he delivered our brethren out of the hands of their enemies and preserved
them from being destroyed even by the hands of their own Brethren yea
if it had not been for his matchless power and his mercy and his long suffering
towards us we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the
earth long before this, yea of this time, and perhaps been consigned to a state
of endless misery and woe, Behold now I say unto you that he commandeth
you to repent and except ye repent ye cannot in no wise inherit the King-
-dom of God but Behold this is not all he hath commanded you to repent or
he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth yea he will
visit you in his anger and in his fierce anger, he will not turn away behold
do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi saying that in as
much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land
and again it is said that in as much as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall
-all be cut off from the ~~face~~ ^{presence} of the Lord now I would that ye should
remember that in as much as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments

17th ye do truly have been cut off from the presence of the Lord now we see that the word of the Lord hath been verified in this thing and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence from the beginning of their transgressions in the Land nevertheless I say unto you that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you if ye remain in your sins yea and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you except ye repent for there are many promises which ^{are} ~~are~~ extended to the Lamanites for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that ^{cause} ~~cause~~ them to remain in their state of ignorance therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land and at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word and to know of the incorectness of the traditions of their fathers and many of them will be saved for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name, but Behold I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not and ye shall be visited with utter destruction and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord for he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities to destroy his people, ^{For} ~~For~~ ye may he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all this people ^{whp. to call} ~~whp. to call~~ in the people of the night if it were possible that they could fall into sin and transgressions after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God yea after having been such a highly favoured people of the Lord yea after having been favored above every other nation kindred tongue or people after having had all things made known unto them according to their desires and their faith and prayers of that which has been and which is and which is to come having been visited by the spirit of God having conversed with angels and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord and having the spirit of prophecy and the spirit of revelation and also many gifts the gift of speaking with tongues and the gift of preaching and the gift of the holy Ghost and the gift of translation yea and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem by the hand of the Lord having been saved from famine and from sicknesses and all manner of diseases of every kind and they having been waxed strong in battle that they might not be destroyed having been brought out of bondage time after time and having been kept and preserved until now and they have been prospered until they excelled in all manner of things, and now behold I say unto you that if this people who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have I say unto you that if this be the case that if they should fall into transgressions that it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them, for behold the promise

of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites but they are not unto you if ye transgress for
the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed that if ye will rebel against
him the ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth and now for this
cause that ye may not be destroyed the Lord hath sent his angel to visit many
of his people declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto
this people saying repent ye repent ye for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand
and and not many days hence the son of God shall come in his glory and his gl-
-ory shall be the glory of the only begotten of the Father full of grace equity
and truth full of patience mercy and long suffering quick to hear the
cries of his people and to answer their prayers and behold he cometh
to redeem those who will be Baptized unto repentance through faith on
his name. ^{therefore} prepare ye the way of the Lord for the time is at hand
that ^{all men} every man shall reap a reward ^{for} of ^{his} works according ^{to} that which they
have been if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their
souls according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ and if they have been
evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls according to the power and
captivation of the Devil now Behold this is the voice of the Angel crying unto the
people and now my beloved Brethren for ye are my Brethren and ye ha-
-ve ought to be beloved and ye haught to bring forth works which is meet
for repentance seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against
the word of God and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people, now it
came to pass that is when Nehum had spoken these words Behold the peo-
-ple were wroth with me because I said unto them that they was a hard
hearted and a stiff-necked People and also because I said unto them that they
were a lost and a fallen people they was angry with me and sought to lay
their hands upon ^{me} that they might cast me into prison but it came to pass that
the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time
cast me into prison and it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth
and began to speak unto them also and now the words of Amulek are not all
written nevertheless a part of his words are written in this Book — [1st. et.]

Chapter 8th. Now these are the words which Amulek
spoke unto the people ^{who were} in the land of Ammoniah, saying I am Am-
ulek, I am the son of Gidarah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a
descendant of Aminadi and it was that same Aminadi ^{who} inter-
-preted the writing which was upon the wall of the Temple, which was written
by the finger of God and Aminadi was a descendant of Kefi, who was the son of Lhi,
who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son

18 If sought to destroy them, ^{who} were Lawyers, ^{which} were kind or appointed by
the people to administer the law at their times of trial; or at the trials of the on-
es of the people before the Judges, now these Lawyers were learned in all the arts
and cunning of the people, and this was to enable them that they might be skill-
ful in their profession. And it came to pass that they began to question-
Amulek; that thereby they might make him cross his words or contradict
the words which he should speak, now they knew not that Amulek could
know of their design, but it came to pass as they began to question him, he
perceived their thoughts and he said unto them, O ye wicked and per-
verse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites for ye are laying the foun-
dations of the devil, ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy son
of God, ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring
down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this peo-
ple, ye will die. Mosiah say who was our last King, when he was about to
deliver up the Kingdom having no one to confer it upon, causing that this
people should be governed by their own
voices, ye will say that if the time should come that the voice of this
people should cause iniquity, that if the time should come that this people sh-
ould fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction, and now I say unto you
that will do, the Lord Judge of your iniquities will do, he cry unto this people by
the voice of his angels, Depart ye, depart ye from the Kingdom of heaven, is at hand
ye will do, he cry by the voice of his angels, that I will come down among my peo-
ple with equity and justice in my hands, and I say unto you, that if it were
not for the prayers of the righteous, ^{who} are now in the land, that ye would even
now be visited with utter destruction, yet it would not be by flood, as were the peo-
ple in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the on-
e, but it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared, now therefore if ye
will cast out the righteous from among you, then will not the Lord stay his
hand, but in his fierce anger he will come out against you, then ye shall be on-
stricken by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword, and the time is soon at
hand, except ye repent. And now it came to pass that the people were more an-
gry with Amulek, and they cried out saying, This man doth revile against
our laws, which are just, and our wise Lawyers, ^{whom} we have selected, but
Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, say-
ing, O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold
upon your hearts, why will ye yield yourselves unto him, that he may have power

195 now you to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand words which are spoken
according to their truth, for Behold I have testified against your law, ye are not understanding
ye say that I have spoken against your law, but I have not, but I have spoken in fa-
vor of your law to your condemnation and now Behold I say unto you that the
foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrig-
hteousness of your lawyers and your judges and now it came to pass that
when I should have spoken these words, the people cried out against him
now we know that this man is a child of the devil for he hath lifted up
us for he hath spoken against our Law and now it is written that he hath not spo-
ken it, and again he hath reviled against our Lawyers and our judges, &c. and it came
to pass that the Lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these
things against him, and it came to pass that there was one among them whose name
was Lezzerus, now he ~~was the first among them~~ ^{was the first among them} ~~to speak~~ ^{to speak} and thus he being one
of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people, now
the object of these Lawyers ^{was} to get gain, and they get gain according to their
employment, now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man ^{who} was a judge of the
Law, or ^{the} ~~was~~ appointed to be a judge, should receive wages according to the time
which they labored to judge those ^{who} were brought before them to be judged, now
if a man over the another said he would not pay that which he did owe, he was com-
pelled to go to the judge and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the
man should be brought before him, and ^{he} judged the man according to the law
and the ^{judges} ~~officers~~ which ^{was} brought against him, and thus the man is compelled to pay
that which he owes, for he is judged, he is cast out from among the people as a th-
ief and a robber, and the judge receiveth for his wages according to his time, a ^{semine} ~~sum~~ of
Gold for a day, or a semine of silver, which is equal to a semine of Gold, and this is
according to the Law which was given, now these are the names of the different pieces
of their Gold, and of their silver according to their value, and the names are given
by the Septuagint, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews, ^{who} ~~which~~ were
at Jerusalem, neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews, but they at-
tended their reckoning and their measure according to the minds and the circumsta-
nces of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been
established by King Mosiah, now the reckoning is thus, a semine of Gold, a denar of Gold,
a semine of Gold, and a limnah of Gold, a semine of silver, an ammer of silver, an eger
-sem of silver, and an ^{ente} ~~ente~~ of silver, a semine of silver was equal to a semine of Gold,
it is either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain,
now the amount of a semine of Gold, was twice the value of a semine, and a semine of Gold was

[illegible]

18. And he said because I said he shall not save his people in their sins, and say unto you again, that he cannot save them in their sins, or cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the Kingdom of Heaven, therefore how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the Kingdom of Heaven? therefore ye cannot be saved in your sins. Now Lezrom saith again unto him, is ^{the} ~~the~~ God the very eternal Father, and Amulek said unto him, yea, it is the very Eternal Father of Heaven and earth, and all things which in them is, it is the beginning and the end, the first and the last, and he shall come into the world to redeem his people, and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name, and then are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else, therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death. For behold, the day cometh, that all shall rise from the dead, and stand before God, and be judged according to ^{their} ~~his~~ works. Now there is a death which is called a temporal death, and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death, the spirit and the body shall be reunited again, in its perfect form, both limb and joint shall be restored to its perfect frame, even as we now are at this time, and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt, now this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous, and there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost, but all things shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, ~~and~~ ^{and} in the body, and shall be brought to be ^{arranged} ~~judged~~ before the bar of Christ, the son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which ^{are} ~~one~~ Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil. Now behold, I have spoken ^{unto} ~~of~~ you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you, that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death, unto life, that they can die no more, their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided, thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption. Now when Amulek had finished these words, the people began again to be astonished, and also Lezrom began to tremble, and thus ended the words of Amulek, and this is all that I have written.

Chapter 9. Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Lezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving, to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble, and saw a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, and to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done, now the words that Alma spake unto Lezrom ^{were} ~~was~~ heard by the people round about, for the

14th multitude was great and he spake on this wise now Luzron saying that there must be
taken in thy living and craftiness for thou hast not lived unto men only but thou hast
lived unto God for he knows all thy thoughts and thou dost that thy thought have
made known unto us by his spirit and thou dost that we know that thy plan was
a very subtle plan as is the subtilty of the Devil for to lie and to deceive this people
that thou mightest set them against us to revile us and to cast us out now this was
a plan of thine adversary and he hath exercised his power in thee now should
that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all and behold I say
unto you all that this was a name of the adversary which he had laid to catch
this people that he might bring you into subjection unto him that he might
encircle you about with his chains that he might chain you down to everlasting
destruction according to the power of his captivity Now when Alma had
spoken these words Luzron began to tremble more exceedingly for he was convinc-
ed more and more of the power of God and he was also convinced that Alma and
Amulek had a knowledge of him for he was convinced that they knew the things
which he had said for power was given unto them that they might
know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy Luzron began to inquire
of them diligently that he might know more concerning the Kingdom of God and
he said unto Alma what does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the
resurrection of the dead that all shall rise from the dead both the just and the
unjust and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works and now
Alma began to expound these things unto him saying it is given unto many to
know the mysteries of God nevertheless they are laid under a strict command
that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he
willeth to grant unto the children of men according to the heed and diligence which
they give unto him therefore he that will harden his heart the same receiveth the less
portion of the word and he that will not harden his heart to him is given the greater
portion of the word until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until they know
them in full and he that will harden his heart to them is given the lesser por-
tion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries and then they are
in the captivity of the Devil and led by the chains of Hell and whither he will
down to destruction now this is what is meant by the chains of Hell and Amulek
hath spoken plainly concerning death and being raised from this mo-
rality to a state of immortality and being brought before the bar of God to
be judged according to their works then if our hearts have been hardened you if
we have hardened our hearts against the word in so much that it hath not
been found in us then will our state be awful for then we shall be condemned
for our words will condemn us you all our work will condemn us we shall
not be found spotless and our thoughts will also condemn us and in this awful
state we shall not ~~be able~~ look up to our God and would faine be glad if we could
command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his pres-
ence but this cannot be we must come forth and stand before him in his glory

11. And in his power and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledged ~~that~~
everlasting, declare that all his judgments are just, that he is just in all his works
and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he hath all power to
save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for
repentance, and now behold I say unto you, there cometh a death, even a second
death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in
his sins, as to the temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea,
he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness; then is the time
when their torment shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames
ascendeth up forever and ever, and then is the time that they shall be chained
down for an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of
Satan, having subjugated him according to his will; then I say unto you, they
shall be as though there had been no redemption made for they cannot be re-
deemed according to God's justice; and they cannot see, seeing there is no more
corruption, and it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking
these words the people began to be more astonished; but there was one individual
who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him, What is
this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be hanged from
this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die? What does this scripture
mean which saith, that God placed there him, and a flaming sword on the
East of the Garden of Eden, lest our first Parents should enter and partake of the
fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? and thus we see that there was no possi-
ble chance that they should live forever. Now Alma saith unto him, this
is the thing which I was about to say, I claim now we see that Adam did fall
by partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we
see that by his fall ~~that~~ all mankind became a lost and a fallen people
and now behold I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to
have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life, at that time that there would
have been no death and the word would have been void, making God
a liar for he said if thou eat ~~that~~ of that thou shalt surely die; and we see that
death comes upon mankind yea, the death which has been spoken of by
Amalek which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space
granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became
a probationary state, a time to prepare to meet God, a time to prepare
for that endless state which has been spoken of by us which is after the
resurrection of the dead; now if it had not been for the plan of redemption
which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been
no resurrection of the dead, but there was a plan of redemption laid, which
shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been
spoken, and now behold if it were possible that our first Parents could
have entered and partaken of the tree of life, they would have been forever mi-
serable, having no preparatory state, and thus the plan of redemption would

Let have been thus visited and the word of God would have been void taking man-
dict but behold to hold it was not so but it was appointed unto man that they
must die and after death they must come to judgment even that same judgment
of which we have spoken which is the end and after God had appointed that these
^{should} come unto man behold thus we saw that it was expedient that man sh-
ould know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them therefore he sent
angels to converse with them ^{who} caused men to behold ^{his} glory and they began
from that time forth to call on his name therefore God conversed with the men and
made known unto them the plan of redemption which had been prepared
from the foundation of the world and this he made known unto them acco-
rding to their faith and repentance and their holy works wherefore he gave com-
mandments unto men they having first transgressed the first commandments
as to things which were temporal and becoming as Gods knowing good from evil
placing themselves in a state to act or being placed in a state to act accord-
ing to their wills and pleasures whether to do ~~good~~ evil or to do good therefore
God gave unto them commandments after having made known unto them the plan
of redemption that they should not do evil the penalty thereof being a second dea-
th which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness
for on such the plan of redemption could have no power for the works of justice could
not be destroyed according to the supreme goodness of God but God did call on men in the
name of his son this being the plan of redemption which was laid saying if ye will
repent and harden not your hearts then will I have mercy upon you through mine
only begotten son therefore whosoever repenteth and hardeneth not his heart
he shall have a claim on mercy through mine only begotten son unto a remission of
^{his} sins and then shall enter into my rest and ~~if~~ ^{he} ~~hardens~~ ^{he} will harden his heart and
will do iniquity behold I swear in my wrath that ~~they~~ ^{he} shall not enter into my rest
and now my brethren behold I say unto you that if ye will harden your hear-
ts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord therefore your iniquity provoketh him
that he sends the down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation ye according
to his word in the last provocation as well as in the first to the everlasting destruc-
tion of your souls therefore according to his word ^{with} the last death as well as the
first and now my brethren ^{and} we know these things and they are true let us re-
pent and ~~hardens~~ ^{harden} not our hearts that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull
down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he hath given
unto us but let us enter into the rest of God which is prepared according to his wo-
rd and again my Brethren would I give your minds forward to the time which the
Lord God gave these commandments unto his children and I would that ye shou-
ld remember that the Lord God ordained Priests after his holy order ^{which} was
after the order of his Son to teach these things unto the people and those Priests

All were ordained after the order of his Son in a manner that there by the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption and this is the manner after which they were ordained being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the fore knowledge of God on account of their exceeding faith and good works in the first place being left to choose good or evil therefore they having chosen good exercising saving faith they are called with a holy calling yea with that holy calling which was prepared with and according to a preparatory redemption for such and thus they having been called to this holy calling on account of their faith while others would reject the spirit of God on account of the hard ness of their hearts and blindness of their minds while it had not been for this they might ~~not~~ ^{had} great privilege as their Brethren even in the first place they were on the same standing with their Brethren thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts being in through the atonement of the only begotten Son ~~which~~ ^{who} was prepared and thus being called by this holy calling and ordained unto the high Priesthood of the holy order of God to teach his commandments unto the children of men that they also might enter into his rest this high Priesthood being after the order of his Son which order was from the foundation of the world or in other words being without beginning of days or end of years being prepared from eternity to all eternity according to his fore knowledge of all things now they were ordained after this manner being called with a holy calling and ordained with a holy ordinance and taking upon themselves the high Priesthood of the holy order which calling and ordinance and high Priesthood is without beginning or end thus they become high Priests in the order of the Son the only begotten of the Father ^{who} is without beginning of days or end of years ~~which~~ ^{who} is full of grace equity and truth and thus it is Amen. — Chapter 10th

And as I said concerning the holy order or this high Priesthood there were many ^{who} were ordained and became high Priests of God and it was on account of the exceeding faith and repentance and their righteousness in God they choosing to repent and seek righteousness rather than to perish therefore they were called after this holy order and were sanctified and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb now they after being committed by the Holy Ghost having their garments more white being more and spotless before God could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence and there were many ^{and} exercising great many ^{who} were made here and entered into the rest of the Lord their God, and now my Brethren I would that ye should humble yourselves before God and bring forth much more for repentance that ye may also enter into that rest yea

And finally yourselves saw as the people in the days of Melchizedek who was
also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken of also
took upon him the high Priesthood, and it was this same Mel-
chizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes and even our father Abraham
had tithes of one tenth, but of all he possessed, notwithstanding these ordinances were
given after this manner that thereby the people might look forward on
the Son of God it being a type of his order or it being his order and this that
they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins that they might
descend into the rest of the world, Now this Melchizedek was a King
over the land of Salem and his people had waxed strong in iniquity
and abominations, yea they had all gone astray they were full of all
manner wickedness but Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith
and received the office of the high Priesthood according to the holy order
of God, did preach repentance unto his people, and behold they did repent
and Melchizedek did establish peace in the Land in his days, therefore
he was called the Prince of Peace, for he was the King of Salem and
he did reign under his father, now there were many before him and
also there were many afterwards but none were greater therefore of him
they have more particularly made mention, now I need not rehearse the
matter what I have said may suffice, behold the scriptures are before
you if ye will ~~read~~ ^{write} them it shall be to your own destruction, Now
as it came to pass that when I had said these words unto them
he stretched forth his hand unto them & said with a mighty voice
saying now is the time to repent for the day of salvation draweth nigh
and the voice of the Lord by the mouth of angels hath declared it
and all nations and all do declare it that they may have glad tidings
of great joy, he hath said these glad tidings among all his people & he
given to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, wherefore
they have come unto us & they are made known unto us in plain terms that
we may understand that we can not sin, & this because of our being re-
surrected in a change of land, therefore we are thus highly favoured, for we
have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard, for
behold angels are declaring unto us, amongst this time in our land & this
is for the purpose of purifying the hearts of the children of men for to re-
ceive him and at the time of his coming in his glory, now we only wait
to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels of his com-
ing, for the time cometh we know not how soon would to God that
it might be in my day, but let it be soon or later in it shall be so.
482

and it shall be ^{made} known unto just & holy men by the mouth of angels ²⁸
at the time of his coming that the words of our fathers ~~which~~ ^{which} he fulfilled
according to that which they have spoken concerning him which was
according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them & now my brethren
I wish from the inmost part of my heart & with great anxiety
earnest pain that ye would hearken unto my words & cast off your
sins & not procrastinate the day of your repentance but that ye would
humble yourselves before the Lord & call on his holy name & watch
& pray continually that ye may not be tempted above that which ye
can bear & thus be led by the holy spirit becoming humble meek
submissive patient full of love & all long suffering having faith
in the Lord having a hope that ye shall receive it in life having the
love of God always in your hearts that ye may be lifted up at the last
day & enter in to his rest & may the Lord grant unto you repentance that
ye may not bring down his wrath upon you that ye may not be bound
down by the chains of hell that ye may not suffer the second death
& it came to pass that Alma spake many more words unto the people
which are not written in this book & ~~he came to forth~~ ^{there} he had made an
end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words & they
went to repent & to search the scriptures but the more part of them were desirous
that they might destroy Alma & Amulek for they were angry with them
because of the plainness of his words unto ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~people~~ ^{people} & they also said that ~~the~~
~~which~~ had lied unto them & had reviled against them law & also against
their campers & judges & they were also angry with Alma & Amulek
because they had testified plainly against their iniquities they
sought to take them away privately but it came to pass that they did not
but they took them & bound them with strong cords & took them before
the chief judge of the land & the people went forth to witness against them
saying that they had reviled against the law & their campers & judges of
the land & also all the people that were in the land & also testified that
there was but one God & that he should send his Son among the people
but he should not save them & many such things did the people testify
against Alma & Amulek & ~~it came to pass that it~~ ^{now they} was done before the chief

judges of the land & it came to pass that he was astonished
at the words which had been spoken & he also knew concerning the blindness
of the minds which he had caused among the people by his being wroth
to his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt
upon he began ~~to~~ be distressed about by the pains of hell & it came to pass
that he began to cry unto the people saying he held I am guilty & therefore
and yetless he said God & ~~it came to pass that~~ he began to bleed for himself
from that time forth but they reviled him saying art thou also polluted
with the devil & it came to pass that they spit upon him & cast him out
from among them & also all those who believed in the words which had
been spoken by Alma & Amulek & they cast them out & sent men to cast
stones at them & they brought their wives & children together & whosoever
had believed on had been taught to believe in the word of God they
campa that they should be cast into the fire & they also brought forth
the records which contained the holy scriptures & cast them into the fire also
that they might be burned & it came to pass that they looked upon
Amulek & carried them forth to the place of martyrdom that they might witness
the destruction of those ^{who} were consumed by fire & it came to pass that when
Amulek saw the pains of the women & children ^{who} were consuming in
the fire he was also pained & he said unto Alma how can we witness this
law we've seen therefore let us stretch forth our hands & receive the power of
God which is in us & save them from the flames but Alma said unto him the
spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand for he
hold the Lord accursed them upon themselves in glory & he doth suffer that
they may do this thing in that the people may do their thing unto their accor-
ding to the hardness of their hearts that the judgments which he shall en-
crease upon them in his wrath may be put to the blood of the innocent shall
stand as a witness against them yea & cry mightily against them at the last day
now I mean saith unto Alma behold they say they will burn us also &
Alma said he it according to the will of God Lord but behold our word
is not finished therefore they burn us not now it came to pass that when
the bodies of those ^{who} had been cast into the fire were consumed &
also the records which were cast in with them the chief judge of the land
came & stood before Alma & Amulek as they were bound & he smote
them with his hand upon their cheeks & said unto them often

And the Lord had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma & Amulek
& they arose & stood upon their feet & Alma cried saying how long
shall we suffer these great afflictions O Lord O Lord give us strength
saying to our faith which is in Christ even unto deliverance & they
broke the cords with which they were bound & when the people saw
this they began to flee for the fear of destruction had come upon them
& it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth
& did not obtain the entrance of the prison & the earth shook mightily
& the walls of the prison were rent in twain so that they fell to
the earth & the chief judge & the ^{by the} ~~campers~~ ^{who} & teachers ^{who} came to
Alma & Amulek were slain by the fall thereof & Alma & Amulek
came forth out of the prison & they were not hurt for the Lord
had directed unto them power according to their faith which was
in Christ & they starting came forth out of the prison & they were loosed
from their hands & the prison had fallen to the earth & every soul ^{who} ~~which~~ was
within the walls thereof were slain & Alma & Amulek were slain & they came
forth into the city now the people having heard a great noise came running to
gather by multitudes to know the cause of it & when they saw Alma & Amulek
coming forth out of the prison & the walls thereof had fallen to the earth the
quiere church with great fear & fled from the presence of Alma & Amulek even
as a goat fleeth with her young from lions & thus they fled from the
presence of Alma & Amulek & it came to pass that Alma & Amulek were com-
manded to depart out of the ^{city} ~~land~~ & they departed & came out even into the
land of Sidom & he held there they found all the people ^{who} ~~which~~ had dep-
arted out of the land & Amulek who had been cast out & stored be-
cause they believed in the words of Alma & they related unto them
that had related unto their wives & children & also concerning them-
selves & their families & their names & also how they were sick at Chidon
in a burning place which was caused by the great tribulations of
his mind on account of his wickedness for he supposed that Alma &
Amulek ^{were} ~~was~~ no more & he supposed that they had been slain by the
cause of his iniquity & that great sin & his many other sins did know

of his mind until it did become exceeding sore having no deliv^{er}ance
therefore he began to be consumed with a burning heat now when he
heard that Alma & Amulek ^{were} in the land of Sidom his heart began
to take courage & he sent a message immediately unto them desiring
them to come unto him & it came to pass that they went immediately
obeying the message which he had sent unto them & they went in unto
the house unto Geyzoni & they found him upon his bed sick being
very low with a burning fever & his mind also was exceeding sore be-
cause of his iniquities & when he saw them he stretched forth his hand
& besought them that they would heal him & it came to pass that they
came in unto him taking him by the hand believed that in the power
of Christ unto salvation & he answered & said ye believe all the won-
ders that thou hast taught & Alma saith if thou believest in the re-
demption of Christ thou canst be ^{healed} & he saith yea I believe according
to thy words & then Alma cried unto the Lord saying O Lord our God have merc-
y on this man & heal him according to his faith which is in Christ & it came
to pass when Alma had said these words ^{that} Geyzoni leaped upon his
bed & began to walk & this was done to the great astonishment of all
the people & the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Si-
dom & Alma baptised Geyzoni into the Lord & he began from that
time forth to preach unto the people & Alma established a church in
the land of Sidom & consecrated priests & teachers in the land to baptise
unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptised & it came to pass
that there were many who did flock in from all the regions round
about Sidom & were baptised but as to the people that were in the
land of Ammonihah they yet remained a hard hearted & a stiff necked
people & they repented not of their sins exercising all the power of evil
and & Amulek to the Lord for they were of the profession of the Lord
did not believe in the redemption of their sins & it came to pass that Alma
and Amulek having taken all his gold & his silver & his
precious things which ^{he had} in the land of Ammonihah for the word of God

& he being rejected by those which were over his friends & also by
his father & his kindred therefore after Alma having established the Church
at Sidon seeing a great Chastity seeing that the people were chastened as to
the pride of their hearts & began to humble themselves before God & began to
assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the
altar making & praying continually that they might be delivered from
Satan & from death & from destruction now as I said Alma having seen
all these things therefore he took Amulek & came over to the land of Zarahemla
& took him to his own house & did administer unto him in his tribula-
tions & strengthened him in the Lord & thus ended the twelfth year of the re-
ign of the judges over the people of Nephthi. Chapter 11.

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over
the people of Nephthi, on the fifth day of the second month there having been
much peace in the land of Zarahemla ^{that} having been no wars nor contentions
for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month
in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard ^{out} through the land & for
behind the armies of the Lamanites had come in on the wilderness side
into the borders of the land even into the city of Ammonihah & began to
slay the people & to destroy the city & now it came to pass before this
it could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land they
had destroyed the people ^{who} were in the city of Ammonihah & raise
some around the borders of Zarahemla & taking others captive into the wild-
erness. Now it came to pass that the Nephthies were desirous to obtain
those ^{who} had been carried away captive into the wilderness, therefore he
that had been appointed Chief Captain over the armies of the Nephthies,
& his name was Zoram & he had two sons, Lih & P who now Zoram
& his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the Church &
having heard that he had the spirit of Prophecy, therefore they went
to him & desired of him to know whether ~~the~~ the Lord would that
they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren who had
been taken captive by the Lamanites, & it came to pass that Alma en-
quired of the Lord concerning the matter & the Lord answered & said unto the
three behold the Lamanites will cross the River Sidon in the fourth

...and they went up beyond the borders of the land of Manti, & behold
they will be met them on the east of the river Sidon, & there the Lord will
will deliver unto thee thy brethren ^{who} have been taken captive by the
Lamanites, & it came to pass that Jacob & his sons crossed over the river
Sidon, with their armies, & marched away beyond the borders of Manti
into the ^{wide} wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon, &
they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, & the Lamanites were scattered & dri-
ven into the wilderness, & they took their brethren ^{who} had been taken
captive by the Lamanites, & there was not one soul of them ^{who} had been
lost, & these were taken captive, & they were brought by their brethren to possess
their own land, & thus ended the eleventh year of the Judges, the Lamanites
having been driven out of the land, & the people of ^{the} Monihah were destr-
oysed, & every living soul of the ^{the} Monihahites were destroyed, & also
their great city ^{which} they said God could not destroy because of its greatness,
but behold, in one day it was desolate, & their carcasses were mangle-
d by dogs & by wild beasts of the wilderness, nevertheless after many days
their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, & they were
covered with a shallow covering, & now so great was the scent thereof
that the people did not go in to possess the land of ^{the} Monihah for many
days, & it was called desolation of ^{the} Monihah, & they were of the profession of
^{the} Monihah, & their lands remained desolate, & it came to pass
that the Lamanites did not come again to war against the ^{the} Nephites, and
in the fourteenth year of the reign of the Judges over the people of ^{the} Nephites
thus for three years did the people of ^{the} Nephites have continual peace in all the
land, & ^{the} Alma & ^{the} Amulek went forth preaching repentance unto the
people in their temples & in their sanctuaries, & also in their synagogues, which
were built after the manner of the Jews, & as many as would hear their word,
unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons
continually, & thus did ^{the} Alma & ^{the} Amulek go forth, & also many more, who
had been chosen for the work to preach the word throughout all the
land, & the establishment of the Church became general, & it was that the Lord
in all the regions round about, among all the people of the Nephites, & there
was no inequality among them, for the Lord did pour out his spirit
on all the face of the land, for to purify the minds of the children of men

to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among
them at the time of his coming, that they might not be hardened against the
word, that they might not be unbelieving, & go on to destruction, but that they
might receive the word with joy, & as a branch be grafted into the true
vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God, now these
priests ^{who} did go forth among the people, did preach against all lie-
ings, & deceivings, & wranglings, & stripes, & malice & revilings, & stealing, robbing,
plundering, murdering, committing adultery, & all manner of lasciviousness,
saying that "all things ought not to be holding forth things which must
shaltly come, & holding forth the coming of the Son of God, & his coming to
death, & the resurrection of the dead, & many of the people did enquire con-
cerning the place where the Son of God should come, & they were taught that
he would appear unto them after his resurrection, & thus the people did
him with great joy & gladness, & now after the Church having been estab-
lished throughout all the land, having got the victory over the Devil, &
the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, & the Lord
pouring out his blessings upon the people, & thus ended the fourteenth year
of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. Chapter 11. v. 2
An account of the Sons of Mosiah, ~~who~~ reported their vision to the King-
dom, for the word of God to went up to the land of Nephi, to preach to the
Lamanites - their sufferings & deliverance, according to the record of Alma.
And now it came to pass, that as Alma was journeying from the land
of Judah, southward, in way to the land of Mani, he held to his astonishment
he met the Sons of Mosiah, ~~and~~ journeying towards the land of Zarahemla,
now these Sons of Mosiah were with Alma ^{at the time} when the angel first appeared unto
him, & Alma did again exceedingly to see his brethren, & what added
more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Land of the Living, & they had moved
strong in the knowledge of the truth, for they were men of a sound mind, & un-
derstanding, & they had sworned that they might know the will of God, but this is not all; they had given themselves to much pray-
er, & fasting, thus far they had the spirit of Robbery, & the spirit of revelation
in them, they taught, they taught with power & authority, even as with the

power & authority of God, & they had been teaching the word of God & it
in the space of fourteen years, among the Lamanites, having had much
success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, by the power
of their words, many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name
one & another, & thus it was, now these are the circumstances
which attended them in their journeying, for they had many afflictions,
they did suffer much, in ^{both} body & in mind, such as hunger, thirst, & fa-
tigue, & also much labour in the spirit, now these were their journeying
s, having taken leave of their father Moriah, in the first year of the
reign of the judges, having, entered the wilderness which their father was
desirous to confer upon them, & also this was the minds of the people,
nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, & took their
weapons, & their shields, & their bows, & their arrows, & their stings, & thus
they did, that they might provide food for the wild beasts, while in the wild-
erness, & thus they departed into the wilderness, with their rumble, with
which they had received, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word
unto the Lamanites, & it came to pass that they journeyed many days in
the wilderness, & they fasted much, & prayed much, that the Lord would
grant unto them a portion of his spirit to govern them, & abide with
them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God, to bring
if it were possible, their brethren the Lamanites to the knowledge of the
truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers,
which were not correct, & it came to pass that the Lord did visit them
with his spirit, & said unto them, be comforted, & they were comforted,
& the Lord said unto them also, go for ye among the Lamanites, my brethren,
& establish my word, yet ye shall be patient in long suffering,
& afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto ~~the people~~ ^{me}, & I will
make an instrument of thee in my hands, unto the salvation of many
souls, & it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Moriah, & also
those ~~who~~ ^{who} were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites,
to declare unto them the word, & it came to pass when they
had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separa-
ted themselves, & departed one from another, trusting in the Lord,
that they should meet again at the close of their journey, for they
supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken
& assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the

2nd word of God to a wild, & a hardened, & a ferocious people, a pe-
ple ^{who} ~~much~~ delighted in ~~the~~ murdering, the spoiling, & robbing, &
plundering things; their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold, or
silver, & precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by
murdering & plundering, that they might not labour for them with their
own hands; thus they were a very idolatrous & high-minded people, of whom did
neither idols, & the course of God had ~~fallen~~ upon them because of the
tradition of their fathers; notwithstanding, the promises of the Lord
were extended unto them, on the conditions of repentance; therefore
that was the cause for which the voice of Abinadi had undertaken the work
that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they mi-
ght bring them to know of the place of redemption; therefore they separated
themselves one from another, & went forth among them, every man along
according to the word & power of God, which was given unto him; now
Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did minister unto the
people; he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their
several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, & administe-
red unto them; he left his departure; & thus they took their several jour-
neys throughout the land; & Ammon went to the land of Ishmael,
the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, ^{who} ~~which~~ also became La-
manites; & as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took
him & bound him, as was their custom, to bind all the high priests ~~which~~ fell
into their hands, & carry them before the king; thus it was left to the pleas-
ure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into
prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will & pleasure; & the
as Ammon was carried before the king ^{when} ~~which~~ was over the land of Ishmael
& his name was Lamoni; & he was a descendant of Ishmael; & the king en-
quired of Ammon if it were his desire to dwell in the land among the
Lamanites, or among his people; & Ammon said unto him, Ye desire to dwell
all among this people for a time, ye say, & perhaps until the day of death, & it be-
cometh to pass that King Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, & caused that
his hands should be loosed; & he wanted that Ammon should take one of
his daughters to wife, but Ammon said unto him, Nay, but I will be
thy servant; therefore Ammon became a servant to King Lamoni; & it be-
cometh to pass that he was set among other servants, to watch the flocks
of Lamoni, according to the custom of the Lamanites; & it came to pass
that after he had been in the service of the King three days, ~~there~~
he was with the Lamanitish servants going forth with their flocks,

But he would deliver his Son out of their hands, neither did they know
any thing concerning the Lord, therefore they delighted in the destruction of their
brethren, for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the King, but when
he stood forth & began to cast stones at them with his sling, & with mighty
power he did sling stones amongst them, & thus he slew a certain number
of them, inasmuch that they began to be astonished at his power, nevertheless
they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, & they were
determined that he should fall, therefore seeing that they could not hit
him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him, but behold,
every man that lifted his club to smite him, he smote off their arms
with his sword, for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms
with the edge of his sword, inasmuch that they began to be astonished, &
began to flee before him, for they were not few in number, & he caused them
to flee by the strength of his arm, now some of them had fallen by the sling
but he slew none save it were their leaders, ^{with this sword} he smote off as many of
their arms as ^{were} lifted against him, & they were not a few, & when they
had driven them off, he returned, & they weakened their backs & re-
turned them to the forehead of the King, & then went in unto the King, bearing the arms
which had been smote off by the sword of Chumoni, & those who sought
to slay him, & they were carried in unto the King, for a testimony of the things
which they had done, & it came to pass that King Lamoni caused that his
servants should stand forth & testify to all the things which they had seen
concerning the matter, & when they had all testified to the things which
they had seen & had learned of the faithfulness of Chumoni in preserving
his flocks & also of his great power in contending against those who sought
to slay him he was astonished exceedingly & said surely this is more
than a man he hold it not that the great spirit ^{loft} doth send such
great punishments upon this people because of their iniquities, & they answer-
ed the King & said whether he be the great spirit or a man we know
not, but this ^{much} we do know that he cannot be slain by the ene-
mies of the King, neither can they slay the King, look when he is
with us because of his uprightness & great strength, therefore we know

[illegible]

And he ^{was} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{king's} ^{presence} ^{and} ^{answered} ^{him} ^{not} ^{for} ^{the} ^{space} ^{of} ^{an} ^{hour} ^{according} ^{to} ^{their} ^{time} ^{for} ^{he} ^{knew} ^{not} ^{what} ^{he} ^{should} ^{say} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{but} ^{came} ^{to} ^{pass} ^{that} ^{Ammon} ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{again} ^{what} ^{desired} ^{those} ^{of} ^{me} ^{but} ^{the} ^{king} ^{answered} ^{him} ^{not} ^{but} ^{came} ^{to} ^{pass} ^{that} ^{Ammon} ^{being} ^{filled} ^{with} ^{the} ^{spirit} ^{of} ^{God} ^{therefore} ^{he} ^{perceived} ^{the} ^{thoughts} ^{of} ^{the} ^{king} ^{and} ^{he} ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{not} ^{because} ^{that} ^{those} ^{have} ^{heard} ^{that} ^I ^{defended} ^{thy} ^{servants} [&] ^{thy} ^{locks} [&] ^{thy} ^{semen} ^{of} ^{their} ^{brethren} ^{with} ^{the} ^{king} ^{is} ^{with} ^{the} ^{intent} ^{to} ^{strike} ^{off} ^{the} ^{arms} ^{of} ^{others} ⁱⁿ ^{order} ^{to} ^{defend} ^{thy} ^{locks} [&] ^{thy} ^{servants} ^{he} ^{held} ^{it} ^{is} ^{it} ^{this} ^{that} ^{causeth} ^{thy} ^{mangle} [&] ^{say} ^{unto} ^{you} ^{what} ^{is} ^{it} ^{that} ^{thy} ^{men} ^{things} ^{are} ^{separated} ^{to} ^{hold} ^I ^{am} ^a ^{man} ^{to} ^{am} ^{thy} ^{servant} ^{therefore} ^{whatsoever} ^{those} ^{desirest} ^{which} ^{is} ^{right} ^{that} ^I ^{do} ^{now} ^{when} ^{the} ^{king} ^{had} ^{heard} ^{those} ^{words} ^{he} ^{manned} ^{again} ^{for} ^{he} ^{held} ^{that} ^I ^{Ammon} ^{could} ^{direct} ^{his} ^{thoughts} ^{but} ^{not} ^{with} ^{standing} ^{the} ^{king} ^{Samoni} ^{did} ^{open} ^{his} ^{mouth} [&] ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{who} ^{art} ^{thou} ^{and} ^{thou} ^{that} ^{great} ^{spirit} ^{which} ^{knows} ^{all} ^{things} ^{Ammon} ^{answered} [&] ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^I ^{am} ^{not} ^{the} ^{king} ^{said} ^{how} ^{knowest} ^{thou} ^{the} ^{thoughts} ^{of} ^{my} ^{heart} ^{thou} ^{mayest} ^{speak} ^{boldly} [&] ^{tell} ^{me} ^{concerning} ^{these} ^{things} ^{that} ^I ^{have} ^{told} ^{me} ^{by} ^{what} ^{power} ^{ye} ^{slay} ^{to} ^{strike} ^{off} ^{the} ^{arms} ^{of} ^{my} ^{brethren} ^{that} ^{scattered} ^{my} ^{locks} ^{know} ^{if} ^{thou} ^{wilt} ^{tell} ^{me} ^{concerning} ^{these} ^{things} ^{whatsoever} ^{those} ^{desirest} ^I ^{will} ^{give} ^{unto} ^{thee} ^{if} ^{it} ^{were} ^{needed} ^I ^{would} ^{guard} ^{thee} ^{with} ^{my} ^{arms} ^{but} ^I ^{know} ^{that} ^{thou} ^{art} ^{more} ^{powerful} ^{than} ^{all} ^{these} ^{nevertheless} ^{whatsoever} ^{those} ^{desirest} ^{of} ^{me} ^I ^{will} ^{grant} ^{it} ^{unto} ^{thee} ^{now} ^{Ammon} ^{being} ^{thus} ^{yet} ^{humbler} ^{he} ^{said} ^{unto} ^{Samoni} ^{will} ^{it} ^{that} ^{thou} ^{hear} ^{then} ^{unto} ^{my} ^{words} ^{if} ^{it} ^{tell} ^{thee} ^{by} ^{what} ^{power} ^I ^{do} ^{these} ^{things} [&] ^{this} ^{is} ^{the} ^{thing} ^{that} ^I ^{desire} ^{of} ^{thee} [&] ^{the} ^{king} ^{answered} ^{him} [&] ^{said} ^{yea} ^I ^{will} ^{believe} ^{all} ^{thy} ^{words} [&] ^{thus} ^{he} ^{was} ^{caught} ^{with} ^{guile} ^{to} ^{Ammon} ^{he} ^{began} ^{to} ^{speak} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{with} ^{boldness} [&] ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{believe} ^{thou} ^{that} ^{there} ^{is} ^a ^{God} ^{to} ^{he} ^{answered} ^{unto} ^{him} ^I ^{do} ^{not} ^{know} ^{what} ^{that} ^{meaneth} ^{to} ^{thee} ^{Ammon} ^{said} ^{believe} ^{thou} ^{that} ^{there} ^{is} ^a ^{great} ^{spirit} ^{to} ^{he} ^{said} ^{yea} ^I ^{do} ^{believe} ^{that} ^{there} ^{is} ^a ^{God} ^{to} ^{Ammon} ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{again} ^{believe} ^{thou} ^{that} ^{this} ^{great} ^{spirit} ^{which} ^{is} ^{God} ^{created} ^{all} ^{things} ^{which} ^{are} ⁱⁿ ^{heaven} [&] ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{earth} ^{to} ^{he} ^{said} ^{yea} ^I ^{believe} ^{that} ^{he} ^{created} ^{all} ^{things} ^{which} ^{are} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{earth} ^{but} ^I ^{do} ^{not} ^{know} ^{the} ^{heaven} ^{to} ^{Ammon} ^{said} ^{unto} ^{him} ^{the} ^{heaven} ^{is} ^a ^{place} ^{where} ^{God} ^{dwelleth} [&] ^{all} ^{his} ^{holy} ^{angels} [&] ^{king} ^{Samoni} ^{said} ^{is} ^{it} ^{above} ^{the} ^{earth} ^{to} ^{Ammon} ^{said} ^{yea} ^{to} ^{he} ^{looketh} ^{down} ^{upon} ^{all} ^{the} ^{children} ^{of} ^{men} ^{to} ^{he} ^{knows} ^{all} ^{the} ^{thoughts} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{heart} ^{for} ^{by} ^{his} ^{power}

men ¹¹⁷ were ¹¹⁸ all created from the beginning & King Lamoni saith, believe
all these things which thou hast spoken are sent from God & Lamoni sa
ith since thou art a man & man in the beginning was created after the image of
God & I am called by his holy spirit to teach these things unto this people that
they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just & true & a por
tion of that spirit dwelleth in me which giveth me knowledge & also power
according to my faith & desires which ¹¹⁹ are in God now when Lamoni had
said these words he began to the creation of the world & also to the creation of
Adam & told him all the things concerning the fall of man & he heaved & b
laid before him the records ¹²⁰ of the holy scriptures of the people & which had
been spoken by the prophets even down to the time that ¹²¹ Lehi left Jerusalem
and he also rehearsed unto them for it was un to the King & to his servants
all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness & all their suffering
with hunger & thirst & their travel & c & he also rehearsed unto them con
cerning the rebellions of Laman & Lemuel & the sons of Ishmael & all their
rebellions & it came to pass that he expounded unto them all the records
& scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present
time but this is not all for he expounded unto them the plan of redem
ption which was prepared from the foundation of the ¹²² world & he also made
known unto them concerning the coming of Christ & all the words of the Lord
did he make known unto them & it came to pass that after he had said all these
things & expounded them to the King that the King believed all his words & he
began to cry unto the Lord saying, O Lord have mercy according to thy abundant
mercy which thou hast had upon the people of ¹²³ thy house upon me &
my people & now when he had said this he fell unto the earth as if he
were dead & it came to pass that his servants & took him & carried him in un
to his wife & laid him upon a bed & he lay as if he were dead for the sp
ace of two days & two nights & his wife & his sons & his daughters mourned
over him after the manner of the Lamanites greatly lamenting his ¹²⁴ loss
& it came to pass that after two days & two nights they were about to

Let him take his body to lay it in a sepulcher which they had made for the purpose
of burying their dead now the Queen having heard of the same of ^{her} ~~him~~
mon therefore she sent & desired that he should come in unto her & it
came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded & went in unto the
Queen & desired to know what she would that he should do & she said un-
to him the servants of my ^{husband} ~~husband~~ have made it known unto me that thou art a
prophet of a holy God & that thou hast power to do many mighty works in
his name therefore if this is the case I would that ye should go in & see
my husband for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days
& two nights & some ^{say} that he is not dead but others say that he is dead &
that he stinketh & that he ought to be placed in the sepulcher but as
for myself to me he doth not stink now this was what Ammon desired
for he knew that King Lamoni was under the power of God he knew that the
dark veil of unbelief being cast away from his mind & the light which
did light up his mind which was the light of the glory of God which
was a marvelous light of his goodness & this light had infused such
joy into his soul the cloud of darkness having been dispelled & the light of
everlasting light was lit up in his soul & if he knew that this had over-
come his natural frame he was carried away in God therefore what the
Queen desired of him was his only desire therefore he went in to see the king
according as the Queen had desired him & he saw the king & he knew that he
was not dead & he said unto the Queen ^{he} is not dead but he sleepeth
God if on the morrow he shall rise again therefore bury him not & Ammon
said unto her believe that thou shalt & she said I have had no witness save
thy word & the word of my servants & my friends & I believe that it shall be
according as thou hast said & Ammon said unto her blessed art thou be-
cause of thy exceeding ^{faith} ~~faith~~ & I say unto thee woman thou hast not been such great fa-
ith among all the people of the isabites & it came to pass that she went over
the bed of her husband from that time even until that time on the mor-
row which Ammon had appointed that he should rise & it came to pass
that he arose according to the words of Ammon & as he arose he stretched forth
his hand unto the woman & said blessed be the name of God for as much as
thou hast believed behold I have ^{been} ~~seen~~ my redemption & he shall come forth & be ho-
nor of a woman & he shall ^{redeem} ~~redeem~~ all mankind who believe on his name
now when he had said these words his heart was swollen with joy &

219
he sunk again with joy & the Queen also sunk down being overpowered
by the spirit now Ammon seeing the spirit of ^{the Lord} ~~the Lord~~ and according to his
powers upon the Lamanites his brethren ~~in~~ ^{the} ~~land~~ had been so much
mourning among the Nephites an among all the people of God because of their
iniquities & their traditions & Ammon ^{fell} upon his knees & began to pour out his
soul in prayer & thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren & he
also was overpowered with joy & this they all there and sunk to the earth now
when the servants of the King had ~~seen~~ ^{known} that they had fallen they also began to cry
unto God for the pain of ~~the Lord~~ ^{the Lord} had come upon them also for it was
they ^{in the} ~~land~~ had stood before the King & testified unto him concerning
the great power of Ammon & it came to pass that they did call on the
name of the Lord in their might even until they had all fallen to the
earth now there was one of the Lamanite women whose name was Abish
she having been converted unto the Lord for many years as appears
at a remarkable vision of her father thus having been converted to the
Lord never had made it known therefore when she saw that all the
servants of Laman had fallen to the earth & also her mistress the Queen
& the King & Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth she knew that it was
the power of God & supposing that this opportunity by making known unto
the people what had happened among them that by beholding this scene it
would cause them to believe in the power of God therefore she ran forth
from house to house making it known unto the people & they began to assem-
ble themselves together unto the house of the King & there came a multi-
tude & to their astonishment they beheld the King & the Queen & their ser-
vants prostrate upon the earth & they all lay there as though they were dead
& they also saw Ammon & he held he was a sephite & now the people began to
murmur among themselves some saying that it was a great evil that had be-
fallen upon them on whom the King & his house because he had supposed that the
sephite should remain in the land but others rebuked them saying the King
hath brought this evil upon his house because he loved his servants who
had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus & they were also re-
buked by these men ^{in the} ~~land~~ had stood at the waters of Sebus & scattered
the flocks which belonged to the King for they were angry with Ammon

because of the number which he had slain of them brethren at the
waters of Sebus while defending the flocks of the king, now one of them,
whose brother had been slain with the sword of Lamoni being exceedingly
angry with Lamoni drew his sword & went forth that he might ^{kill}
fall upon him to slay him & as he lifted the sword to smite him he
held he fell dead now we see that Lamoni could not be slain for the
Lord had said unto Mosiah his father & I will spare him & it shall be
unto him according to the faith therefore Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord
& it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen
and who lifted the sword to slay Lamoni fear came upon them all & they
durst not put forth their hands to touch him on any of those ^{who} which had
fallen & they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the ca-
use of this great power or what all these things could mean & it came to pass
that there ^{were} many among them who said that Lamoni was the great ^{spirit}
& others said he was sent by the great spirit ^{who} ^{they} ^{said}
that others rebuked them all saying that he was a monster ^{which} ^{had} ^{been}
sent from the Nephites to torment us & there were some ^{which} ^{said} that
Lamoni was sent by the great spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities
& that it was the great spirit that had always attended the Nephites ^{which} ^{had}
had even delivered them out of their hands & they said that it was this great
spirit ^{which} ^{had} ^{destroyed} so many of their brethren the Lamanites & thus the
contention began to be exceedingly ^{loud} among them & while they were thus con-
tending the woman ^{which} ^{had} ^{caused} the multitude to be gathered together
then came & when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she
was exceedingly sorrowful even unto tears & it came to pass that she went & took
the Queen by the hand that perhaps she might raise her from the ground & as soon
as she touched her hand she arose & stood upon her feet & cried with a loud
voice saying O blessed Jesus who has saved me from an awful hell O blessed
God have mercy on this people & when she had said this she clasped her hands
being filled with joy & breaking many words which were not understood
& when she had done this she took the king Lamoni by the hand & behold
he arose & stood upon his feet & he immediately seeing the contention ^{among}

his people went forth & began to rebuke them & to teach them the words ^{of God} which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon & as many as heard his words believed & were commended unto the Lord but there was many among them who would not hear his words therefore they went their way & it came to pass that when Ammon was ^{advised} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~teach~~ ^{to} them & he did all the servants of Lamoni & they did all declare unto the people the same thing that their hearts had been changed that they had no more desire to do evil & he held many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels & had conversed with them & thus they had told them things of God & of his righteousness & it came to pass that there ~~were~~ ^{were} many that did believe in their words & as many as did believe were lightened & they became a righteous people & they did establish a church among them & thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamonites thus the Lord did begin to pour out his spirit upon them & it was the will of his arm is extended to all people who will repent & believe on his name & it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land that King Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi that he might show him unto his father & it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi for he hath told the king will seek thy life but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni for he hath told thy brethren & Ammon is also Mulaki & Chumath are in prison now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this he said unto Lamoni behold my brethren & brethren are in prison at Middoni & I go that I may deliver them now Lamoni said unto Ammon I know in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things but he hath said I will go with thee to the land of Middoni for the king of the land of Middoni whose name is Antionus is a friend unto me therefore I go to the land of Middoni that I may ^{show} ~~show~~ the king of the land & he will cast thy brethren out of prison now Lamoni said unto him who told thee that thy brethren were in prison & Ammon said unto him no one hath told me save it be God & he said unto me go & deliver thy brethren for they are in prison in the land of Middoni now when Lamoni had ^{heard} ~~heard~~ this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses & his chariots & he said unto Ammon come I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni

but Shammone withstood his blows & also smote his arm, that
he could not use it now when the king saw that Shammone could
slay him, he began to plead with Shammone that he would spare his
life & Shammone raised his sword & said unto him Behold
I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my bre-
thren may be cast out of prison now the king fearing that he should
lose his life said if thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee what
soever thou wilt ask even to the half of the kingdom now when Sham-
mon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his des-
ire, he ^{said} ~~said~~ unto him if thou wilt grant that my brethren may be
cast out of prison, & also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom & that
if he be disabled with him, but grant that he may do according to
his own desires, in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee
otherwise I will smite thee to the earth now when Shammone had said
these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life, & when he saw
that Shammone had no desire to destroy him, & when he also saw the great
love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, & say-
ing because this is all that thou hast desired, that I should release
thy brethren & suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his king-
dom, he hold, I will grant unto thee that my son may retain his king-
dom from this time & on, & I will govern him no more & I
will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of pri-
son, & that the brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom, & I
shall greatly desire to see thee, for the king was greatly astonished at
the words which he had spoken, & also at the words which had be-
en spoken by his son Lamoni; therefore he was desirous to learn the
And it came to pass that Shammone & Lamoni proceeded on their journey
towards the land of Middoni, & it came to pass that Lamoni found favor
in the eyes of the king of the land, therefore the brethren of Shammone ^{were} ~~was~~ ^{cast}
out of prison, & when Shammone did meet them, he was exceedingly

Let some of thy people be taken, they were naked, & their skins were
worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords, & they also
had suffered hunger, thirst, & all kind of affliction, nevertheless
they were patient in all their sufferings, & as it happened it was
their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened & a
more stiffnecked people, therefore they would not hearken unto
their words, & they had cast them out, & had ^{smitten} ~~smitten~~ them, & had
driven them from house to house, & from place to place, even until
they had come to the land of Middonia, & then they were taken
& cast into prison, & bound with strong cords, & kept in prison for
many days, & were delivered by Antonio & Ammon.

Chapter XIII An account of the preaching of
Daron & Naabhi, & their brethren, to the Lamanites.
Now when Ammon & his brethren separated themselves ^{borders of the} ~~on the~~ ^{land}
of the Lamanites, he held, & anon took his journey towards the land which
was called by the Lamanites Jerusalem, & being in the land of
their nativity, & it was away, joining the borders of Middonia, now
the Lamanites, & the Amalekites, & the people of Amulon, had built a
great city, which was called Jerusalem, now the Lamanites, of them-
selves, were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites & the Amulonites,
were still harder-hearted, for did cause the Lamanites that they should
harden their hearts, that they should wear themselves in wickedness, & their
abominations, & it came to pass that anon came to the city of Jerusalem, &
firstly began to preach, & then to preach to them in their synagogues,
for they had built synagogues, after the order of the Jews, for many of
the Amalekites & the Amulonites were of the order of the Jews, & then
long as anon entered into one of these synagogues to preach unto the peo-
ple, & as he was speaking unto them, he held there were an Amalekite,
& began to contend with him saying, what is that that thou hast
said? I have seen an Angel, & truly do not Angels appear unto
us, behold, are not this people as good as thy people? then also saying, except
we repent, we shall perish, how knowest thou the thought & intent
of our heart? how knowest thou that we have cause to repent? how
knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? he held, we have but
ilt laws, & we do assemble ourselves together to worship God, yet
do we lie that God will save all men, now anon said unto him
believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind

and things he did teach, and many things, and he did also declare unto them that ~~they were~~ ^{he was} ~~gospel~~ ^{under him}, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the subjection of the king, in that for that his father had wanted unto him that he might reign over the people which were in the land of Shomael, & in all the land round about, & he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshipping the Lord their God, according to their desires, in whatsoever place they pleased, if it were in the land, which was under the reign of King Lamoni, & Ammon did breath unto the people of King Lamoni, & it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness, & he did exhort them daily, with all diligence, & they gave heed unto his word, & they were zealous in keeping the commandments of God, now as Ammon, was thus teaching the people, I am now continually, we will return to the account of Ammon & his other brethren, for after he departed from the land of Middoni, he was lead by the spirit to the land of Shomael, even to the heart of the king, which was over all the land, save it were the land of Shomael, & he was the father of Lamoni, & it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, & bowed himself before the king, & said unto him, behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of bondage, & now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be the servants of the king, & we will go with thee, & we will grant unto you your lives, & we will not suffer that we shall be your servants, but we will insist that we shall administer unto you, for I have been some what troubled in mind, because of the generosity, & the greatness of the words of the brother Ammon, & I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni, with thee, & Ammon, & I have said unto the king, behold, the spirit of the Lord hath called him another way, he hath gone to the land of Shomael, to teach the people of Lamoni, now the king saith unto them, what is that that ye have said concerning

the spirit of the Lord! he held there is the thing which doth trouble²⁷
me; & also, what is this that Shammur said if ye will repent ye shall
be saved, & if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last
day? & Sharon answered him & said unto him, be liever that there
is a God, & the king sayeth, I know that the Annabekites say that
there is a God, & I have granted unto them that they should build
sanctuaries, that they ^{may} assemble themselves together, to wor-
ship him. & if now shall sayest there is a God, be hold, I will believe
to now when Sharon heard this, his heart began to rejoice, & he said,
be hold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God. & the king
sayeth, is God that great spirit that brought our fathers out of the
land of ^{the} Jerusalem? & Sharon said unto him yea, he is that great
spirit, & he created all things, both in heaven & in earth: be liever
that I say the, & I believe that the great spirit created
all things, & desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things
& I will believe thy words. & it came to pass that when Sharon saw
that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of
Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king, how God created man
after his own image, & that God gave commandments, & that because
of transgression man had fallen, & Sharon did expound unto him the
Christians, from the creation of Adam, saying, the full of man before
him, & their various state, & also the plan of redemption which was
prepared from the beginning of the world, through Christ, in all
whomsoever man had fallen in sin, & since man had fallen
he could not merit one thing, & since he could not merit one thing
of Christ, therefore, he said, O king, through faith & obedience, & O
& that he would be saved, that the grave shall have no
victory, & that the living & the dead shall be swallowed up in the
bosom of glory. & Sharon did expound all these things unto the king,
& it came to pass that when Sharon had expounded these things unto
him, the king said, What shall I do, that I may have this eternal
life of which thou hast spoken, what shall I do, that I may
the blessed God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast,

128. I saw him, his mind that I may be filled with joy that I
may not be cast off at the last day, he held, ~~saying~~ he will ge-
ne up all that I have, ~~yea~~ will forsake my kingdom that I
may receive this great joy, but when he said ~~unto him~~ if thou
desirest this thing, ~~if~~ thou wilt bow down before God, ~~yea~~ if thou repent
of all thy sins, ~~yea~~ thou shalt bow down before God, & call on his name, in faith
believing, that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope
which thou desirest. ~~It came to pass~~ It came to pass that when Aaron had said the
se words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees, ~~yea~~
and he did praise him mightily upon the earth, & did mightily, saying,
O God, Aaron hath ~~told me~~ ^{told me} that there is a God, ~~yea~~ there is a God, ~~yea~~
thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, & I will give
away all my sins to know thee, & that I may be raised from the dead
& he said at the last day, & now when the king had said these words,
he was chattering, & he was ~~chattering~~ ^{chattering}. It came to pass that his servant
to him, & told the women all that ~~happened~~ ^{had happened} unto the king, &
she came in unto the king, when she saw him lay as if he were dead,
& also Aaron & his brethren standing, as she they had been the cause of his
fall, she was angry with them, & commanded that her servants, ~~on the ven-~~
ants of the king, should take them, & lay them, now the servants had
seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their
hands on Aaron & his brethren, & they hid with the Queen, saying
why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when he hold
one of them is mightier than us all, therefore we shall fall before them,
now when the Queen saw the face of the servants, she also began to
weep exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her, &
she commanded her servants that they should go & call the people, that
they might slay Aaron & his brethren, now when Aaron saw the deter-
mination of the Queen, & he also knowing the hardness of the hearts of
the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble them-
selves together, & there should be a great contention, & a disturbance
among them, therefore he put forth his hand & raised the king from

He said unto him, stand: & he stood upon his feet,
restoring his strength, now this was done in the presence of the Queen,
& many of her servants: & when they saw it, they greatly marvelled, &
began to fear: & the King stood forth & began to minister unto them,
& he did minister unto them inasmuch that his whole household
were converted unto the Lord, now there was a multitude gathered
together because of the commandment of the Queen & there began to
be great murmurings among them, because of Hanon & his brethren, but the
King stood forth among them, & administered unto them, & it came to pass
that they were pacified towards Hanon & ~~his brethren~~ ^{those} which were with
him. It came to pass that when the King saw that the people were paci-
fied, he caused that Hanon's six brethren should stand forth in the midst
of the multitude, & that they should preach the word unto them, & it
came to pass that the King sent a proclamation throughout all the land,
amongst all his people ~~that were~~ ^{that were} in all his land, which was in all these
regions round about, which was bordering even to the Sea on the east, & on
the west, & which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow
strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east, & unto the sea west, &
round about on the borders of the Sea shore, & the borders of the wilder-
ness, which was on the north, by the land of Zarahemla, through the bo-
rders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east
towards the west, & thus were the Lamanites & the Nephites divided, now
the most part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, & ~~lived~~ ^{dwelt} in tents, &
they were spread through the wilderness, on the west, in the land of Nephis,
& also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the Sea
shore, & on the east, in the land of Nephis, in the place of their latter day
inheritance, & thus bordering along by the Sea shore, & also there ~~were~~ ^{were} many
Lamanites on the east by the Sea shore, whither the Nephites had driven them, &
thus, the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites, nevertheless
the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering
on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west,

and round about on the wilderness side, even the Lamanites, even until
they came to the land which they called Beautiful, & it being
upon the land which they called desolation, it being so far northward
that it came into the land which had been kept, & had been
said of, whose bones we have spoken, which was ~~in~~ ^{by} the temple
of Jahankem, it being the place of their first landing, & they came
from there into the south wilderness, thus the land on the north
ward was called desolation, & the land on the southward was
called beautiful, it being the wilderness which was filled with
all ~~kind~~ ^{manner} of wild animals of every kind, & of which had come
from the land northward, for food, & now it was only the dis-
tance of a day & a half journey for a Lamanite, on the line beautiful,
& the land desolation, from the east to the west sea, & thus the land of
Jephi, & the land of Jahankem, was nearly surrounded by water, there
being a small neck of land between the land southward, & the land
southward, & it came to pass that the Lamanites had inhabited the land
beautiful, even from the east unto the west sea, & thus the Lamanites, in
their wisdom, with their guards & their armies, had hemmed in the
Lamanites on the south that thereby they should have no more posses-
sion on the north that they might not encumber the land northward,
therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of
Jephi, & the wilderness round about, now this was wisdom in the Lamanites,
as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer
their afflictions on every hand, & also that they might have a domin-
ion whither they might flee, according to their desires, & now, after
having said this, he turned again to the account of ^{Ammon} Ammon, &
Himni, & their brethren. (Chapter XIV)

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites, sent a free
Lamanite among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on
the Lamanites, & he said, Ammon, & Himni, nor neither of their brethren
who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place
they should be, in any part of their land, & he sent a decree among
them that they should not lay their hands on them, & he said, & he said

231
or to cast them into prison neither should they spit upon them nor
smite them nor cast the meat of their synagogues nor scourge them
neither should they cast stones at them but that they should have free
access to their houses & also their temples & their sanctuaries & that
they might go forth & preach the word according to their desires for the
king had been converted unto the Lord & all his heart held thus far he sent
his proclamation through out the land unto his people that the word
of God might have no abridgement but that it might go forth thro
out all ~~the~~ land that his people might be convinced concerning
the wicked traditions of their fathers & that they might be convinced
that they were all brethren & that they ~~should~~ ^{ought} not to murder nor
to plunder nor to steal nor to commit adultery nor to commit any man
ner of wickedness And now it came to pass that when the king had sent for
him this proclamation that he & his brethren went forth from city to city
& from one house of worship to another establishing churches & consecrating
priests & teachers through out the land among the Lamanites to preach & to
teach the word of God among them & thus they began to have great success &
thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord & also thousands were
brought to believe in the traditions of the prophets & there were taught the
records & the prophecies which were handed down even to the present
time & as soon as the Lord himself saw as many as believed or as many
as were brought to the knowledge of the truth through the preaching of Mormon
& his brethren according to the spirit of revelation & of prophecy & the power of
God working miracles in them year by year & as the Lord knew as ma
ny of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching & were converted unto the
Lord & were dedicated unto him for they became a righteous people they did lay
down the ~~memory~~ ^{memory} of their rebellion that they did not fight against God
neither against any of their brethren now there are ~~they~~ ^{they} which were
converted unto the Lord the people of the Lamanites which were in the land
of Shemuel & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of
Hiddoni & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the city of
Tahiti & also of the people of the Lamanites ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of
Ethiopia & ~~which were~~ ^{who were} in the land of Shemlon & in the City of Enos
& in the City of Shimnith & these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites
which were converted unto the Lord & these are they that

234
As we could do to get our claims taken away from us to our swords
are made bright let us have them away that they may be kept as bright
as a testimony to our God at the last day or at the day that we shall be
ought to stand before him to be judged that we have not stained our
swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us
has made us clean thereby to now say brethren if our brethren seek to destroy us
behold we will strike down our swords yea even we will bury them
deep in the earth that they may be kept bright as a testimony that we
have never used them at the last day & if our brethren destroy us behold
we shall go to our God & shall be saved to now it came to pass that when
the king had made an end of these sayings & all the people were assembled
and together they took their swords & all the weapons which were ^{used} ~~used~~
for the shedding of blood & they did bury them up deep in the earth &
thus they did it being in their view a testimony to God & also to men that
they never ^{would} use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood & thus they
did warshipping & covenanting with God that rather than they ~~shed~~ the blood
of their brethren they would give up their own lives & rather than ~~take~~ take
away from a brother they would give unto him & rather than ~~spend~~ spend their
days in idleness they would labour a husband for with their hands
& thus we see that when these Lamanites were brought to believe &
to know the truth ~~that~~ they were ^{lovers} ~~lovers~~ would ^{give} ~~give~~ ^{up} ~~up~~ ^{their} ~~their~~ ^{lives} ~~lives~~ ^{rather} ~~rather~~ ^{than} ~~than~~ ^{commit} ~~commit~~ ^{sin} ~~sin~~ thus we see that they buried
the weapons of peace on they buried the weapons of war for peace
& it came to pass that their brethren the Lamanites made preparations
for war & came to the land of Ephraim for the purpose of destroying the
king & to place another in his stead to also of destroying the people of
O Anti Ephraim & all of the land ^{there} ~~there~~ ^{that} ~~that~~ when the people
saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them
& prostrated themselves before them to the earth & began to call on the
name of the Lord & thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites
began to fall upon them & began to slay them with the sword & that with-
out meeting any resistance they did slay a thousand & five of them
& we know that they are blessed for they have gone to dwell with their

274
land of Gabaon & so it was upon the people which were in the land
of Ammon & destroyed them & after that they had many battles with
the Ephraim in the which they were slain & slain & among the Ammonites
^{of the} were slain were a most all the seed of Hinnon & his brethren
^{of the} were the priests of Baal & they were slain by the hands of the Ephraim
the remnant having fled into the east wilderness & having used
the Ammonites on their own the Ammonites caused that many of the
Ammonites should perish by fire because of their belief for many of them
after having suffered so much loss & so many of their brethren began
to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Hinnon & his brethren
had preached to them in their land therefore they began to disbelieve
the traditions of their fathers & to believe in the Lord & that he gave great
power unto the Ephraim & thus there were many of them converted in the
wilderness & it came to pass that Hinnon & his brethren ^{of the} were the remnant of
the Children of Hinnon caused that they should be put to death & all
those that believed in their things now their master down caused that many
of their brethren should be stirred up to anger & there began to be contem-
nation in the wilderness & the Ammonites began to hunt the seed of Hinnon
& his brethren & began to slay them & they fled into the east wilderness
& he held they are hunted at this day by the Ammonites thus the words of the
prophet were brought to pass which he said concerning the seed of the Ephraim
which caused that he should suffer death by fire for he said unto them
what ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come & now the
word was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in
God now that is what he meant that many should suffer death by
fire according as he had suffered & he said unto the priests of Baal
that their seed should cause many to be put to death in the like man-
ner as he was & that they should be scattered abroad & slain even
as a sheep having no shepherd is slain & slain by wild beasts &
now behold these words were verified for they were slain by the

Ammonites & the Lamanites hunted to they were smitten & it came to pass
that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overcome them & while
they returned again to their own land & many of them came over to dwell
in the land of Shinarum & the land of Zarahemla & join themselves to the
people of God ~~where~~ ^{where} was the people of Zarahemla & they did also have
their weapons of war according as their fathers had to they began to hear
wonderous things & they did walk in the ways of the Lord & did observe to
keep his commandments & his statutes & they did keep the law of Moses
for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet
for it was not all fulfilled but notwithstanding the law of Moses
they did look forward to the coming of Christ considering that the law
of Moses was a type of his coming & believing that they might keep the
law of Moses until the time that he should be re-
vealed unto them now they did not suppose that salvation came by the
law of Moses but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in
Christ & thus they did retain a hope through faith unto eternal salva-
tion relying upon the spirit of prophecy which spake of those things
to come & now behold I am man & I have seen & I know & I know
brothers did rejoice exceedingly for the success which they had had
among the Lamanites seeing that the Lord had granted unto them
according to their prayers & that he had also verified his word unto
them in every particular & that now there are the words of I know
his brethren ~~which~~ ^{which} say ~~the~~ thus say brothers & my brethren behold
say unto you how great reason have we to rejoice now could we have
known when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have
granted unto us such great blessings & now ask what great blessings he
has bestowed upon us can we tell we hold answers for you for our
brethren the Lamanites were in darkness & even in the darkest of days
but he held how many of them we brought to behold the marvelous
light of God & this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us
that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring
out this great work he hold thousands of them do rejoice & have been
brought into the fold of God he hold the field ^{was} ripe & blessed are
ye for ye did trust in the visible & did reap with your might ye
all the day long did ye labour & he hold the number of your names
& they shall be gathered into the garner that they are not wasted
they shall not be beaten down ~~that~~ the storm at the last day ye
neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds that

And when the storm comes they shall be gathered together in the midst
so that the storm cannot penetrate to them yea neither shall they be tri-
umphant with fierce winds with thunders the enemy lieth to carry them but
behold they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest & they are his & he
will raise them up at the last day blessed be the name of our God let
us sing to his praise yea let us give thanks to his holy name for he doth
work mighty & astonishing wonders for if we had not come up out of the land
of Canaan he there and doubly beloved brethren ~~himself~~ have so dearly
redeemed us would still have been racked with hatred against
us yea & they would also have been strangers to God & it came to pass
that when Ammon had said these words his brother Aaron rebuked
him saying Ammon I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto hea-
sting but Ammon saith unto him I do not heave in my own strength
nor in my own wisdom but he hold my joy is full yea my heart
is brim with joy & I will rejoice in my God yea I know that I am
nothing as to my strength I am weak therefore will not boast of myself
but I will boast of my God for in his strength I can do all things yea
he hold many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land for which
we will praise his name forever he hold how many thousands of our
brethren ~~that~~ he loosed from the chains of hell & they are brought to sing and
rejoice love & this because of the power of his word which is in us therefore
have we not great reason to rejoice yea we have reason to praise him for
ever for he is the most high God & has loosed our brethren from the chains of
hell yea they were encircled about with everlasting darkness & destruc-
tion but behold he hath brought them into his everlasting light
yea into everlasting salvation & they are encircled about with the ma-
teless beauty of his love yea & we have been instruments in his ha-
nd of doing this great & marvellous work therefore let us glory yea we will
glory in the Lord yea we will rejoice for our joy is full yea we will praise
our God forever behold who can glory to much in the Lord yea who can say to man
ok at his great power & of his mercy & of his long suffering towards the children
of men behold I say unto you I cannot say the smallest part which I feel
who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to
have snatched us from our awful sinful & polluted state he hold we
went forth even in our youth mighty threatenings to destroy his Church
O then why did he not consign us to an awful destruction yea why did he
not let the sword of his justice fall upon us & down we to eternal destruc-
tion O my soul almost as it were flee at the thought behold he

did not exercise his justice upon us but in his great mercy hath ²³⁷
brought us over that everlasting yolk of death & misery even to the
salvation of our souls & now he holdeth my brethren what natural man's
these that knowest these things say unto our Father is none that knoweth
these things save it be the Son of Man yea he that is planted & enrooted in
faith & bringeth forth good fruit & he that is brought continually without ceasing
until such it is given to know the mysteries of God yea unto such it shall
be given to reveal things which have never have been revealed of a man
shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance even as
it hath been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance now
do ye remember my brethren that we said unto our brethren in the land of
Jaredhema we go up to the land of Ephraim to preach unto our brethren the Lamanites
& they laughed us to scorn for they said unto us do ye suppose that ye can
bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth do ye suppose that ye can convince the
Lamanites of the iniquity of the heathen of their fathers as it is written a people
be as they are whose hearts delighteth in the shedding of blood whose days have been
spent in the greatest iniquity whose ways have been the ways of a transgression
from the beginning now my brethren remember that this was their language
& moreover they did say let us take up arms against them that we destroy the
sons of their iniquity out of the land lest they overrun us & destroy us but he
belonged to our brethren we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our
brethren but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of them ^{that}
now when our hearts were depressed & we were about to turn back behold
they did comfort us & said go amongst thy brethren the Lamanites & bear
with patience their afflictions & thou wilt gain unto ^{you} ~~the~~ success & now behold
old we have come & been forth amongst them & we have been patient in our suf-
ferings & we have suffered every affliction yea we have travelled from house
to house relying upon the mercies of the world not upon the mercies of the world
alone but upon the mercies of God & we have entered into their houses & have
gladly taught them & we have taught them in their houses yea & we have taught them
upon their hills & we have also entered into their temples & their Synagogues &
taught them & we have been cast out & mocked & spit upon & smitten upon our
cheeks & we have been stoned & taken & bound with strong cords & cast into pri-
son & through the power & wisdom of God we have been delivered again & we have
suffered all manner of afflictions & all this that perhaps we might be the means
of saving some soul & we supposed that our day would be full if perhaps we could
be the means of saving some now behold we can look forth & see the fruits
of our labours & are they few I say unto you they are many yea & we can

240
 2nd witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren & also for
 as for what they had rather sacrifice themselves than even to take the life of
 their enemy & they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth because
 of their love towards their brethren & now as told I say unto you for their ^{been} ~~there~~
 great love in all the land who is it say unto you may it be that not even among
 the Nephites in all the land they would take up arms against their brethren they would
 not suffer themselves to be slain but behold now many of them have laid down
 their lives & I am ^{glad} that they have gone to their God because of their love & of their ha-
 tred to sin now have we not reason to rejoice ^{we} say unto you have we not
 men that had so great reason to rejoice as we since the world began & saying
 say is carried away even unto boasting in my God for he has all power all wisdom
 all understanding he can do hundred things & he is a merciful being even unto
 salvation to those who will repent & believe on his name now if this is boasting
 even so will I boast for this is my light & my life & my joy & my redemption from
 sin & from iniquity & from all unrighteousness & from the bondage of the law & from
 been mindful of this people ^{who} ~~which~~ are a branch of the tree of life & I have ^{been} ~~been~~
 been lost from the land & in a strange land & I have ^{been} ~~been~~ the name of my
 God who hath been mindful of his wandering in a strange land now my brethren
 we see that God is mindful of every people in whatever land they may be in
 we see he numbereth his people & his families of every ^{all} ~~where~~ in all the earth now this
 is my joy & my great thanksgiving & I will give thanks unto my God forever
 Amen & I say unto you that when the Nephites ^{first} ~~first~~
 had gone to war against the Lamanites, had found of their many strong places to de-
 stroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to
 the land of Lehi & it came to pass that the Lamanites, because of their loss, were
 exceedingly angry & when they saw that they could not reach unto them, the Lamanites
 then began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the Nephites & to
 for his sake therefore they began again to destroy them now this people again were
 led to take their arms & they suffered themselves to be slain according to the
 desires of their enemies, now when I mention to my brethren saw this horrible destruc-
 tion among their who they so dearly beloved & among those who had to do with the
 word the Nephites were treated as the ^{people} ~~people~~ sent from God to save them
 from everlasting destruction, that one when I mention to my brethren saw this
 great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, & they said
 unto the king, let us go down together this people of the land & let us go down to
 the land of Gana-hemba to our brethren, the Nephites & flee out of the hands of our
 enemies, that we be not destroyed, but the king replied unto them, behold
 the Lamanites will destroy us, because of the many murders & sins we have com-

—milled against them, & Harmon together will go to enquire of the Lord, & if he sayeth
unto us, ye shall come down unto our brethren, we will go to the King, & say unto him, ye say if the
Lord sayeth unto us, ye will go down unto our brethren, to us, will be their
slaves until we repain unto them the many murders & sins which we have com-
mitted against them, but Harmon sayeth unto him, it is against the law of our
brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any
slaves among them, therefore let us go down & rely upon the mercies of our Lord
then, but the King, said unto him, inquire of the Lord, & if he sayeth unto us
ye will go, otherwise we will perish in the land, & it came to pass that
Harmon went & inquired of the Lord, & the Lord said unto him, ~~but~~ get this
people out of this land, that they perish not, for Satan hath great hold on the
hearts of the Nephites, who do stir up the humankind to anger against their brethren
to slay them, then he got the ears of his land, & blessed all the people in this genera-
tion, for I will preserve them, & now it came to pass that Harmon went & told the
King all the words which the Lord had said unto him, & it came to pass that they gather-
ed together all their people, yea, all the people of the land, & did gather together all the
in flock & herds & dispersed into the land, & came ^{into the} wilderness which divided
the land of Zephi from the land of Garamela, & came even near the borders of the land
& it came to pass that Harmon sayeth unto them, he holdeth my brethren will go for the
into the land of Zephi, shall remain here until we return, & we will try the hearts of our
brethren, whether they will come into their land, & it came to pass that as Harmon was
going forth into the land, that he & his brethren met Alma upon in the place of which
which has been spoken, & he hold that was a joyful meeting, now the joy of Alma
was so great, even that he was full of joy, & he was well loved up in the
joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength, & he fell again to the earth, now
now is not this exceeding joy, he hold this is joy, which none receive, save it be the truly
penitent & humble seekers of happiness, now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren
was truly great, & also the joy of the strength of Alma, but he hold, their joy
was not that to exceed their strength, now it came to pass that Alma con-
ducted his brethren back to the land of Garamela, even into his own houses, it
came to pass that they were told the Chief Judge all the things which had hap-
pened, unto them in the land of Zephi among their brethren, & it came to
pass that the Chief Judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring
the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, ^{which} were the
people of Zephi, which it came to pass that the people came saying, behold
we will give up the land of Zephi, which is on the east by the Sea, which
joins the land beautiful, which is on the south of the land beautiful, & the
land Zephi is the land which we will give ^{unto} our brethren for an inheritance, &

and would not sell out our armies before the land of Gershon the land of
that we may be able our brethren in the land of Gershon their uncle Simon his army, and
sent of their ears to take up arms against their brethren, lest they should commit sin
to this their great sin came, because of their sore repentance which they had, and
out of the many murders, to this which which which now he held, that will not do
any, but that they may in the land of Gershon we will guard them from their enemies
by our armies, and conditions that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us
that we may maintain our armies, now it came to pass that when Simon had heard
this he returned to the people of Ishmael, and he took him with him, into the wilderness
211, where they had pitched their tents, & made known unto them all these things, &
all that he said unto them his conversation with Ammon, & Aaron, & his brethren
did come to pass, that it did cause great joy among them, & it came to pass that they
returned to the land of Gershon, & took possession of the land of Gershon, they were called
by the Ishmaelites, the people of Ammon, therefore they were distinguished by that name
ever after, & they were among the people of Ishmael, also named among the people
which were of the Church of God, & they were also distinguished for their zeal
towards God, & also towards men, for they were perfect in honor & uprightness of
things, & in their hearts they had the Christ, and they did look upon
shedding the blood of their brethren with a heavy heart, & it was not possible
for them to take up arms against their brethren, & they never did look upon death
with any degree of pleasure, for their hope & view of Christ, & the resurrection, therefore
death was sanctified up to them by the victory of Christ over it, therefore they
would suffer death in the most deprecating & distressing manner which could
be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword on the Gyna-
the to smite the world, thus they were a zealous & beloved people, a highly favored
people of the Lord, & now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were estab-
lished in the land of Gershon, & a church also established in the land of Gershon, &
the armies of the Ishmaelites were returned, & had the land of Gershon again all the
borders round about the land of Gershon, he held the armies of the Ammonites
had followed their brethren into the wilderness, & thus a tremendous battle
was given such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land
from the time that he left Jerusalem, & tens of thousands of the Ammonites
were slain & scattered a broad day, & also there was a tremendous slaughter
among the people of Ishmael, nevertheless the Ammonites were driven & scattered, &
the people of Ishmael returned again to their land, & now this was a time that there
was a great mourning & lamentation, heard throughout all the land, among
all the people of Ishmael, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands,
& also of fathers mourning for their sons, & the daughters for the brothers, &

The brother John the father of this the day of mourning was heard among every one of
 them mourning for their kindred which had been slain, & now rescued. This
 was a sorrowful day, a time of solemnity, & a time of much fasting & prayer.
 & thus ended the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Ephraim.
 & this is the account of Shimon & his brethren, their savings into the land of Ephraim,
 their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, afflictions, & their incomprehensible pay, &
 the reception & rest of the brethren in the land of Ephraim. & now may the Lord, the
 redeemer of all men, bless their souls, for ever. & this is the account of the wars & con-
 tention among the Ephraim, & also the wars between the Ephraim & the Samaritans.
 the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended, & in the first year of the
 fifteenth, has brought to pass the destruction of many thousands, & it has
 brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed, & the bodies of many thousands
 are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are mangled
 in heaps upon the face of the earth, & many thousands are mourning for the
 loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear according to the promises
 of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless woe, while many thou-
 sands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice & exult
 in the hope, & mention according to the promises of the Lord, that they are mis-
 erd to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.
 Thus we see how great the inequality of man's happiness, because of sin & transgression,
 & the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning lions, which he hath devised
 to murder the hearts of men, & thus we see the great call of the diligence of men to
 labour in the vineyards of the Lord. Thus we see the great reason of sorrow, &
 also of rejoicing, sorrow because of death & destruction among men, & joy because
 of the light of Christ unto life. O that I were an angel, & could have the wish
 of mine heart, that I might go forth & speak with the trumpet of God, with a
 voice to shake the earth, & cry repentance unto every people, & I would declare
 unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance, & the plan of redemption, that they
 should repent & come unto our God, that there might be no more sorrow upon all
 the face of the earth. I feel behold I am a man & do sin in my wish, for I know
 not to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me, I know
 not ought to know upon my desires, the firm decree of a just God, for I know
 that he granteth unto men according to their desires, whether it be unto death
 or unto life, & I know that he hath allotted unto men great, & doeth unto them
 decrees which are ^{unalterable} according to their wills, whether they be unto
 salvation or unto destruction, & I know that good & evil have come to pass
 all men, or he that knoweth not good from evil, is blameless, but he that know-
 eth good & evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desire

good or evil, life or death, joy or ^{removal} of conscience, now seeing that I know
on these things, why should I care now that I perform the work to which I have
been called? why should I desire that I was an angel, that I could go & converse
all the ends of the earth, for he hath the Lord, hath grant unto all nations of their own
tongues to teach his word, & say in wisdom all that he will, & that
they should know therefore, we see that the Lord hath counsel in ^{his} wisdom, above
all things, to that which I am to trust & know that which the Lord hath commanded
me, & I glory in it, it is not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord
hath commanded, my glory is this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instru-
ment in the hands of God, in bringing some soul to repentance, & this is my joy, &
behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, & coming to the Lord
their God, then my soul is filled with joy, then I do remember when the
Lord hath done his merciful work, that he hath heard my prayer, & then I do remem-
ber his merciful arm which he extended towards me, & I do remember
when the Captain of my fathers, I do surely do know that the Lord did deli-
ver the multitude of bondage, by this did establish his church, & the Lord God
the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, & the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of
bondage, & I do always remember the Captain of my fathers, that I am glad
indeed I delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians, did deliver them out of
bondage, & I do that same God did establish his church among them, & I do that
same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people,
& hath given me much success, inasmuch that my joy is full, but I do not glory
in my own success alone, but my joy is more full, because of the success of my
brethren, ^{who} have been up to the land of ^{the} ^{Lord}, behold they have labored
exceedingly, & have brought forth much fruit, & how great shall be the reward
and, now, when I think of the success of these my brethren, my soul is carried
away, even to the separation, it pains the body, as it were, so great is my joy,
& now may God grant unto these my brethren that they may sit down in the king-
doms, & I do also all that ^{which} are the fruit of their labors that
they may go no more, but that they may praise him forever, & may God
grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken.

Chapter. xvi. Behold now it came to pass that of the
people of the Nephites, which was established in the land of ^{the} ^{Lord}, & also after the
Lamanites were driven out of the land & their dead were buried by the people
of the land, now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of
their numbers, neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered, but it came to
pass that after they had buried them, ^{dead} it also often the days of fasting to mourn
ing to prepare it was in the winter of the night of the judges, ^{the people}

of the then began to be continual space throughout all the land yea & the
people did seem to keep the commandments of ^{the Lord} & they were strict
in observing the ordinances of God according to the law of Moses. The men began
to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled & thus the people did have
a continuance in all the righteousness of the law. The judgments the people of Israel
did come to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the king there was continual
peace but it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year there came a man
into the land of Chanaan his name was Antiochus for he began to preach unto the
people against the traditions which had been written by the prophets concerning
the coming of Christ now there was no law against a man's belief for it was
strictly contrary to the commandments of God that there should bring men on to unequal
grounds for thus saith the Lord I have set this day where I will come now
if a man desired to come yea it was his privilege & a man if he believed in God's
was his privilege to serve him but if he did not believe in him there was no
law to punish him but if he murdered he was punished unto death & if he stole
he was also punished & if he stole he was also punished & if he committed adultery
he was also punished if he for all this wickedness they were punished for there was
a law that men should be judged according to their crimes never the less there was
no law against a man's belief therefore a man was punished only for the crimes
which he had done therefore all men were on equal grounds & this Antiochus whose
name was Antiochus the law could have no hold upon him for he began to preach
unto the people that there should be no Christ & often this Antiochus did preach
saying O ye that are bound down under a foolish & a vain hope why do ye hope
your selves with such foolish things why do ye look for a Christ for no man can
know of any thing which is to come he hold these things which ye call prophe-
cies which ye say are handed down by holy prophets he hold they are foolish
traditions of your fathers how do ye know of their truth he hold ye cannot
know of things which ye do not see them for ye cannot know that there shall be a
Christ if I look forward & say that ye see a remission of your sins but he hold
let it be the effect of a blinded mind & this derangement of your minds comes
because of the traditions of your fathers which lead you away into a belief
of things which are not so & many more such things did he say unto them
telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of ^{men} ~~them~~
but that every man should in this life according to the management of the
cultural therefore every man should be according to his genius & that ev-
ery man should be according to his strength & what a man did was
his crime & thus he did preach unto them leading away the hearts of many &
raising them to lift up their heads in their wickedness yea leading away many

And when he was come to the land of the Nephites, he began to preach, saying that when a man was dead that was the end of him, this was man's end even to the land of Jordan also to preach these things among the people of ^{the} Nephites, which was once the people of the Lemnites but behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites for they took him & bound him & carried him before the high priest ^{which} was a high priest over that people & he came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land, ~~that came to pass that he~~ came over into the land of Gideon & began to preach unto them also & here he did not have much success for he was taken & bound & carried before the high priest & also before the chief judge over the land & it came to pass that the high priest said unto him why do ye go a-howl perverting the ways of the Lord why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ to interrupt their iniquities why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets now the high priest's name was Gideon & he said unto him because ye do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers & because ye do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the Law's ordinances & performances which are laid down by our fathers to bind them to do as we do & to have authority over them to keep them in ignorance that they may not lift up their heads but brought down according to thy words ye say that this people is a free people he holds & says they are in bondage ye say that these ancient prophets are true he holds & says that ye do not know that they are true ye say that this people is a guilty & a fallen people because of the transgression of a man but he holds & says that a child is not guilt because of its parents ye say that Christ shall come but he holds & says that ye do not know that there shall be no Christ ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world & thus ye lead away this people & then the foolish traditions of your fathers & according to your own devices ye keep them down & enslave them in bondage that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands that they should not look up with boldness & that they should not enjoy their rights & privileges ye say ye do not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests ^{which} ye take them according to their desires & have brought them to be bound by their traditions & their dreams & their whims & their fictions & their pretended mysteries that they should if they did not do according to their words offend some unknown being ^{which} they say is God a being who has never been seen nor known ^{which} never was nor ever will be known when the high priest & the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart & when they saw that he would strive even against God they would not make any reply to his words but they caused that he should be bound & they delivered him up into the hands of the officers & sent him to the land of Gideon

that he might be brought before Adama the Chief Judge ^{which was} 47
gentle in all the ^{and} ^{and} came to pass that when he was brought before Ad-
ma the Chief Judge that he did go on in the same manner as he did in the
land of Gideon yea he went on to blasphemy & he did rise up in great swell-
ing words before Adma & did write against the Priests & teachers accusing them
of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers for the sake
of glutting in the labours of the people now Adma saith unto him, thank thou
me that we do not glut ourselves upon the labours of this people for he
said I have laboured even from the commencement of the reign of the judges
until now with mine own hands for my support notwithstanding
my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my
people notwithstanding the many labours which I have performed in the
church I have never received so much as even one Shilling for my labour
neither have any of my brethren save it were in the Judges men that I have
received only according to law for a while & now if we do not receive any
thing for our labours in the church what doth it profit us to labour in the
church save it were to declare the truth that we may have rejoicings in
the joy of our brethren then he saith that we preach unto this people
to get gain when thou thyself knowest that we receive no gain
now he lieth then that we decline this people that cannot such joy in
their hearts & Horian answered saying Adma saith unto him, do-
iest thou that there is a God & I answered nay now Adma saith unto
him ^{will} ye deny again that there is a God & also deny the Christ for he hold
saith unto you I know there is a God & also that Christ shall come & rise what
evidence have ye that there is a God or that Christ cometh now I say unto
you that ye have none said he by your word only but he hold I have all
things as testimony that these things are true & ye also have all things as
testimony unto you that they are true & will ye deny them believest thou
that these things are true he hold I know that thou believest but thou
art possessed with a lying spirit & ye have put off the spirit of God that it
may have no place in you but the devil hath taken possession of you & he doth
carry you about working devices that he may destroy the people of God & now
Horian saith unto Adma if thou wilt shew me a sign that I may be con-
vinced that there is a God ye shew unto me that he hath power is then will
I be convinced of the truth of thy words but Adma saith unto him thou
shalt have signs enough will ye tempt your God will ye say shew unto
me a sign when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren is also all
the holy prophets & the scriptures are laid before thee & all things denote

248 There is a good yea when the earth & all things that ~~are~~ upon the face of it yield
motion yea & also all the planets which move in their regular form do
witness that there is a supreme ruler & yet days go a head leading away the
heart of the people. He lying under them there is no good yea with yeeding
against all these witnesses. He said yea shall deny except ye shall shew
me a sign. now it came to pass that Alma said unto him he hold I am given
and because of the hardness of your heart yea that ye will still receive the
it of the truth that thy soul may be destroyed but he hold it is better that
thy soul should be lost than that there should be the means of bringing
many souls down to destruction by thy lying & by thy flattering words
therefore if thou shalt deny again he hold God shall smite thee that thou
shalt become dumb that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more that
thou shalt not deceive this people any more now. He said he said unto him
I do not deny the existence of a God but I do not believe that there is a God
do say alie that ye do not know that there is a God & except ye shew me a sign
will not believe now Alma said unto him this will I give unto thee
for a sign that thou shalt be made dumb according to my words do
say that in the name of God that ye shall be struck dumb that ye shall
no more have utterance now when Alma had said these words Porchon
was struck dumb that he could not have utterance according to the words
of Alma & now when the ^{same} man was brought into his hand & written unto
Porchon saying art thou convinced of the presence of a God in whom did ye
believe that Alma should shew his sign & witness that he should off
set others to shew unto thee a sign ^{hehold} he hath shewed unto thee a sign
& now will ye dispute more & I will shew but from his hand I wrote saying
know that I am dumb for I cannot speak & I know that nothing could
the power of God could bring this upon me ye do also know that there was a
God but he hold he hath deceived me for he appeared unto me in the
form of an angel & said unto me ye do maintain this people for they have all gone
astray & I know not of a God & he sayeth unto me there is no God yea he
taught me that which I should say & I have taught his words & I taught them
because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind & I taught them even until
I had much success in iniquity that is why he lieth that this man had
& for this cause I withheld the truth even until I have brought this great loss
upon me now when he had said this he was caught that Alma should ^{prophesy}
God that the case might be taken from him but Alma said unto him if this
case should be taken from thee thou shouldst again lead away the hearts of
this people therefore it shall be unto thee even as the Lord hath said & I come

to pass that the cause was not taken off of Honi-ha but he was 249
was out & went about from house to house a begging for his soul now
the knowledge of what had happened unto Honi-ha was immediately publis-
hed throughout all the land yea the broad land was sent forth by the
chief judge to all the people in the land declaring unto those who had
believed in the words of Honi-ha that they must speedily repent but
the same judgments would come unto them & it came to pass that they
were all convinced of the wickedness of Honi-ha therefore they were all conver-
ted again unto the Lord & this put an end to the iniquity of the manner
of Honi-ha & Honi-ha did go about from house to house a begging for
his support & it came to pass that as he went forth among the people yea am-
ong a people ~~which~~ ^{who} had separated themselves from the Nephites & called
themselves Garamites being lead by a man whose name was Gorm &
as he went forth amongst them he told he was sorrowful & stricken down
even until he was dead & thus we see the end of him who perverted the
ways of the Lord & thus we see that the Lord will not suffer his
children at the last day but doth speedily drag them down to hell now
it came to pass that after the end of Honi-ha & Gorm having received tid-
ings that the Garamites were perverting the ways of the Lord & that Gorm
~~was~~ ^{who} was their leader was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to demons
his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people
and was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people
therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Garam-
ites from the Nephites now the Garamites had gathered themselves together in
a land which they called Bountiful which was east of the land of Garamen-
la which lay nearly bordering upon the sea shore which was south of the
land of Gorm which also bordered upon the wilderness south which wilder-
ness was full of the Lamanites now the Nephites greatly feared that the Garam-
ites would enter into a confederance with the Lamanites & that it would
be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites & now as the preaching of the
word had had a greater tendency to lead the people to do that which was just
yea it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than
the sword or any thing else which had happened unto them therefore Al-
ma thought it was expedient that they should by the virtue of the word
of God therefore he took with him Aaron & Orin & Timoni he did leave
him in the church in Garamenla but the Lamanites he took with him
& a brother named Gorm ^{which} ~~was~~ ^{was} ~~in~~ ^{at} Melch & he also took
two of his sons now the eldest of his sons he took not with ^{him} his name

28. was the same man but the names of these ~~tribes~~ he took with him were
I will leave it to you to see if there are the names of those ~~tribes~~ ^{which} were with him among
the Jeronites to preach unto them the word now the Jeronites were descended
from the Ishites therefore they had the word of God preached unto them but
they were ~~falling~~ ^{falling} into great errors for they would not observe to keep the Comma-
ndments of God's law & to be true according to the law of Moses neither would they
observe the ordinances of the Church to continue in prayer & supplication
to God daily that they might not enter into temptation yea in fine that
they did bring out the ways of the Lord in ^{many very many} instances therefore for
this cause Salomon his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto
them now when they had come into the land behold to their astonishment
they found that the Jeronites had built Synagogues & that they did gather
themselves together on one day of the week which day they did call the day
of the Lord & they did worship a ^{man} in a manner which Salomon & his brethren
had never beheld for they had a place built up in the center of their Syna-
gogue a ^{place} of standing which was right above the head of the top they
would only admit one person therefore whosoever desired to worship
must go up to the place upon the top thereof & kneel with his hands
towards Heaven & cry with a loud voice saying holy holy God me believe
that thou art God & me believe that thou art holy & that thou hast a spirit
& that thou art a spirit & that thou wilt be a spirit forever holy God me
believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren & we do not be-
lieve in the traditions of our brethren which was handed down to them by
the Elders of their fathers but we believe that thou hast elected
us to be thy holy children & so thou hast made it known unto us that
there shall be no Christ but thou art the same yesterday today & forever &
thou hast elected us that we shall be saved whilst all around us
are elected too be cast by thy wrath down to hell for the which holy-
ness O God we thank thee & we also thank thee that thou hast elected us
that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren which
lead us down to a foolish Christ which doth lead their hearts
to, may I say from thee O God & again we thank thee O God that we
are a chosen people if now now it came to pass that of Salomon & his brethren
& his sons had heard these prayers they were astonished beyond all measure
for behold one man did so & so offer up these same prayers now the
place was called by them Carmusim from which being interpreted is the
holy stand now from that stand they did offer up every man the sel-
lenger unto God thanking their God that they were chosen of him & that the

did not read them away after the traditions of their brethren & that their hearts
were not gladdened by the things to come which they knew nothing ab-
out & now the people had all of good of thanks of their manner they
returned to their homes, & in a short time they came again until they had accom-
plished themselves together against the holy stand to give up thanks of their
manner now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved for he saw that they
were wicked & a people of people, for he saw that their hearts were set upon
gold & upon silver & upon all manner of fine goods & he also saw that their
hearts were lifted up unto great boasting in their pride & he lifted
up his voice to Heaven & cried saying O how long O Lord wilt thou suffer
that thy servants shall dwell here to long in the flesh to behold such great
wickedness among the children of men he held O Lord thy eye unto this & yet
their hearts are swallowed up in their pride he held O Lord thy eye unto this
with their mouths while they are puffed up even to greatness with the vain
things of the world he held O Lord thy eye unto this & their hearts are
filled with gold & all their precious things which they are
commanded with he held their hearts are set upon them & yet they cry unto
thee & say we thank thee O Lord for we are chosen people unto thee while others
shall perish & yet they say that thou hast made it known unto them that thou
shalt be rich O Lord how long wilt thou suffer that such wicked-
ness & iniquity shall be among thy people O Lord wilt thou give me strength
that I may bear with mine iniquities for I am in pain & such wickedness
among thy people O Lord my soul O Lord my heart is exceeding sorrowful
with thou comfort my soul in Christ O Lord wilt thou grant unto me that
I may have strength that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which
shall come upon me because of the iniquity of this people O Lord wilt
thou comfort my soul & give unto me success & also my fellow laborers
who ~~were~~ ^{are} with me & give them strength O Lord wilt thou grant unto them that they may
have strength that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon
them because of the iniquities of this people O Lord wilt thou grant unto us that
we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ he held O Lord
their souls are precious & many of them are our dear brethren therefore give unto
us O Lord power & wisdom that we may bring these dear brethren again unto thee
now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words that he clasped his
hands upon all they ~~were~~ ^{who} were with him & he held as he clasped his hands up-
on them they were filled with the holy spirit & after that they did separate

humble blessed are ye for a man sometimes if he is compelled to / 133
to humble himself repentance & know surely who so ever repenteth shall find
mercy & in that findeth mercy & endureth to the end the same shall be saved
it now as I said unto you that because ye were compelled to be humble ye
were blessed do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble
themselves because of the inward ye & he that truly humbleth himself & repenteth
of his sins & endureth to the end the same shall be ^{blessed} ~~saved~~ ^{ye} much more
so blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their ex-
ceeding poverty therefore blessed are they who humbleth themselves with-
out being compelled to be humble, or rather in other words, blessed
is he that believeth in the word of God & is baptised without stubbornness of
heart & ye without being brought to know the word, or even compelled
to know, he & she will believe, yea there are many ^{who} ~~which~~ do say if there
will show unto us a sign from Heaven, then we shall know of a surety then
we shall believe. now art is this faith? he holdeth say unto you nay for if
a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it &
now how much more caused is he that knoweth the will of God's do that
not, for he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe & believeth in
to transgression of this thing ye must judge he holdeth say unto you that
it is on the one hand even as it is on the other it shall be unto every man ac-
cording to his word & now as I said concerning faith, faith is not to have a perfect
knowledge of things, therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not ^{seen} ~~known~~
which are true & now he holdeth say unto you that I would that ye should be
wiser that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name & therefore
he desireth in the first place that ye should believe & ye given on his word & now
he imparteth his word by angels unto many, not only men but women also
now this is not all little children do have words given unto them many
times which ~~do~~ confound the mind & the cunning & now my beloved bre-
thren, ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflic-
ted & cast out, now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to aid
ye only according to that which is true, I do not mean that ye all ye
have been compelled to humble yourselves, for truly believe there are some among
you ^{who} ~~which~~ would humble themselves, if they be in what a case I cannot
say he might, now as I said concerning faith that it was not a perfect know-
ledge, even so it is with my words, ye cannot know of them surely at first, and
perfection, ye more than faith is a perfect knowledge, but he holdeth if ye
will I will make & answer your faculties, I write an experiment upon my words, &
oversee a part of it, faith, ye say, if ye can no more than desire to believe, let

151 This closing mark in you even unto ye believe in a manner that ye can
 give place for a portion of my words, now we will compare the word unto a
 seed, now if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold,
 if it be a bad seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief,
 that ye will resist the spirit of the Lord, hehold it will begin to smelt with
 in your hearts, & when you feel these smelting motions, ye will begin to say
 within yourselves, it must needs be, that this is a good seed, or that the word
 is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my subject, it beginneth to enlighten my
 understanding, & it beginneth to be delicious to me, now behold, would not
 this increase your faith? now unto you ye say, nevertheless it hath not grown up
 to a perfect knowledge, but we hold as the seed smelteth, & sprouteth, & begin
 neth to grow, then ye must needs say, that the seed is good, for behold it smelteth
 & sprouteth, & beginneth to grow, now behold, will not this strengthen your faith? & if
 it will strengthen your faith, for ye will say, I know that this is a good seed, for be-
 hold it smelteth & beginneth to grow, & now behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed?
 I say unto you yea, for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness, therefore, if a
 seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore
 it is cast away, & now behold, because ye have tried the experiment, & plant-
 ed the seed, & it smelteth, & sprouteth, & beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that
 the seed is good, & now behold, is your knowledge perfect? if ye say your knowledge is
 perfect in that thing, your faith is dormant, this because you know, that the
 word hath smelted your conscience, & ye now know that it hath smelted, & that your
 understanding doth begin to be enlightened, & your mind doth begin to expand, &
 then is not this unto you good, because it is right, & whole some, & light-
 is good, because it is desirable, therefore, ye must know that it is good, & now
 behold, if ye have tested this light, is your knowledge perfect? behold, I say unto
 you no, neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised
 your faith to plant the seed, that ye might by the experiment, to know if
 the seed ~~was~~ good, & behold, in the fall, beginneth to grow, ye will say, let us
 nourish it, with great care, that it may not rot, that it may grow up, bring
 forth fruit unto us, now behold, if ye nourish it, with much care, it will
 rot, and so even as being sown, but if ye neglect, the bee & take
 me, though I be in unbelief, behold it will not get any root, & when
 the heat of the sun cometh, & scorcheth it, because it hath no root, it run-
 neth away, & ye say, but it is not ^{not} grow, this is not because the seed
 was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desired,
 but it is, because your ground is barren, & ye will not nourish the seed, & then
 I say, ye cannot have the fruit thereof, & thus it is, if ye will not nourish the

make known unto you what ye should do because of your afflictions. & I
have also spoken some words unto you to purify your mindings. & he hath
instructed you unto faith, & to patience, & you even that ye would have some
ch. with as men to have the word in your hearts, that ye may, by the captain
of the Lord's army, we have beheld that the great question which is in
your minds, is whether the word be in the heart of God, or whether there sh-
all be no God. & ye also behold that my brother hath shown unto you in
many instances, that the word is in Christ, unto salvation. my brother
hath called upon the Father, Jesus, & the Father hath answered through the Son
& hath also upon the words of Jesus, & also he hath appeared unto those
to show that these things are true. & now, he holdeth forth, testify unto you, of my
self, that these things are true. he holdeth forth unto you, that the Father, that
Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgre-
ssions of his people, & that he shall atone for the sins of the world. & then said
God, that he should be obedient, that an atonement should be made for
according to the great plan of the Eternal Father. There must be an atonement made
on the earth, mankind must unavoidably perish, & all are hardened, & all
are setting up an idol, & must perish, except it be through the atonement
which it is expedient should be made. & it is expedient that there sh-
ould be a great & last sacrifice made, & sacrifice of many, & that he sh-
ould be of your manner of thought, for it shall not be a human sacrifice, but it
must be an infinite & eternal sacrifice. now there is no other man that
can sacrifice his own blood, which will atone for the sins of another man.
if a man murders, he holdeth with him a law, which is just, & take the life of his
brother. & say unto you, my brother, the law requires the life of him who hath mur-
dered, & therefore, if he is not willing, which is not of an infinite atonement, which
will suffice for the sins of the world, therefore it is expedient that there sh-
ould be a great & last sacrifice, & then shall there be an atonement. & then shall
it be a stop to the shedding of blood, then shall the law of others be fulfilled, &
also it shall all be fulfilled, & every man shall have his reward, & none shall be
behold, in the whole meaning of the language, which is pointing to that
great & last sacrifice, that great & last sacrifice will be the Son of God, & by
infinite & eternal, thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall be
true on his name, this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about
at the home of man, which overcomes the justice & brings about mea-
surement, & man that they may have faith, & unto repentance, & thus mercy
can satisfy the demands of justice, & increase them in the arms of God.
while it, that overcomes no faith, & repentance, is exposed to that

possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that ye & your spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world, for he holdeth it as mine, forasmuch as I have said, he doth say, when I am united to it, he holdeth it as mine, ^{he is subject to} the spirit of the devil, & he doth say, ye have him. Therefore the spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you & hath no place in you & the devil hath all power over you & this is the final state of them who will not know, because the Lord hath said, he doth will, not in vain, he doth will, he doth will, the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell, ye & he hath also said that the righteous should sit down in his kingdom to some measure, but their impairments should be made white, through the blood of the Son of man. Now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things & that ye should work out your salvation with fear & trembling, God & that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ, that ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive & take upon you the name of Christ & that ye humble yourselves unto the dust & worship God in whatsoever place ye may, be it in spirit & in truth & that ye be in thanksgiving daily for the many mercies & blessings which he doth bestow upon you & I beseech you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be tempted by the temptations of the devil that he may not overcome you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day, for he hath said, he will overthrow you, no good thing & now, my beloved brethren, would I have you to have patience & that ye bear, with all manner of afflictions that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out, because of your unbelief & your unbelief, lest ye become winners like unto them, but that ye have patience & bear with those afflictions with a firm hope that ye shall overcome & finally your afflictions shall come to pass, that after I should have seen a number of these things, they withdrew themselves from the multitude & came over into the land of Goshen, & the rest of the brethren, after they had been such a time, the word unto the Garamites became over into the land of Goshen, but it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Garamites had concurred together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, in their meeting, because of the word which did destroy their souls, that they would not hearken unto the words, & they sent & gathered together throughout all the land all the people & concurred with them concerning the words, which had been spoken unto them, & their priests & their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires, therefore they found out, finally, the minds of all the people, but it came to pass that after the people had found out the minds of all the people, those ^{which} were in favor of the words which had

245. been spoken by Alma & his brethren were cast out of the land & they
 were driven out of the land of Gideon & came to pass
 that Alma & his brethren did minister unto them, now the people of the Gadi-
 ites were angry with the ^{to the} people of Shumen ^{chiefs} who were in Gideon & the people of
 the Gadiates, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Shumen
 desiring them that they should cast off their land all those ^{who} came over
 from Gideon to them (and as he breathed out many threatening words against them,
 now the people of Shumen did not hear them, words therefore they did not cast
 them out but they did receive all the power of the Gadiates that came over unto
 them & they did nourish them, did clothe them, did give unto them lands
 for their inheritance & they did administer unto them according to their ne-
 cessities, now they did stir up the Gadiates to anger against the people of Shu-
 men, & they began to mix with the Gadiates, to stir them up also to anger
 against the Shumens, thus the Gadiates & the Shumens began to make preparations
 for war against the people of Shumen & also against the Gadiates, & ended the
 seven hundredth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the land.
 Alma departed out of the land of Gideon & came over into the land of Helik
 & gave place in the land of Gideon for the armies of the Nephites that it might come
 out with the armies of the Shumens & the armies of the Gadiates, & there was made
 a war between the Shumens & the Nephites in the eighth year of the
 reign of the judges an account shall be given hereafter of their wars.
 Alma & his brethren & his brethren & also the two hundred and
 returned to the land of Gadiates after having given instruments in the han-
 ds of God of bringing many of the Gadiates to repentance, as many as
 were brought to repentance were driven out of their land, but they
 have lands for their inheritance in the land of Gideon & they have taken
 up arms to defend themselves, their wives, their children & their lands.
 now Alma, being grieved in the iniquity of his people, & for the
 wars & the blood shed, & the contentions which were among them, having
 been to declare the word of God, to declare the word among all the people
 in order to bring that the hearts of the people began to wear hard, &
 to be turned away from the word, because of the strictness of the
 word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful, therefore he caused that
 his sons should be gathered together, but he might give unto them
 every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining
 unto righteousness, we have an account of his
 commandments, which he gave unto them according to
 his own record.

Chapter XVIII

261

the Commandments of Alma to his Son Helaman
My Son Helaman, my words unto you that I have said
ye shall keep the Commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land. I would that
ye should do as I have done in remembering the captivity of our fathers for they were
in bondage & were would deliver them except it were the God of Abraham & the
God of Isaac & the God of Jacob & he surely did deliver them in their afflictions &
now my Son Helaman, behold thou art in thy youth & therefore I beseech of
thee that thou wilt hear my words & learn of me for I know that when
soever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials & their
troubles & their afflictions & shall be lifted up at the last day & I would not
that ye think that I know of myself, not of the temporal but of the spirit
not not of the carnal mind but of God now he hold I pray unto you if I had
not been born of God I should not have known these things but God hath by
the mouth of his holy angel made these things known unto me not of any man
things of myself I was much about with the Sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy
the Church of God, but behold God sent his holy angel to stand by me
& behold he spake unto us as it were the voice of thunder & the whole earth
did tremble beneath our feet & we all fell to the earth, in the morning
when I came upon us, but he held the voice said unto me arise & stand up
& behold the angel & he said unto me if thou wilt call thyself be
destroyed we know more to destroy the Church of God & I came to pass that I fell
to the earth & it was for the space of three days & nights that I could not open my
mouth then had I the use of my limbs the angel spake more things unto me
which were heard by none then but I did not hear them for when I heard
the words of that voice he destroyed of thyself we know more to destroy the Church
of God I was struck with such great fear & amazement that I thought I should
be destroyed that I fell to the earth & I did hear no more but I was con-
vulsed with a mortal torment for my soul was harassed up to the greatest degree &
racked with all my sins ye I did remember, all my sins & iniquities for which I
was tormented with the pains of hell & I saw that I had rebelled against my
God & that I had not kept his holy commandments & that I had murdered many of his
children or rather led them away unto destruction & as I thought of this I had
been my iniquities that the very thoughts of coming into the presence of
my God did rack my soul with insupportable sorrow & I thought that I
could be banished & become extinct both soul & body & I thought that I
had sought to stand in the presence of my God & I was not of him

262nd In these days & for three nights was I racked even with the pain of
a hammer. I could not come to pass that I was thus racked with torment while
I was hampered up by the memory of my many sins behold I remembered also
to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of Jesus
Christ a Son of God to atone for the sins of the world now as my mind caught
hold upon this thought I cried within my heart O Jesus thou Son of God have
mercy on me who am in the gall of bitterness & am increased about by the
everlasting chains of death & now behold where I thought this I could remember
my pains in more years was hampered up by the memory of my sins as much
as I what say I what marvels light I did behold I did my soul was filled
with joy it exceeded as was my pain I said say unto you my Son "at this time
be nothing so convenient as so bitter as was my pain I said again I say unto you my
Son that on the other hand there can be nothing so exquisite & sweet as was
my ^{joy} I said to me thought I saw even as our father I did see God sitting upon
his throne surrounded with numerous concourses of angels in the attire
of singing & praising their God & my soul did long to be there but he held
my limbs & I saw him then stronger again & I stood upon my feet & did manifestly unto
the people that I had been born of God & from that time even until now I
have laboured without ceasing that I might bring souls unto repentance that
I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste that they might
also be born of God & be filled with the holy Ghost & now behold O my
Son the Lord doth give me exceeding great joy in the fruit of my labours for
because of the word which he hath imparted unto me behold many have been
born of God & have tasted & have seen as I have seen
therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken and do know & the know-
ledge which I have of God & have been supported under trials & troubles of every
kind & yet in all manner of afflictions yet God hath delivered me from prison
& from bonds & from death & I do put my trust in him & he will still deliver me
to know that he will raise me up at the last day to dwell with him in glory
yet I will praise him forever for he hath brought our fathers out of Egypt & he
hath swallowed up the Egyptians in the sea & he led them by his power into
the promised land & yet he hath delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time
to time & yet he hath also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem & he hath
also by his everlasting power delivered them out of bondage & captivity from time
to time & down to the present day & I have always retained in remembrance
that I am a sinner & I am also a sinner & I am also a sinner & I have done it

...but he hold my son, this is not all, I say, but I shall keep the commandments of God, that I may
be in the land, & ye shall be able to know also that I am a man of God, & ye shall not keep the
commandments of God, ye shall be cut off from his presence, now this is according
to his word, & now, my Son, I command you that ye take the records, which
have been entrusted with me, & I command you that ye keep a
record of all the things which are done among the people of this land, all the
things which have been kept, or have kept them for a wise purpose, that they may be a witness of the things which have been done among the
people, & the records of the holy Scriptures upon them, which have been given
by our forefathers, even from the beginning, & he hold it had been prophesied
by our fathers, that they should be kept, & handed down from one generation to another, & they should be kept & preserved by the hand of the Lord, until they should go forth unto
every nation, kindred, & tongue of people, that they should know of the mysteries
contained therein, & now he hold, if they are kept, they must retain their
brightness, & they will retain their brightness, & ye also shall all the plates
which contain that which is holy, & now ye may suppose that this is a
great thing, but he hold, I say unto you, that by small & simple things, as a
great thing, brought to pass, & small means in many instances doth confound the
wise, & the Lord God doth work by means, to bring about his great & eternal purposes, & by using small means the Lord doth confound the wise, & bringeth about
the salvation of many souls, & now it hath been said, been written in fact, that
these things should be preserved, or he hold, they have enlarged the memory
of the people, & now many of the sons of men, & brought them to
the knowledge of their God, unto the salvation of their souls, & now I say unto you
that it is not for these things, that these records do contain, which are in the plates
& in the brethren could not have conceived so many things, & the
records of the iniquity, & the iniquity of the iniquity, & the records of the iniquity
brought them unto redemption, & now they brought them to the knowledge
of the Lord their God, & to reside in Jesus Christ, their redeemer, & who know
eth, but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, & a
also many thousands of our afflicted brethren, the ^{lost} ^{tribe} ^{of} ^{Israel}, ^{who} ^{are} ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{land} ^{of} ^{the} ^{living} ^{dead}, &
now handing them, & iniquity, & iniquity, to the knowledge of their God
now, these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me, therefore
shall I have & it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose,
which purpose is known unto God, for all the counsel in wisdom on this.

prophesied that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled which he spake saying I will
bring to the out of darkness unto light all their secret works & their
abominations & except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth
I will bring to light all their secrets & abominations ^{to every nation} that
shall hereafter possess the land & now my ^{son} we see that they did not repent
therefore they have been destroyed & therefore the word of God has been fulfilled & their
secret abominations have been brought out of darkness & made known
to us & now my Son command you that ye retain all their oaths & their covenants
& their agreements in their secret abominations & all their signs & their words
so ye shall retain from this people that they know them not lest peradventure they
should fall into darkness & so ye shall be destroyed for behold there is a curse upon
all this land that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness
according to the power of God when they are fully ripe therefore desire that this
people might not be destroyed therefore ye shall keep their secret plans
their oaths & their covenants from this people & only their wickedness & their
murders & their abominations shall ye make known unto them & ye shall teach
them to abhor such wickedness & abominations & murders & ye shall also teach
them that such people were destroyed on account of their wickedness & abomi-
nations & their murders for behold they murdered all the prophets of the Lord
who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities & the
blood of these ^{prophets} they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for avenge
me upon these ^{murderers} were their murderers & thus the judgments of God did
come upon them workers of darkness & secret combinations & a curse be the same
forever & ever unto those workers of darkness & secret combinations & unto
destruction except they repent before they are fully ripe & now my Son retain
the words which I have spoken unto you that ye teach not these secret plans unto the peo-
ple but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin & iniquity preach unto
them repentance & faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to humble them-
selves to be meek & lowly in heart teach them to withstand every temptation of
the devil with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ teach them to render many
of good works but to be meek & lowly in heart for such shall find rest to their
souls. One remember my Son & learn wisdom in thy youth ye learn in thy youth to
keep the commandments of God & ye shall cry unto God for all thy support & ye shall
thy doings be unto the Lord & whithersoever thou goest let it be in the name
of the Lord & let thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord & let the affections of thy heart
be placed upon the Lord forever & ever the Lord in all thy doings & he will di-
rect thee for good & when thou liest down at night lay down unto the Lord
that he may watch over you in your sleep & when thou risest in the morning

266. And he said unto them, Thanks be unto God, if ye always do these things ye shall be
lifted up at the last day & now my Son I have somewhat to say concerning
the thing which our fathers call a ball or director or a compass called a
Liahona which is being interpreted a compass & the Lord prepared it & he hold
these cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship &
behold it was prepared to show unto our fathers the ^{which} cause of their should
travel in the wilderness & it did work for them according to their faith
in God therefore if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those
spindles should show the way they should go behold it was done therefore they
had this miracle & also many other miracles wrought by the power of God
day by day nevertheless because these miracles were wrought by small means
and notwithstanding it did show unto them marvelous works they were clothed &
forgot to conceive their faith & diligence & then those marvelous works
ceased & they did not progress in their journey therefore they tarried in
the wilderness and did not travel a direct course & were afflicted with hunger
& thirst because of their transgressions & now my Son I would that ye should
understand that these things are not without a shadow for as our fathers
were clothed to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal)
they did not prosper even so it is with things which are spiritual for be-
hold it is ^{as} a sign to give heed to the word of Christ which will point to your
eternal cause to eternal bliss as it was a sign for them to give heed to this
compass which would point unto them a direct course to the promised land &
now I say that not a type in this thing for just as surely as this director did
bring our fathers by following its course to the promised land shall the word of Christ
if we follow ^{the word} I say as surely as beyond this vale of ^{some} things into a land of promise
of promise O my Son do not let us be clothed because of the sameness of the way
for so we are with our fathers for as was it prepared for them that if they
would look they might live even so it is with us the way is prepared &
if we will look we may live forever & now my Son see that ye take care
of these sacred things ye see that ye look to God & live go unto this people &
declare the word & be sober my Son farewell Chapter XVIII

The Commandments of Alma to his Son Shiblon

O my Son give unto my words for I say unto you even as I said unto the
Laman that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper
in the land & inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be
cut off from his presence & now my Son I trust that I shall have great joy in you

because of your stedfastness & your faithfulness unto God for as you have been
commanded in your youth to look to the Lord your God even so I hope that you will
remain in his service his commandments for blessed is he that endureth to the end
I say unto you my Son that I have said unto you already because of thy faith-
fulness thy diligence & thy patience & thy long suffering among the people of the Gen-
tiles I know that there was in heart ye & I also know that there was in you
ed for the words sake & there didst hear all these things with patience because the
Lord was with thee & now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee for
now my Son I think I would that ye should remember that as much as ye shall
put your trust in God ^{ye} shall be delivered out of your trials & your
troubles & your afflictions & ye shall be lifted up at the last day now my Son
I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself but it is the
spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me I
should not have known of God I should not have known these things but behold the
Lord in his great mercy ^{sent} his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the
mouth of the tradition among his people ye shall have an angel face to face he
spoke with me & his voice was as thunder it shook the whole earth & came
to pass that I was three days & three nights in the most bitter pains & anguish
of soul & never until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy did I see
in a remission of my sins but he held I did cry unto him & I did find place to my
soul & now my Son I have told you that that ye may learn wisdom that ye may
know that there is another way now measure whereby man can be saved only in
& through Christ he hold he is the life & the life of the world he hold he is the
word of truth & righteousness & now ye have begun to teach the word even so
I would that ye should continue to teach & I would that ye would be dis-
ciples & laborers in all things see that ye are not lifted up unto pride for-
see that ye do not trust in your own wisdom more than your much thoughts will be-
lieve but not our bareness & also see that ye hide all your passions that ye may
be lifted with love see that ye refrain from idleness do not pray as the Gen-
tiles do for ye have seen that they pray to the head of men & to the priests
for their wisdom do not say O Lord I thank thee that we are better than
our brethren but rather say O Lord forgive my sin worthiness & remember my
brethren in mercy & acknowledge your own sinfulness before God at all times
& may the Lord bless your soul & receive you at the last day into his kingdom
to sit down in peace now my Son I have taught the word unto this people he hold
my Son farewell Chapter XIX

the Commandments of Amate his Son (Orantion)

1832 And now my Son I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I
said to thy brother for behold have ye not observed the stedfastness of thy brother his
faithfulness & his diligence in keeping the commandments of God his father has he
not set a good example for thee? Now didst not give so much heed unto my
words as did thy brother among the people of the Nephites now this is what
I have against thee thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength & thy mind
and this is not all my Son thou didst do that which was grievous unto me for
thou didst forsake the ministry & didst go over into the land of Gadianton among the
hordes of the Lamanites after the Scarlet Label yea he did steal away the hearts
of many but this was no excuse for thee my Son thou shouldst have
attended to the ministry wherein with thou wast entrusted know ye not my
Son that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord yea such
abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or
denying the Holy Ghost for behold if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it is one that
has had place in your eyes know that ye deny it behold this is a sin which
is unpardonable yea & whosoever murdureth against the light & knowledge
of God it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness of his sins yea my Son
that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness & now my Son I would that
ye had not been guilty of so great a crime I would not dwell upon your
crimes to harrow up your soul if it were not for your good but behold ye
cannot hide your crimes from God & whosoever ye report they will stand as a tes-
timony against you at the last day now my Son I would that ye should re-
pent & forsake your sins & go no more after the lusts of your eyes but cross
yourself in all these things for whosoever ye do this ye can in no wise inherit the
Kingdom of God I would that ye take it upon you to warn yourselves in these things
& to command you to guard your sides brethren in your undertakings for behold
there will in thy youth & ye stand in need to be nourished by your brethren
& give heed to their counsel suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain
or foolish thing suffer not that the devil lead away your heart again & let there
quickened hearts behold O my Son how great iniquity ye brought upon the Je-
remites for when they ^{saw} your conduct they would not believe in my words
& now the spirit of the Lord hath say unto me command thy children to do good lest
they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction therefore I command
you my Son in the name of God that ye refrain from iniquities that ye turn
to the Lord with all your mind might & strength that ye lead away the
hearts of no more to do wickedly but rather return unto them & acknowledge
your faults & retain that whereby which ye have done seek not after riches nor
the vain things of this world for behold you cannot carry these with you &

into Heaven but on the other hand he will be resurrected on the other side of the great
the great day so that there is a resurrection of the dead. The resurrection of the dead
is that of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed
of God that the dead shall come forth & be reunited both soul & body & be
brought to stand before God & be judged according to their works. This bringeth
about the restoration of these things which have been spoken by the mouth of
the prophets. The soul shall be restored to the body. The body to the soul & years
of the body shall be restored to its body & even a hair of their head
shall not be lost but all things shall be restored to their proper & perfect
frame is now my Son this is the restoration which has been spoken by the mouth
of the prophets & then shall the righteous shine forth in the Kingdom of
God but behold an awful death cometh upon the wicked for they die as to
things pertaining to things of righteousness. For they are unclean & no unclean thing
can inherit the Kingdom of God but they are cast out & assigned to partake
of the fruits of their labors in their works which have been evil & they drink the
dregs of a bitter cup & now my Son I have somewhat to say concerning the
restoration of which has been spoken. For he hold some have ^{written} the Scriptures &
have gone far wrong because of this thing & I perceive that thy mind hath been
wounded also concerning this thing but he hold I will explain it unto thee I say
to the my Son that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God for
it is requisite that all things should be restored by ^{their} proper order he hold it
requisite & I say according to the plan of redemption of Christ that the soul of man
should be restored to its body & that every part of the body should be restored to
it. It is requisite with the justice of God that man should be judged accor-
ding to their works & if their works were good in this life & the desires of their hearts
more good that they should also at the last day be restored unto that ^{which} they desired
& if their works were evil they shall be restored unto him for evil therefore all things
shall be restored to their proper order every thing in its natural name mortality
raised to immortality corruption to incorruption raised to endless happiness to inherit
the Kingdom of God or to endless misery to inherit the Kingdom of the devil
the one on one hand the other on the other the one raised to happiness according to
his desires of happiness or good according to his desires of God & the other to evil ac-
cording to his desires of evil for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so
shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh & he is on the evil
if he hath repented of his sins & desired righteousness until the

And even so shall he be rewarded unto righteousness these are they that are redeemed
out of the land of their fathers they that are taken out that are delivered from that
and less night of darkness & thus they stand on all for behold they are their own
judges when to do good or do evil now the desires of God are unalterable therefore
the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein & be saved in new
behold the Son of man with one more offering against you. God is now thus
at the time which he has appointed him to commit sin do not suppose he
and it hath been spoken concerning restoration that ye shall be restored from
in to happiness he held say unto you with sadness never was happiness to
all men that exist in a state of nature out would say in a carnal state in the
gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity they are without God in the world
& they have come continually to the nature of God therefore they are in a state of
transition to the nature of happiness & now he hold is the meaning of the word res-
toration to take a thing & a natural state & place it in an unnatural state
or to place it in a state opposite to its nature & upon this is the case but
the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil or gen-
eral for carnal or denilish for denilish good for that which is good right for
that which is right & out for that which is just & merciful for that which is
merciful therefore my Son see that ye are merciful unto ye but be not
fully judge righteously & do good continually & if ye do all these things then shall
all ye receive your reward & ye shall have mercy restored unto you again
ye shall have faith restored unto ye again ye shall have a righteous judgment
out restored unto you again & ye shall have your reward restored unto you again
for that which ye do & repent shall be turned unto you again & be restored there-
fore the word restoration mercifully condemneth the sinner & justifies him
not at all & every man. To know there is some what more which doth work
in your mind which ye cannot understand which is concerning the justice of
God in the punishment of the sinner for ye do try to suppose that it is unjust
that the sinner should be consigned to a state of misery now behold my Son
I will explain this thing unto thee for behold after the Lord God sent our first
father from the garden of Eden to till the ground from whence he was
taken & he drew out the man & he placed at the east end of the garden of
Eden Cherubims & flaming sword which turned every way to keep the tree
of life now we see that the man had become as God knowing good & evil & that
he should put forth his hand & take also of the tree of life & live forever that
the Lord God placed Cherubims & the flaming sword that he should not partake
of the fruit & thus we see that there was a time granted unto man to repent & re-
ceive a time a time to repent & serve God for behold if Adam had part

for the his hand immediately upon the tree of life he would have
and he was according to the word of God having no space for repentance
and he would have been said to the principles of salvation were
not but he was frustrated. But he held it was of himself unto man to die the
death as they were cut off from the tree of life therefore they should be cut
off from the face of the earth. When he came last journey in they became sal-
vations now we see by this that can live here but were cut off both temporal
ly and eternally from the presence of the Lord. That we see they became sal-
vations now after their own will, now he hold it was not expedient that
man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy
the great blasphe, happiness, therefore as the soul could never die, & the fall
had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that
is they were cut off from the presence of the Lord. Therefore it was expedi-
ent that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death, though
as they had become carnal, sensual & devilish, by nature, this probation-
ary state became a state for them to prepare it became a probationary
state & now remembering, ^{ye} Son if it were not for the plan of redemption
laying it aside as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable,
being cut off from the presence of the Lord, & now there was no means
of deliverance from their fallen state which man had brought upon him-
self because of his own disobedience, therefore according to justice, the
plan of redemption could not be brought about only on conditions, ^{ye} when
law of man in this probationary state, ^{ye} perfecting state,
conditions, ^{ye} man could not take effect, except it should destroy the work of justice
or now the work of justice could not be destroyed if so God would cease to be
God, & thus we see that all mankind were fallen, & they were in the grasp of
the law, & the law of God which consigned them forever to be cut off
from his presence, & now the blasphe, mercy could not be brought about ex-
cept a covenant should be made, therefore God himself atoneth for the
sins of the world to bring about the plan of mercy, to oppose the demands
of justice, that God might be a perfect just God, & a merciful God, also mer-
cy, benediction could not come unto men, except there were a punishment, which
as severe as eternal as the life of the soul, & should be opposed opposite to the
plan of happiness, so high was as eternal also as the life of the soul, now
could a man repent, except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no
law? How could there be a law, save there was a punishment? now there was a
punishment affixed, & a just law given, in which brought remorse of conscience
in man, now if there was no law given, if a man murdered he should

It has been appointed to be the Chief Captain over the Ephraim men the Chief Captain took
the command of all the armies of the Ephraim & his name was Moroni. Moroni took all
the command of the governments of their wars & he was only twenty & six years old when
he was appointed Chief Captain over the armies of the Ephraim. It came to pass that he met the
Lamanites in the borders of Jershon & his people were armed with swords & with stones
in all manner of weapons of war & ~~the Ephraim men~~ when the armies of the Lamanites
saw that the people of Ephraim that Moroni had prepared his people with breastplates
& with shields & also shields to defend their heads & also they were dressed with
thick clothing, now the army of Gerahemah was not prepared with any such thing
they had ⁱⁿ their swords & their similes, their bows & their arrows, their slings & their slings
but they were naked, & it was a skin which was girded about their loins & they
were naked save it were the garments of the women & the children, but they were not armed
with breastplates nor shields, therefore they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Ephraim
the Ephraim men held counsel & came to pass that they durst not come against the Ephraim in
the borders of Jershon, therefore they departed out of the land of Jershon into the
wilderness & took their journey round about in the wilderness & they by the head of the
River Sidon that they might come into the land of Mani to take possession of the
land for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know as better they
had gone, but it came to pass as soon as they had departed into the wilderness, Moroni ^{sent}
spies into the wilderness to watch their camp, & Moroni also knowing of the proceedings of the
Ancient & certain men unto him that he should inquire of the Lord what the Lord would
of the Ephraim should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites & it came to pass that
the word of the Lord came unto Alma, & Alma informed the messengers of Moroni that
the armies of the Lamanites were moving round about in the wilderness, that they were
about to come into the land of Mani, that they might come and attack upon the more
weak part of the people. & these messengers went & delivered the message unto Moroni
now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a
part of the Lamanites should come into that land & take possession of the City of Jershon,
took the remainder part of his army & he marched over into the land of Mani & he caused
that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against
with the Lamanites to deliver their lands to their country, their rights & their liberties,
therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites & it came to
pass that Moroni caused that his army should be recruited in the valley which was
near the bank of the River Sidon, which was on the west of the River Sidon in the valley
of Moroni. & he caused spies round about that he might know when the camp of

The Lamanites should come down as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites ^{intention} that it was their ^{intention} to destroy their brethren or to subject them & bring the inheritance to a single people, that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land & he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to possess their lands their liberty & their lives therefore he thought it was right that he should defend them by stratagem therefore he found by his spies which cause the Lamanites were to take their force he divided his army & brought a part over into the valley & concealed them & the rest on the south of the hill Anah & the remainder he concealed in the wilderness on the west of the river Sidon & led down into the borders of the land Manaheth thus having placed his army according to his desire he was prepared to meet them & came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill a part of the army of Moroni was concealed & it came to pass that as the Lamanites had passed the hill Anah & came into the valley & began to cross the river Sidon the army which was concealed on the south of the hill which was led by a man whose name was Abish he led his army forth & increased the Lamanites & came on the east in their rear & it came to pass that the Lamanites when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear turned them about & began to contend with the army of Abish & the work of death commenced on both sides but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords & their spears which brought death at most of every stroke & it came to pass that on the other hand there was more of them a many fell among the Nephites by their swords & the loss of blood they being shielded from the more mortal parts of the body & the more mortal parts of the body of the Lamanites by their breast plates & their arm shields & their head plates & thus the Nephites did give on the work of death among the Lamanites & it came to pass that the Lamanites became faint & weak because of the great destruction among them even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon & they were pursued by Abish & his men & they were driven by Abish into the waters of Sidon & they crossed the waters of Sidon & Abish attended his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross & it came to pass that Moroni & his army met the Lamanites in the valley on the west side of the river Sidon & it came to pass that Moroni & his army began to fall upon them & it came to pass that the Lamanites did flee again before them towards the land of Manaheth they were met again by the army of Moroni now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly & a great number of the Lamanites were known to be slain & it came to pass that the Lamanites were so much distressed that they were inspired by the Gommels & the Amalechites & it came to pass that their chief captain & leader was Zerahemnah who was their chief captain & their chief leader & commander

But he brooked it not, ^{unto them} saying unto them with a loud voice ^{unto them} ~~unto them~~
 the scroll hath fallen to the earth which is the scroll of your life so shall ye fall to
 the earth except ye will ^{weapons} ~~ye will~~ depart with a conscience of peace now
 there were many when they ^{heard} these words to saw the scroll which was upon the mountain
 they were struck with fear & many came forth to throw down their weapons & were
 at the feet of Moroni & entered into a covenant of peace & as many as entered into
 a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness, now it came to pass that he
 & his men were smothering one another & he did stin up the remainder of his shoulder to
 argue to contend more powerfully against the Nephites & now Moroni was angry
 cause of the stubbornness of the Lamanites therefore he commanded his people
 that they should go upon them & slay them & it came to pass that they began to slay
 them & the Lamanites did contend with their swords & their mights but behold
 their naked skin & their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites
 & behold they were pierced & smitten yea & did fall exceedingly fast before the
 swords of the Nephites & they began to be swept down even as the Gaulins & Mo-
 roni had prophesied now Jerahmeel when he saw that they were all about
 to be destroyed & cried mightily unto Moroni promising that he would come
 out & also his people with them if they would spare the remainder of the Lamanites ^{that} they would
 would come to war again against them & it came to pass that Moroni caused that the
 work of death should cease again among the people & ~~it came to pass that~~ he took
 the weapons of war from the Lamanites & after they had entered into a covenant
 with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness now the numbers
 of their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of the number & ~~the~~
 the number of their dead were exceeding great both on the Nephites & on the Laman-
 ites & it came to pass that they ^{did} cast their dead into the waters of Sidon & they have
 gone forth & are buried in the depths of the sea & the armies of the Nephites on the
 Moroni returned & came to their houses & their lands & thus ended the eighteenth
 year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephites & thus ended the second volume
 which was wrote upon the plates of Nephites. **Chapter XXV**
 The account of the people of Nephites & their wars & dissensions in the days of
 Helaman according to the record of Helaman which he kept in his days. Behold
 now it came to pass that the people of Nephites were exceedingly rejoiced because the Lord
 had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies therefore they gave thanks
 unto the Lord their God yea & they did fast much & pray much & they did worship
 God with exceedingly great joy & it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of
 the judges over the people of Nephites that ~~Helma~~ ^{Helman} came unto his son Helaman & said
 unto him Helman thou art the man which I spoke unto thee concerning these

words which have been left to Helaman sayeth unto him ye all believe
I have said again believe that in Jesus Christ which shall come & he sayeth
ye believe all the words which thou hast spoken & I have said unto him again will
ye keep my commandments & he sayeth ye will keep the commandments with all my
heart then I have said unto him blessed art thou & thou shalt prosper in this land
but behold I have some what to prophesy unto thee that what I prophesy unto thee
shall not make known ye what I prophesy ^{unto thee} shall not be made known ^{until}
the prophecy is fulfilled therefore write the words which I shall say & these are
the words Behold I perceive that this young people the Nephites according to the
spirit of revelation which is in me in four hundred years from the time that Jesus
Christ shall manifest himself unto them shall dwindle in unbelief ye &
then shall they see many & persecutions & famines & be afflicted even until the
people of this land shall become unbelieve & this because they shall dwindle in unbelief
& fall into the works of darkness & lasciviousness & all manner of iniquities
ye & I will say unto you that because they shall sin against so great light & knowledge
I will say unto you that from that day even the fourth generation shall dwindle off
away before this great iniquity shall come & when that great day shall come behold the
land many years hence that those who are now on the land of those in this are
now numbered among ^{the people of} the Nephites shall no more be numbered among the people
of this land but whosoever remaineth shall be destroyed in that great day
that day shall be numbered among the Lamanites & shall become like unto the
small cannot be a Jew which shall be called the Gadi of the Land &
then shall the Lamanites prevail even until they shall become extinct & know the
cause of iniquity this prophecy shall be fulfilled & so it came to pass that
after these things had said these words unto Helaman he blessed him & also his
father & he also blessed the children the night was late & he said thus saith
the Lord God counsel shall be the land & we have said that the land
shall be a destruction which do wickedly when they are fully ripe & hath
said so shall it be for this is the cursing & the blessing of God upon the land for the
Land cannot lack in portion with the least degree of iniquity & now when I have
had said these words he blessed the church ye all those which I should stand
testify the faith from that time hence forth & when I have had done this he
departed out of the land of Zarahemla as if to go into the land of Melchizedek
to pass that he was man of more as to his death or his burial we know
not of he told that we know that he was a righteous man & the saying went
abroad in the church that he was taken up by the spirit or carried by the hand
of the Lord even so have but behold the Scripture saith the Lord I

was agree with him that it should be so that he sent his cause to be tried by the
people of the land & made a public trial in the morning of our God our Religion & Freedom
from our nation & our children & he fastened it upon the end of a pole the
pole he fastened on his head plate & his breast plate & his shield & girded on
his armour without his loins & he took the pole which had on the end thereof his
rent coat & he called it the title of liberty & he bowed himself to the earth &
he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his bre-
thren so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land for thus said
all the true believers of Christ who belonged to the Church of God called by
those who did not belong to the Church & those who did belong to the Church
were faithful yet all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them
gladly to remember Christ on Christians as they were called because of their
beliefs in Christ which should come & therefore at this time Moroni fastened
the cause of all Christians & the freedom of the land might be said that it came
to pass that when he had bowed out his soul to God he gave all the land
which was south of the land Desolation & in fine all the land both on
the mountains on the south a chosen land & the land of liberty & he saith surely
God shall not suffer that we who are despised because we take upon us the
name of Christ shall be trodden down & destroyed with us bring it upon us
by our own transgressions & when Moroni had said these words he went forth
among the people warning the most of judgement in the air that all might see
the thing which he had wrote upon the rent & crying with a loud voice
saying he hold whosoever will maintain this title upon the land let them come forth
the strength of the Lord & enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights &
their religion that the Lord God every blessing that it came to pass that when Moroni
had proclaimed these words he held the people come running together with their
armour girded about their loins sending their garments in token as a covenant
that they would not forsake the Lord their God in other words they had
received the Commandments of God & all into transgression & he as he went to
take them the name of Christ the Lord should send them even as they had sent
their garments now this was the covenant which they made & they said they an-
nounced at the feet of Moroni saying our covenant with our God that we shall be
destroyed & we are brethren in the land & thousands of us shall fall into trans-
gression & in he may cast us at the feet of our enemies & as we have cast our gar-
ments at the feet of the Lord he shall be trodden under foot if we should fall into transgression
& Moroni would smite them he hold we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob yet we
are a remnant of the seed of Joseph whose coat was sent by his brethren in a
piece yet & now he hold let us remember to keep the commandments of God for
garments shall be sent by our brethren & we be cast into prison or be sold for
slavery yet let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph for let us remember
the seed of Jacob before his death for he hold he saw that a part of the remnant

[illegible]

Thou shalt not be king but thou shalt be over them being first
in their minds with a religious revelation that they would not be subje-
cted to against the will of the king but they had gathered themselves
together upon the top of the mount which is called Antipas in preparation
to battle now it was the intention of the king to go down to battle
according to the commandments of the king but he held it was his intention to
gain a victory with the armies of the Lamanites that he might place him-
self at their head and then the king to take possession of the kingdom when
he held it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the val-
ley which was near the mount Antipas & it came to pass that when it
was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas desir-
ing that the leaders of them which were upon the mount whose name was Le-
honti should come down to the foot of the mount for he desired to spe-
ak with him & it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he
desired not to go down to the foot of the mount & it came to pass that Amalickiah
went again the second time desiring him to come down & it came to pass
that Lehonti would not & he went again the third time & it came to pass that
when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off
from the mount he went up into the mount nearly to Lehonti's camp &
he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti desiring that he
would come down & that he should bring his guards with him & it came to
pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah
that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night
time & surround those men in their camp & even so he had given
him command & that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands if he
would make him Amalickiah's second leader over the whole army & it came
to pass that Lehonti came down with his men & surrounded the men of Amalickiah
so that he was they were at the dawn of day & they were surrounded by the
armies of Lehonti & it came to pass that when they saw that they were sur-
rounded they fled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall
in with them but when they might not be destroyed now this was
the thing which Amalickiah desired & it came to pass that he delivered

his own censure to the commands of the king now that was the thing ^{that} ~~the king~~ ¹⁸⁷
Amalickiah desired that he might accomplish his designs in detaching
the king now it was the custom among the Lamanites if their Chief leader was
killed to appoint the second leader to be their Chief leader & it came to pass
that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poi-
son by degrees to Pahori that he died now when Pahori was dead the
Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader & their Chief commander &
it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies for he had gained the
desire to the land of ^{the} Ephraim to the City of Ephraim which was the Chief City of the
king came out to meet him with his guards for he supposed that Amalickiah
had fulfilled his commands & that Amalickiah had gathered together
to great an army for to go against the Ephraim to battle but behold as the
king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth
to meet the king & they went & bowed themselves before the king as if to reverence
him because of his greatness & it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to re-
ceive them as was the custom with the Lamanites to take peace which was the
land taken from the Ephraim & it came to pass that when he had raised the first stone
he said he held the king to the heart & he fell to the earth now the
servants of the king led to the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry saying he hold
the servants of the king have slayed him to the heart & he has fallen & they have led
he hold come to see & it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies
should march forth to see what had happened unto the king & when they had come
to the place & found the king lying in his gore Amalickiah pretended to be sore
that said whosoever loved the king let him go forth & pursue his servants that
they may be slain & it came to pass that when all they ^{who} loved the king
when they heard these words came forth & pursued after the servants of the
king now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them
they were frightened & fled into the wilderness & came over into the land of the
Trenta & gained the table of Shimon & the army which pursued after them

400 returned having perceived that the king had been slain by his
and gained the hearts of the people & it came to pass on the morrow he sent
and the king with his army took possession of the City & now it came to
pass that the Queen when she had heard that the king was slain ^{and} Amalickiah
had sent an ^{ambassador} to the ^{Queen} informing her that the king had been slain by
his servants that he had pursued them with his army but it was in vain
& they had made their escape therefore where the Queen had received this me-
sage she sent on to Amalickiah desiring him that he would spare the peo-
ple of the City & she also desired him that he should come in unto her & she
also desired him that he should ^{bring} witnesses with him to testify concern-
ing the death of the king & it came to pass that Amalickiah took the 10 men
and that when the king was slain they ^{with} him were with him & went unto the
Queen unto the place where she sat & they all testified unto her that the king was
slain by his own servants & they said also they have fled & do not testify
against them & thus they satisfied the Queen concerning the death of the king & it
came to pass that Amalickiah sought the Queen to take her on to
him to wife & ^{thus} by his hands & by the assistance of his cunning servants he
obtained the Kingdom & he was acknowledged king throughout all the land
among all the people of the Lamanites which ⁱⁿ ^{the} ^{land} ^{of} the Lamanites &
the Lamanites the Lamanites & all the dissenters from the faithful from the
king of isle down to the present time now these dissenters having the same infor-
mation & the same information of the faithful & having been established in the
same knowledge of the Lord hence the less it is strange to relate not long after
their dissensions they became more hardened & impudent & more wild
in their opinions than the Lamanites ^{drinking} in with the traditions of the Laman-
ites giving way to idolatry & all manner of lasciviousness & entirely for-
getting the Lord their God & now it came to pass that as soon as Amalickiah had
obtained the Kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the
people of isle & he ^{did} ^{men} appoint to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers

against the Lamanites & thus needed inspire their hearts against the Lamanites inasmuch
that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges he having accom-
plished his designs these Lamanites ^{then} were made king over the Lamanites he
sought also to assign over all the land & over all the people which were in the land
the Lamanites as well as the Lamanites, therefore, he had accomplished his design for he
had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites & he blinded their minds & blinded them up
to anger inasmuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle
against the Lamanites & he was determined because of the greatness of the ^{number} of his
people to encompass the Lamanites & to bring them into bondage & thus he did appoint
chiefs & Captains of the Lamanites they being the most acquainted with the strength
of the Lamanites & their places & secret & their weak places of their cities therefore
he appointed them to be chiefs & captains over his armies & it came to pass that they
took their armies & moved forth towards the land of Jahaem in the wilderness
that while the Lamanites had been obtaining power
he had directed his armies in the other hand had been ~~encompassing~~ ^{encompassing} the minds
of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God & he had been strengthening
their armies the Lamanites were making small tents on a ^{large} ^{river} ^{bank} ^{up}
bank of earth raised a bank to enclose his armies & also building walls of stone
to enclose them a bank round about their cities & the borders of their lands & he
all round about the land & in their weakest fortifications he did place the
greatest number of men & thus he did in life & strengthening the land ^{which} was possessed
by the Lamanites & thus he was preparing to support their liberty their lands their
wives & their children & their peace & that they might live unto the Lord their God &
that they might remain in that which was called by their enemies the Cause of Chri-
stians & therefore was a strong & a mighty man he was a man of a perfect under-
standing & a man that did not delight in bloodshed a man whose soul did
joy in the liberty & the freedom of his country & his brethren from bondage & there-
fore was a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God for the
many privileges & blessings which he bestowed upon his people a man who
did labor exceedingly for the wellfare & safety of his people & he was a

[illegible]

242 ~~the~~ ~~men~~ ~~and~~ ~~their~~ ~~brethren~~ ~~to~~ ~~the~~ ~~yoke~~ ~~of~~ ~~bondage~~ ~~on~~ ~~slay~~ ~~to~~ ~~mar~~ ~~shall~~
 them according to their pleasure but behold to their uttermost astonishment
 they were prepared in strong manner which never had been known among
 all the children of Pechi now they were prepared for the Lamanites to battle
 after the manner of the instructions of Moroni it came to pass that the Lamanites
 on the Shualishites were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation
 for war now of King Shualish had come down out of the land of Tophi at the head
 of his army perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked
 the Tophites at the City of Shumenichah but he held he did care not for the Lamanites
 or his people but he held Shualish did not come down himself to battle
 but he sent his Chief Captains to attack the Tophites at the City of Shumenichah
 for Moroni had attended the management of affairs among the Tophites
 so much that the Lamanites were disappointed in their place of what they could
 not come upon them therefore they were led into the wilderness to seek their
 camp & marched towards the land of Tophi supposing that to be the most secret place
 for them to come against the Tophites for they knew not that Moroni had fortified
 or had built forts of security for every City in all the land round about therefore
 they marched forward to the land of Tophi with a firm determination & their
 Chief Captains came forward to look on east that they would destroy the
 people of that City but behold to their astonishment the City of Tophi which
 had hitherto been weak & lowly had now by the means of Moroni become strong
 & great to exceed the strength of the City of Shumenichah now he held this was wisdom
 in Moroni for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the
 City of Shumenichah as the City of Tophi had hitherto been the chief part of
 the land therefore they would march thither to battle & thus it was according to his
 desire & he held Moroni had appointed Pechi to be Chief Captain over the men
 at that City & it was that same Pechi which ^{fight} ~~quell~~ the Lamanites in the valley on
 the east of the line of Jordan now he held it came to pass that when the Lamanites
 had heard that Pechi commanded the City they were again disappointed for they
 feared Pechi exceedingly more than the Chief Captains had sworn with an

and the Lamanites therefore they brought up their armies now behold the Lamanites could not get into their place of security by any other way save by the entrance because of the highness of the bank which had been known up to the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about Jerusalem by the entrance & thus were the Lephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the city by any other way by casting over stones & arrows at them that they were expected year a hedge their most strong men with their swords & their slings to smite down all who should attempt to come in to their place of security by the place of entrance & thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites & to cause the Lamanites to be slain. The Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance & began to run to and fro with the Lamanites to get into their place of security but the Lephites were driven back from time to time in so much that they were slain with an immense slaughter now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Lephites by the pass they began to dig down their banks of earth so they might obtain a pass to their armies that they might have an equal share to fight but behold in their attempts they were swept off by the stones & the arrows which were thrown at them instead of filling up their ditches by digging down the banks of earth they were filled up in a measure with their dead & mangled bodies so that the Lephites had all power over their enemies & that the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Lephites until their chief captains were all slain & more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain while on the other hand there was not a single soul of the Lephites which were slain these were about fifty which were wounded which had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass but they were shielded by their shields & their breastplates & their headplates in so much that their wounds were upon themselves many of which were very severe & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness it came to pass that they returned to the land of Lehi to inform the king & to seek help where a Lephite by name concerning their loss & it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people because he had not obtained his desire over the Lephites he had not subjected them to the state of bondage yea he was exceedingly wroth & he did curse God & also Moroni & swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood & thus because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people & it came to pass

21:184 that on the other hand, the people of Ishmael did thank the Lord for
of his matchless power in delivering them from ^{the hands} ~~the hands~~ of their enemies.
21:185 & the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of
Ishmael there was continual peace among them, & exceeding great pros-
perity in the Church, because of their heed & diligence which they gave unto
the word of God, which was declared unto them by the Lamoni & Shishlam,
& Corianton & Ammon & his brethren & Cygus & by all those who had been
ordained by the Holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, & sent forth
to preach among the people &c. Chapter XXII.

22:1 And now it came to pass that Ammon did not stop making preparations for
war to defend ^{his people} ~~the people~~ against the Lamanites, for he caused that his army
should encamp in the wilderness. 22:2 In the fifth year of the reign of the judges
that they should commence in digging up holes of earth round about all the cities there
about all the land which was possessed by the Ishmaelites & upon the top of these
holes of earth he caused that there should be towers & walls of timbers built
up to the height of a man round about the cities & he caused that upon these
walls of timbers ~~that~~ there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers
round about & these were strong & high & he caused towers to be erected that
overlooked these walls of pickets & he caused laws of security to be built
upon these towers that the stones & the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt
them & they were so fast that they could cast stones from the top thereof according
to their pleasure to their length & stop them which should attempt to ap-
proach near the walls of the city. Thus Ammon did prepare strong holds against
the coming of their enemies round about every city in all the land & he caused to pass
that Ammon caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness
year & they went forth & drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wild-
erness into their own lands which were south of the land of Gashemla &
the land of Ishmael did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west
sea & it came to pass that when Ammon had driven all the Lamanites out of
the east wilderness which was north of the land of their own possessions he
caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Gashemla & in the
land round about should go forth into the east wilderness even to the bor-
der by the sea shore & possess the land & he also placed armies on the south

296 of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of
Lephi, had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the
land of Lehi, the land of inheritance which joined upon the borders of Lehi both
of which were on the borders by the sea shore, for he held the people who possessed
the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi, they began
to have a contention ^{between} among them, inasmuch that the people of Morianton took
of arms against their brethren, they were determined by the sword to stop them, but
he held the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Morianton,
healed unto him for assistance, for he held they were not in the wrong, he came to
pass that the people of Morianton, which were led by a man whose name was
Morianton, heard that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Morianton, they were
overcoming carefully lest the army of Morianton should come upon them to destroy them,
therefore Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land
which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, & take
possession of the land which was northward, for he held they would have carried
the people into a wilderness which would have been a cause to have been lamented, but
he held Morianton, being a man of much wisdom, therefore he was angry with one of his men
servants, he said unto him, that he much desired to pass that the people should come over
to the camp of Morianton, & hold in peace all things concerning the matter, also concern-
ing their intentions to flee into the land northward, now he held the people who were
in the land, beautiful & water Morianton, heard that they would hearken to the words of
Morianton, & would flee into the land northward, that he would obtain possession of that part
of the land, which would lay a foundation for various consequences among the people
of Lehi, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty, therefore he
was not anxious with his hands to lead the people of Morianton to stop them, he held
the land northward, it came to pass that they did not heed them, until they had come to
the borders of the land, & although they did flee, they by the narrow pass which
led to the land northward, for by the sea on the west, & the east, &
it came to pass that the army which was sent by Morianton, which was led by a man
whose name was Canaan, did meet the people of Morianton, & the people of Lehi, &
the people of Morianton, being inspired by the wickedness of the latter, they
a battle commenced between them, in the which Canaan did slay Morianton, &
he held him to take them prisoners, & returned to the camp of Morianton, & that ended
the contention among the people of the judges, & the people of Lehi, & that was

[illegible]

[illegible]

302 and means little. The men of the strong holds that they might gain
advantage over them to take again the city of Mulek & it came to pass that they sent
messengers to the camp of the Lamanites which surrounded the city & they said
whose name was Gadiashar saying him that he would come out with his armies to
meet them upon the plains between the two cities but he held no such intent
and a journey would not come out with his army to meet them when the Lamanites
came to pass that there was coming in to meet them upon the plains grounds the
before he resolved upon a plan that he might drive the Lamanites out of their strong
holds therefore he caused that his army should take a small number of men & march
down upon the plain & then he himself by night marched into the wilderness
on the west of the city Mulek & thus on the morning when the guards of the Lamanites had
discovered his army they said to him is not Jacob their leader & it came to pass that
the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against his army & supplanting by their
numbers to overcome his army because of the smallness of his numbers & as his army saw
the army of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the
sea then he turned and came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee
they took courage & pursued them with vigour & while his army was thus pursuing
the Lamanites which were pursuing them in vain he held his army & commanded that
a part of his army which were with him should march forth into the city & take possession
of it & thus they did & were all those which had been left to protect the city & all
those who were left of their weapons were as follows: Maceons had a bow & arrow
a piece of the city Mulek with a piece of his army while he marched with the remainder
of his army the Lamanites when they saw that he was gone from the presence of his army
they came to pass that the Lamanites pursued his army until they came near the city
Mulek & then they were met by Lehi & a small army which had been left
to protect the city Mulek & thus he held when the chief captains of the Lamanites
had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them they fled in much confusion
and he pursued them they should not obtain the city Mulek he said Lehi should overtake
all them for they were wearied because of their march & the men of Lehi were
not weary & the Lamanites did not know that Maceons had been in their rear
with his army & all they heard was Lehi & his men now Lehi was not desirous
to overtake them till they should meet Maceons & his army & it came to pass
that before the Lamanites had reached for they were surrounded by the Ephraim
by the men of Maceons on one hand & the men of Lehi on the other all of whom
were fresh & full of strength but the Lamanites were wearied because of their
long march & Maceons commanded his men that they should fall upon them &

So that in this way they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites, & a great number
in a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands, now
there was a compulsion to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was ^{their} duty
to guard them while at their labors, & he desired all his forces, & men he should
make an attack upon the Lamanites, & to come to pass that the Lamanites had their gain
and a victory was one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, & had obtained
possession of the city Babel, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites
in the land of Ephraim, & he had also fortified a strong hold to retain his prisoners
& it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that
year, but he did employ his men in preparing for a year in making fortifica-
tions to guard against the Lamanites, & in relieving their women & their chil-
dren from famine & affliction, & providing food for their armies, & now it came
to pass that the armies of the Lamanites on the north & south, while in the absence
of Moroni on account of some matters amongst the Nephites which caused
discussions amongst them, had gained some ground over them, & they had gained
much that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part
of the land, & that because of iniquity amongst themselves, & because of dissensions
& enmities among themselves, & they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances,
now he held it more than what to say concerning the people of Shumen who in the
beginning were Lamanites, but by the power of his the throne, & by the power of his
God they had been converted unto the Lord, & they were known to be down in the land
of Shumen, & had ever since been afflicted by the Nephites, & because of their
faith they had never thought of taking up arms against their brethren, & they were
in the land of Shumen, & they were men, & according to their own
will, would have been glad to have suffered themselves to have fallen
into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the oath & the covenant which
Shumen in Shumen had had for them, & for that cause they were brought down
to the land of Shumen, & the men had been protected by the Nephites, but it came to
pass that when they saw the danger & the many afflictions, & tribulations which
the Nephites ^{have} ~~had~~ ⁱⁿ ~~the~~ ^{land} were upon them, they were moved with compassion, & were desirous to take
possession in the land of their country, but he held as they were afraid to take
their weapons, & men, & were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman, &
his brethren for the year that to break the oath which they had made, & the
Lamanites left by so doing they should lose their land, & were for all those who
had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren
suffer through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time
but behold it came to pass they had many sons which had not entered

It is a way your mothers as fathers to return with your armies to your own lands
but as ye have once rejected those things & have fought against the people of the Lord
even so I may expect ye will do it again. To now behold we are prepared to receive you
ye & except ye withdraw your purposes behold ^{you} will fall down the wrath
of that God whom ^{you} have rejected upon ^{you} & your utter destruction
but as the Lord liveth our armies shall come upon you ere ye withdraw
I shall soon be visited with death for we will surely ^{retain} our lands & we
will maintain our religion & the cause of our God. But behold it hath passed
me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain or it supposeth me that
Thou art a child. Well therefore I will close my Epistle by telling you that I
will not exchange prisoners save it be on condition that ye will deliver up a man to
his wife & his children for our prisoners if this be the case that ye will do I will
exchange & I hold if ye do not this I will come against you with my armies & as we
will arm my women & my children & will come against you & will fall down you
even into your own land which is the land of your first inheritance ye shall
all be blood for blood ye shall give life for life & I will give you battle even until ye are de-
stroyed from off the face of the Earth. Behold I am in my anger & also my people are
angry to murder us & we will only spare to defend ourselves but I hold off
yeek to destroy us more but we will fight to destroy you & ye to me will retain our land
the lands of our first inheritance now I close my Epistle I am Ammon I am a leader
of the people of the Nephites & I am come to pass into the nation when he had receiv-
ed this Epistle he was angry to be made aware of this & he said there are
these men he will saying I am Ammon the king of the Lamanites I am
the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered behold I will exchange his
blood upon you & I will come upon you with my armies for I am not to give
prisoners for he said unto him I did wrong their brethren inasmuch that I
did not them to be like to be taken into bondage & I have rightly belonged unto them
I now hold if ye will lay down your arms & subject yourselves to be governed
by those to whom the government doth rightly belong then will I cause that my
people shall lay down their weapons & shall be at war no more. Behold ye
have been set out many times against me & me I love but I hold me fear-
not your threatenings nevertheless I will grant to exchange prisoners ^{according}
to your request gladly that I may preserve my land for ^{my} people of war
we will wage a war which shall be eternal either do the subjecting the Nephites
to our authority or to their & I am a continuation & as concerning that God whom
ye say we have rejected behold we know not such a being & I think that if it
so be that there is such a being we know not but that he hath made us & all

as you see it is that there is a Lamanite will be sent to
see their conduct with my brother whom you have murdered & who have
murdered that he shall go to such a place but behold these things mattereth
not I am Lamanite & a descendant of Jacob whom your fathers, blessed be
thought and at Jerusalem & he had ^{now} I am bold Lamanite to hold
this man shall be made to avenge his wrongs & to maintain his rights
these rights in a government & I have my Epistle to Meroz now it came
to pass that when Meroz had received this Epistle he was much angry because
he knew that Lamanite had a perfect knowledge of his fraud yet he knew
that Lamanite to him that it was not a just cause that he had caused him to
wedged a man against the people of Ephraim & he said I will not have
any more to do with Lamanite & he will withdraw his purpose as I have stated in my
Epistle for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than
what he hath got he had I know the place where the Lamanites doth guard the
ephraim which place have taken Meroz's as Lamanite would not grant unto
my Epistle to hold I will give unto him according to my words which I will not
draw among them until the day that I shall see him & come to pass that when the
king had said these words he caused that a search should be made among his men that
he hoped he might find a man which was a descendant of Lamanite among them
but came to pass that they found one whose name was Laman & he was one of
the servants of the king who was murdered by Lamanite & now Meroz
recaused that Laman & a small number of his men should go forth unto the
guards which were over the Ephraim now the Ephraim were guarded in the city of
Jed & Meroz caused that Laman & a small number of men who
was of Samaria to go with him & ~~he came to the Ephraim~~ & he came to the Ephraim
men went to the guards who were over the Ephraim & he said to them
coming & they hailed him but he sought unto them, can not behold any a
Lamanite & he said we have escaped from the Ephraim & they sought & he said
I have brought with us now when the Lamanite heard
these words they received him with joy & they said unto him give us of your wine
that we may drink & he said that it was his taken wine with you
to me are many but Laman sought unto them let us keep of our wine
till we go against the Ephraim & he said that this saying only made them more desirous
to drink of the wine for said they we are many therefore let us take of the
wine & he said we shall receive wine for our nations which will strengthen
us to go against the Ephraim & Laman sought unto them you may do according to
your desire & it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely & it was
given to them therefore they took of it more freely & it was strong having
been prepared in its strength & it came to pass that they did drink & were merry

many times did they attempt to administer their wine to the Nephites, but they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness, but he held that it was not lawful to remember the Lord their God in their best times, of affliction, they could not be taken in their own craftings, they would not partake of their wine, you say would not take of wine, said the Lord, and said they given to some of the Lamanites, Lamanites, they were thus Lamanites, that no person should be administered wine, they said, their wine would poison Lamanites it would also poison Nephites, & thus they did till all their liquor, now it came to pass that it was expedient for Lamanites to make preparations to attack the city of Meneanthy, on the hill, the Lamanites had by this time descended upon the city of Meneanthy, until it had become an exceedingly strong hold, & they were continually bringing new loads into that city, & thus new supplies, & thus could the Nephites do nothing of the sign of the judges over the people of Israel. XXVI

It now came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, in the second day of the first month, Mormon received an Epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land, & these are the words which he wrote, saying, My dearly beloved Brother, - Mormon, as was in the Lord as in the old traditions of our warfare, he held, my beloved Brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in that part of the land, he held, two thousand of the Sons of those men who the Lamanites brought down out of the land of Joseph, now ye have known that these were a remnant of Laman, who was the eldest Son of our Father Lehi, now I need not relate unto you concerning them, in addition to this, I will tell you, in those times, concerning all these things, that he it supposeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men, have taken their weapons of war, & would that I should be their leader, & we have come forth to defend our Country, now ye also know concerning the Government which I have taken, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren, to shed blood, but in the twenty & eighth year, I saw our afflictions & our tribulations for many days, that about to break the covenant, which they had made, & take up their weapons of war, in our defense, but I would not suffer them that they should break the covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen my arm, so that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken, but he held, there is one thing, in which our way, had great sorrow he held, in the twenty & ninth year, Helaman did march at the head of two thousand young men, to the City of Jiddiah, to assist Helipha, whom he had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land, & did smite them, two thousand of the Sons of Joseph, in the which strength, Helipha did resist, & holding by him, he held, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites, because of the weakness of their forces, having slain a vast number of our men, on which cause

[illegible]

should fall, neither should they march down against the city of Zenobania 311
neither should they cross the land of Sidon nor to the city of Sidon & thus with their
power they were determined to maintain their city which they had taken, & were
-ing to pass in the second month of the year there was brought unto us many
provisions, from the father of those men, thus Samuel & also there was sent
with us
two thousand men from the land of Zenobania & thus we were prepared with
the ten thousand men & provisions for them & also for their wives & their children
& the Lamanites thus being in power & more daily & provisions were for our support
but they began to be fearful to begin to say forth if it were possible to have an end to
punishing for nations & strength now when we saw that the Lamanites began
to grow weary on this were not more desirous to bring a stratagem into effect
at upon them & so Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little
band to a neighboring city as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring
city & we were to march near the city of Antipus & if we were going to the
beyond to the border by the sea shore we came to pass that we did march forth as
if with our provisions to go to that city & we came to pass that Antipus did march
forth with his army leaving the remainder to maintain the city but he did
not march forth until he had sent forth with my little army & came near the
city Antipus was now in the city Antipus was stationed the strongest army of
the Lamanites & the most numerous did come to pass that when they had been in-
formed by their spies that we came forth with our army & marched against us, & it be-
came to pass that we did flee before them, notwithstanding that we did lead away the
most powerful army of the Lamanites & even to a considerable distance in-
-much that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them with their mi-
-sties they did not turn to the right nor to the left but pursued them, & we
in a short space of time we were supposed that it was their intent to slay us
but our brethren should have taken heed that they might not be surrounded
by our people & now Antipus in his wisdom & long suffering did send the most of his army
-but he held it was wise that he should not overtake us, neither did Antipus
come to the place we did camp the night & it came to pass that he was the
-town of the evening to hold the Lamanites were pursuing us, now we were not
sufficiently strong to contend with them, & we would not let our little
band should fall into their hands, therefore we did continue our march & we
-our march into the wilderness now they did not turn to the right nor to the
-left lest they should be surrounded, nevertheless we did turn to the right

10. The first they should ever take, me & me could, no stand against
 them but by reason they would make them escape & thus we did flee
 that day into the wilderness until it was dark & it came to pass that
 when the light of the morning came we saw the Samanites upon us &
 we did flee before them but it came to pass that they did not pursue us
 before they halted & it was in the morning of the third day on the seventh moon
 the ninth whether they were involuntarily. Antipas we knew not but I said un-
 to my men he hold me know not what they have halted for the purpose that
 we should come against them that they might catch us in their snare therefore
 what saith my Lord will ye go against them to battle & now I say unto you
 my beloved brethren I know that never had I seen so great courage nay
 not amongst all the tribes of Israel I ever called them my sons for they
 were all of them men of valour & they said unto me latter he hold our God
 is with us he will not suffer that we shall fall then let us go forth
 we will not slay our brethren if they would let us alone therefore let us
 go lest they should catch us. The army of Antipas now they never had thought
 yet they did not know death & they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers
 than they did upon their lives for they had been taught by their mothers that if
 they did not doubt that God would deliver them & they heard unto me
 the words of their mothers saying we do not doubt our mothers know it came
 to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Samanites who
 had pursued us & now he hold the armies of Antipas had overtaken them
 & a terrible battle had commenced. The army of Antipas being weary be-
 cause of their long march in so short a space of time were about to fall into
 the hands of the Samanites & indeed not returned with my two thousand they
 would have obtained their purpose for Antipas had fallen by the sword &
 many of his leaders because of their weariness which was occasioned by
 the speed of their march therefore the men of Antipas being confused be-
 cause of the fall of their leaders began to flee before the Samanites & it
 came to pass that the Samanites took courage & began to pursue them & thus were
 the Samanites pursuing them with great vigour when Helam came on
 upon them with his two thousand & began to slay them exceedingly in so
 much that the whole army of the Samanites had taken turned upon Helam
 & now when the people of Antipas saw that the Samanites had taken
 them about they gathered together their men & came again upon the

and the Lamanites knew it came to pass that not the ³¹³ coulder fight
the people of Ishmael & the Lamanites two thousand did surround the Lamanites &
did they brought in much that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons
of war & also themselves as prisoners of war & now it came to pass that when they ^{had}
surrendered themselves up unto us, he hold I now heard these young men who
which had fought with me fearing lest there were many of them slain (we heard
to my ^{great} joy) there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth yet & they had
fought as if with the strength of ^{yea} Gilead men were men known to have fought with
such marvellous strength & with such ^{might} power that they fall upon the Lamanites
that they did fight for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves
up as prisoners of war & as we had no place for our prisoners that we could guard them
to keep them from the arms of the Lamanites therefore we sent them to the ^{land of} Gadianton
& a part of these men who were not slain of Antiparah with them to the remainder
I took & joined them to my striplings Lamanites & took them march back to the
City of Lehi & now it came to pass that I received an Epistle from the king
the king stating that he would deliver up these prisoners of war who were
had taken that he would deliver up the City of Antiparah but I sent an Epistle
unto the king that we were ^{and} were more sufficient to take the City of
Antiparah by our power & by delivering up the prisoners ^{that} that we should
not suppose ourselves unwise & that we would ^{only} deliver up our prisoners
on exchange & the king refused mine Epistle for he would not exchange prisoners
therefore we began to make preparations to go against the City of Antiparah
but the people of Antiparah did leave the City of Lehi to the Lamanites
which they had possession of to certify them that the City of Antiparah fell
into our hands & thus ended the bloody & violent wars of the king of the land
it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and sixth year we received a
supply of provisions & also several additions to our army from the land of Gadianton
& from the land round about to the number of ten thousand men besides sixty
of the sons of the Lamanites who had come to join their brethren my
little band of two thousand & now behold we were strong & we had also a
plenty of provisions brought to us it came to pass that it was our desire to march
a little battle with the army which was placed to guard the City Cumoni
& now he hold I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire
of the king our strong lance on with a part of our strong force ^{we} did surround
by night the City Cumoni a little before they were to receive a supply of

77 Provisional & came to pass that we did camp round about the city for
 many nights but we did desperation on words & keep guards that the Lamanites
 could not come upon us by night & by day which they attempted many times
 but as many times they attempted this their blood was spilt at length their
 provisions did give out they were about to enter the city by night & instead
 of being Lamanites ^{in their hands} this ^{in their hands} did take them their provisions
 & not withstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after
 this manner they were still determined to maintain the city therefore at
 length expedient that we should take these prisoners & send them to Judah
 & our prisoners to the land of Gashem. It came to pass that not many days
 had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of seeing the city
 they yielded up the city & that we had accomplished our designs in obtaining
 the city. ^{but} came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that we
 not withstanding the ^{enmity} of our numbers we were obliged to employ
 all our power to keep them in subjection to death. Behold they could strike
 out in great numbers & would fight with stones & with clubs in what
 were things they could get into their hands ^{that} we did slay
 upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered prisoners of war ^{therefore}
 it became expedient, in that we should put an end to their lives & guard
 them sword in hand down to the land of Gashem & also ^{provisions} ~~also~~ we did
 not any more than sufficient for our own people not withstanding that which
 we had taken from the Lamanites & now in these critical circumstances it be-
 came a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war
 nevertheless we did resolve to send them down to the land of Gashem that
 we did select a part of our men to give them charge over our prisoners to
 go down to the land of Gashem but it came to pass that on the morrow they
 did not turn & now behold we did not inquire of them concerning the pris-
 oners for behold the Lamanites were upon us & they returned in seasons to save
 us from falling into their hands for behold Timmon had sent to their
 support a new supply of provisions also a numerous army of men did come
 to pass that these men who had sent with the prisoners did arrive in sea-
 son & took them as they were about to depart from us but he holding little
 hand of our men & only fought most desperately & so they were slain
 before the Lamanites & did administer death unto all those who offered them
 so the remainder of our army were about to give up before the Lamanites.

16 in, see which the greater number of them were slain & the remainder of
them broke through & fled, & as we beheld when they had fled & we could
not overtake them we took our march with speed towards the city. ^{And} we did
behold & we did see in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving
the city & behold we were again delivered out of the hands of our enemies & the
seed of the name of our God for behold it is he that hath delivered us & that
hath done this great thing for us now it came to pass that when Helaman
had heard these words of God ^{he} was filled with exceeding joy, because of the
joyfulness of us in preserving at first we might not all perish yet & that the
souls of them who ^{had} been slain have entered into the rest of their God
& he held now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of
Manti that he held that was no way that we could lead them out of the city
by our small hands for behold they remembered that which we had written
to them that we could not delay them in any way from their strong holds &
they were exceeding more numerous than was our army that we did not see
how we could take them out of their strong holds yet it became expedient that we
should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land that which
we had retained of our possession, therefore it became expedient that we
should wait that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla
which also came in supply of provisions it came to pass that ^{we} did send an embassy to
the Governor of our land that we might ^{obtain} of him of the ^{country} of the ^{people} & it came to pass that
we did wait to receive strength & provisions from the land of Zarahemla
but behold they did not ^{send} us but little for the Lamanites were also receiv-
ing great strength from day to day & also many provisions & thus were our circumstan-
ces at this period of time & the Lamanites were rallying forth against us from time to
time resolving by stratagem to destroy us nevertheless we could not come to battle
with them because of their numbers & their strong holds & it came to pass that we
did wait in very difficult circumstances for the space of many months even
until we were about to perish for the word of God did it came to pass that we
did receive good ^{word} & was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men
to our assistance & this is all the assistance which we did receive to defend
ourselves & our country from falling into the hands of our enemies yet to con-
tend with an enemy which was invincible now because of these our
embarrassments on the east, where they did not send more strength unto us we
knew not therefore we were distressed & were filled with fear lest by any means
the judgments of God should come upon our land & our children & our

Desiring them not to take possession of the city now but was done because the Laman-
ites did ~~not~~ ^{only} their whole army was a few guards ^{only} he lead away into the wilderness
it came to pass that God descended by this means had obtained possession of their
~~strong~~ ^{strong} hold & came to pass that we took our course after ^{having} traveled much in
the wilderness towards the land of Jara hemla to which the Lamanites saw that they
were marching towards the land of Jara hemla they were exceedingly afraid lest there
was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction therefore they began to retreat ^{into} the
wilderness again yea even back by the same way which they had come to behold it was
night & they did pitch their tents for the night / Captain of the Lamanites ^{had supposed}
that the Ephraim were weary because of their march & supposing that they had drunken
their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the day of Mani now it
came to pass that when it was night that I caused ^{that} my men should not sleep but
that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Mani &
because of this our march in the night time he hold on the march we were beyond
the Lamanites inasmuch that we did arrive before them to the city of Mani &
now it came to pass that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Mani
without the shedding of blood & it came to pass that when the armies of the Lam-
anites did arrive near the city & saw that we were prepared to meet them they were
astonished exceedingly & shook with great fear inasmuch that they did flee into the
wilderness yea it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all the quar-
ters of the land but he hold they have carried with them many of our women & children
men and of the land & the goods which had been taken by the Lamanites all of them
are at this period of time in a confusion of fathers & our women & our children
are returning to their homes all save it be those which have been taken prisoners
& carried off by the Lamanites but he hold our armies are small to maintain
so great a number of cities & so great possessions but he hold we have that our
God who hath given us victory over those lands inasmuch that we have obtain-
ed those cities & those lands which were our own ^{now} we do not know the rea-
son that the government do not grant us more strength & we intend that those men who
came upon us know why we have not received greater strength he hold we do
not know but what ye are unsuccessful & ye have drawn away the people into
that quarter of the land if some do not desire to maintain ^{it} it is not so he hold
we fear that there is some faction in the government that they do not ^{send} more
men to our assistance for we know that they are more numerous than that which
we have sent but he hold it mattereth not we trust God will deliver us

notwithstanding the weakness of our arms yet we decline as out of the hands ³¹⁹
of enemies we held this in the twenty & ninth year in the latter end & we are in
the possession of our lands the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi & those
sons of the people of Shimon of which I have so highly spoken and with me in
the city of Manti & the Lord hath supported them & kept them from falling by
the sword inasmuch that everyone said that he had not been slain but he held they have
received many wounds nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty & here with God
hath made them free & they are bid to remember the Lord their God from day to day
yea they do observe to keep his statutes & his judgments & his commandments con-
tinually & their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come &
now my beloved brethren I move that the Lord our God who hath redeemed us
& made us free may keep you continually in his presence yea & that he may give
in this people know that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all
that which the Lamanites have taken from us which was for an awful price & now
I will close mine Epistle I am the Helaman the Son of Helaman

Chapter XXVII

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth
year of the reign of the Judges among the people of Nephi after Moroni had received &
had read Helaman's Epistle he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the well
fare yea & exceeding success which Helaman had had in obtaining those lands
which were lost yea & he did make it known unto all his people in all the land
round about in that part where he was that they might rejoice also & it came to
pass that he immediately sent an Epistle to Shimon desiring that he should
cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman on the armies of Helaman
inasmuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land
which he had been so miraculously prospered in retaining & it came to pass
when Moroni had sent that Epistle to the land of Shimon he began again to
lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions which
the Lamanites had taken from them & it came to pass that when Moroni was in
making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle he told the people of
Nephi which were gathered together from the city of Moroni & the city of
Lehi & the city of Manti were attacked by the Lamanites yea & many of those
which had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti & the land round
about had come out & joined the Lamanites in this part of the land & thus
being exceeding numerous yea & receiving strength from day to day by the
command of Shimon they came forth against the people of Nephi & they

And he began to speak unto them concerning great slaughter to their armies were
 numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephtali were obliged to flee before
 them & they came & were joined the army of Moroni & now as Moroni had
 received his word should be sent to the city of Nephtali to the assistance
 of the people to maintain that city & knowing that it was their duty to keep the
 city from falling into the hands of the ^{people to which it belonged} ~~Samonites~~ ^{them} he supposed that they would be
 able to maintain that city & therefore he retained all his force to maintain those
 other places which he had named & now when Moroni saw that the city of
 Nephtali was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful & began to ~~for~~ ^{be} ~~because~~ ^{doubt}
 the wickedness of the people whether they should not fall into the hands of
 their brethren now this was the case with all his chief captains that doubted
 & marvelled also because of the wickedness of the people & this because of the
 case of the Samonites even then it came to pass that Moroni was angry with
 the government because of ~~the~~ ^{his} ~~indiscretion~~ ^{discretion} concerning the freedom of their country
 & it came to pass that he wrote again to the government of the land which was
 at that time these are the words which he wrote saying behold I direct mine
 eye to the city of Nephtali in the city of Nephtali which is the chief judge & the governor
 of the land & also to all those who have been a burden to this people to govern
 & to manage the affairs of this man for behold I have somewhat to say unto them
 by the way of condemnation for behold ye yourselves know that ye have been
 appointed to gather together men & arm them with swords & with similitudes &
 all manner of weapons of war ~~in every~~ ^{in every} kind & send forth against the Samonites in
 various parts they should come into our land & now behold I say unto you that
 ye & also my men & also the Laman & his men have suffered exceeding great
 things for even hangings & all manner of afflictions of every kind
 have been upon us & all we have suffered we would not murmur nor com-
 plain but behold great has been the slaughter among ~~the~~ ^{our} people & ~~thousands~~
 have fallen by the sword while it might have otherwise been if ye had
 rendered unto our armies sufficient strength & succour for then ye great has
 been your neglect towards us & now behold we desire to know the cause of this ex-
 ceeding great neglect ye our desire to know the cause of your thoughtless-
 ness can ye think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor while
 your enemies are spreading the work of death around you ye while they
 are murdering thousands of your brethren ye even they which have look-
 ed up to you for protection ye have placed you in a situation that ye
 might have succeeded them ye ye might have sent armies unto them
 to have strengthened them & have saved thousands of them from falling

by the sword but he had this mind all ye have withheld your sacrifices & I
penitence inasmuch that many have sought their lives because of
their great distress which this had for the welfare of this people yea & this they
have done when they were about to perish with hunger because of your neglecting
great neglect towards them & now my beloved brethren for ye had
ought to be beloved & ye had ought to have loved yourselves more diligently
for the well being & redemption of this people but he said ye have neglected
them inasmuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for
vengeance ye for know unto God were all their evils & all their sufferings he
could have said ye suppose that ye could tell of your sins & because of the inwiring
goodness of God ye could do nothing & he would deliver you he said if ye have
supposed this ye have supposed in vain & ye suppose that because so many of your
brethren have been killed because of their wickedness say unto you if
ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain & say unto you that there
are many who have fallen by the sword & he said it is to your condemnation
for ye have suffered the righteous to be slain that his justice & judg-
ment may come upon the wicked & he said ye need not suppose that the right-
eous are lost because they are slain but he said they do enter into the rest of the
Lord therefore I would have said & say unto you I am sure that the judg-
ment of God will come upon you because of their inwiring slaying of
ye even the slaying of our government & their neglecting great neglect towards
their brethren ye that who have been slain for us & not for the wicked-
ness which, but because of our sinners we could have withstood our ene-
mies that they could have gained no power over us ye have said not being for the
war which broke out among ourselves ye have said not for those things men
who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves ye at the time we were con-
tending among ourselves we had united our strength we had brethren to hand down
ye had it not been for the desire of power & authority which those things
had over us had they been true to the cause of our freedom & united with us to
goe forth against our enemies instead of taking up their swords against us which
was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves if we had gone forth
against them in the strength of the Lord we should have dispersed our enemies for
it would have been done according to the fulfilling of his word that he hold
now the Lamanites are coming upon us & they are murdering our people with the
sword & our women & our children taking possession of our lands & also
carrying them away captive causing them that they should suffer all manner

1st afflictions & tribulations because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking to gain
 an inheritance in that Kingdom. But why should I say much concerning
 this matter ~~but~~ ^{for} we know not but what ye yourselves are a seeking for authority
 we know not but what ye are also traitors to your country or is it that ye have
 neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country & ye are surrounded by
 security that ye do not care to lead to it that route as it also men to strengthen
 our armies have ye forgot the commandments of the Lord your God ye have forgot
 the captivity of our fathers have ye forgot the many times we have been de-
 livered out of the hands of our enemies or do ye suppose that the Lord will still
 deliver us while we sit upon our thrones & do not make use of the means which
 the Lord hath provided for us ye will sit in idleness while ye are sur-
 rounded with thousands of those ye a ^{which do} ~~thousands of~~ ^{also sit in idleness}
 while there are thousands around about in the borders of the land who are
 falling by the sword ye wounded & bleeding do ye suppose that God will
 look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still & behold these things be-
 hold ye say now we would that ye should remember how that God hath
 said that the iniquitous shall be consumed but then shall the righteous
 be established now cometh ye down ye say that which ye have done & begin to be
 up & doing & send forth lead & men unto us as also unto Helaman that he may sup-
 ply those parts of our country which he hath retained that we may also receive
 the remainder of our possession in these parts behold it will be expedient that
 we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first obtained our ^{inward}
 peace & then the great head of our government & except ye grant mine spirit
 & come out & show unto me a true spirit of freedom & strength & courage
 our armies & grant unto them food for their support we hold that we will leave a part
 of my brethren to maintain this part of our land we will leave the strength
 of the blessings of God upon them that none other power can oppose against them &
 this because of their exceeding faith & that in times of their tribulations we will
 come unto you & that be any among you that hath a desire for freedom ye if ye
 be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold it will stir up in us motions among
 you until those who have desires to have power & authority shall become
 content ye behold & do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my
 God whom I fear & it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword
 to defend the cause of my country & it is because your iniquity that we have
 suffered so much loss behold it is time ye take the time in ^{now} ~~that~~ hand that ye
 do do ye sit ye yourselves in the defence of your country & your little ones the women

justice shall hang over you yet but I shall all my power & wisdom exert to your
destruction be hold & wait for assistance, & my power & wisdom shall be to you
the same as will of be hold & come into the land of Zarahemla &
smite you with the sword inasmuch that ye can have no more power to impede
the progress of the cause & my wisdom be hold the Lord will not
suffer that ye shall live & man & thing in your iniquities to all time his righteous
people be hold can you suppose that the Lord will spare you to come out in judgment
against the Tamarites when shall the tradition of their fathers that hath caused ^{their}
hated you & it hath been revealed by them who have dissented from us who
ill your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory & the vain things of the world
ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God & ye do know that ye do transgress them
under your feet be hold the Lord will not spare you when ye are of you
shall your powerments not report of their sins & iniquities ye shall go up to battle
against them & now be hold the Lord is now according to the covenant
which I have made to keep the commandments of God ^{my} therefore I would that
ye should not hear to the word of God & ye should not be one of you for ever
sons of your men & also Helaman & be hold if ye will not do this I would
ye to fall & ye shall for be hold God will not suffer that we should perish with
hunger therefore we will give you some of your food & even if it must be by the sword
and now see that ye fulfil the word of God be hold I am Amron your Chief
Captain I seek not for power but to pull it down I seek not for honour of the
world but for the glory of my God & the freedom & well fare of my country
thus I leave mine Epistle Chapter XXVIII ----- I would now it
seemeth good that I have to write and send his Epistle unto the Chief governor
for he received and little from and hear the Chief Governor & therefore the words which
I have written & in which I have said that his governor of this land do send these words
unto Amron the Chief Captain and he say be hold I say unto you Amron I
do not say in your great afflictions yet it grieves my soul but be hold
there are still who do say in your afflictions & inasmuch that they have risen
up in rebellion against me & also against my people who are free men yet & these
who have risen up are including numerous & it is that who have sought to take
away the judgment that I have said that have been the cause of this rebellion
it is for they are with great flattery & they have led away the hearts of many
of the people who will be the cause of some affliction among us they have
with be hold our provisions & have daunted our free men that they have
not come unto you & be hold they have driven me out before them & I

324 We have fled to the land of Giddion with as many men as it were
possible that I could get to behold I have sent a proclamation through-
out this part of the land to behold they are flocking to us daily to their arms
in the defence of their country & their freedom to be avenge our wrongs & they have
said unto us in so much that those which were ~~in~~ in rebellion against
us are set at defiance & in so much that they desire us to draw out
and ~~to battle~~ against us to battle they have got possession of the land of the
City of Jarahom. They have appointed a King over them & he hath written unto
the King of the Lamanites in the which he hath gained an alliance with him
in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the City of Jarahom &
in the which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to
conquer the remainder of the land & he shall be placed King over this peo-
ple when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites & now in your Epistle
He ye hath censured me but it matters not I am not angry but de-
rejoice in the greatness of your hearts & I know ye will seek for peace & an-
nity to retain my judgement that that I may preserve the rights & the
liberty of my people my soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God
hath made me free & now he hold me will never ~~in~~ in wickedness & in unrighteous-
ness I should shed we would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in
their own land we would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would
not rise up in rebellion & take the sword against us we would subject our-
selves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God or if he
should command us so to do shall he hold he doth not command us that we
shall subject ourselves to our enemies but that we should put our trust in
him & he will deliver us therefore my beloved Brethren I beseech let us resist
evil & not be overcome by evil we cannot resist with our words such as rebelli-
ons & dissensions let us resist them with our swords that we may retain
our freedom that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our Church & in
the cause of our redemption & our God therefore come unto me speedily with a
few of your men & leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi & Lamoni
unto them I beseech to conduct them in that part of the land according to the
law of God which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them he hold I
have sent a few provisions unto them that they may not lack until ye can es-
cape unto me & then together what manner force ye can upon your march ~~hither~~
& we will go against those dissenters in the strength of our God according to

the faith which is in us & we will take possession of the City of Jacobland 325
that we may obtain more seed to send forth unto the heathen & we will go
forth against them in the strength of the Lord & we will put an end to this great
iniquity [now] Moroni did say in mentioning you & his little army was somewhat
wounded concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go ag-
ainst our brethren, but he have said except they repent the Lord hath commanded
you that ye should go against them & that ye should then I & I & I & I in the
Lord tell them to fear not for God will deliver them & we also all those who
stand fast in that liberty which with God hath made them free & now I dare
write Epistle writing, beloved brother, Moroni Chapter XIX
I send now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this Epistle
his heart did take courage & was filled with exceeding joy, because of the faith-
fulness of the Lord that he was not also a traitor to the freedom & cause of his coun-
try but he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had
driven them from the judgment seat & in fine because of those who had rebel-
led against their law & also their God & it came to pass that Moroni took a small number
of men according to the desire of the Lord against I & I & I & I commanding ^{men} the
remainder of his army to take ^{his} march towards the land of Gideon & he did
raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter against whatsoever
force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon & it came to pass ^{that}
thousands did flock unto his standard & did take up their arms in the defence
of their freedom that they might not come into ^{bondage} ~~trouble~~ thus when Moroni
had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march he came to the
land of Gideon & uniting his forces with that of the Lord they became exceeding
strong ^{stronger} ~~stronger~~ than the men of the king, which was the king of those dissenters
which had driven out the government of the land of Jacobland & had taken
possession of the land & it came to pass that Moroni & the Lord went down with their
armies into the land of Jacobland & went forth against the City & did meet the
men of the king inasmuch that they did come to battle & behold the king was
slain & his men were taken prisoners & the Lord was restored to his judgment
& the men of the king received their trial according to the law & also those
kingmen which had been taken & cast into prison & they were executed ac-
cording to the law & the men of the king & those kingmen in whatsoever
not take up arms in defence of their country but would fight against it were
put to death & thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly ob-
served

But for the safety of their surviving years, whose names were found & denying their
freedom was speedily executed according to the law & thus ended the thirtieth year
of the reign of the Judges over the people of Zephi. Mononihah having restored
peace to the land of Zarahemla among their own people having inflicted death
upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom & it came to pass in
the commencement of the thirty-first year of the reign of the Judges over the people
of Zephi Mononihah immediately caused that provisions should be sent & also
an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman to assist him in
breaching that part of the land & he also caused that an army of six thousand men
with a sufficient quantity of food should be sent to the arms of Zephi & Helaman
& it came to pass that this was done to help the land against the Lamanites &
it came to pass that Mononihah having a large body of men in the land of
Zarahemla took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Zephi
they being determined to enter the Lamanite city that city did come to pass
they were marching towards the land they took a large body of men of the Lamanites &
then many of them took the provisions & their weapons of war & it came to pass
after they had taken them they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would
no more take of their weapons of war against the Zephi & when they had entered
into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Zephi & they were
in number about ten thousand who had not been slain & it came to pass
that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land
of Zephi & it came to pass that when they had come to the city Zephi they did pitch
their tents in the plains of Zephi which is near the city Zephi now known
as was the case & that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them
upon the plains but the Lamanites knowing of their breeding great courage & ^{to holding}
the greatness of their numbers therefore they did not come out against them
therefore they did not come to battle in that day & when the night came Mononihah
went forth in the darkness of the night & came upon the top of the wall to
spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army & it
came to pass that they were on the last day the Lamanites they were all asleep &
now Mononihah returned to his army & caused that they should prepare in haste
strong cords & ladders to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner
part of the wall & it came to pass that Mononihah caused that his men should march
in the night upon the top of the wall & let themselves down into that part of
the city which was upon the west where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies

it came to pass that they were all led down into the city by night by the means of
their strong cords & their ladders & it was when the morning came they were all within
in the walls of the city & now when the Lamanites awoke & saw that the armies
of Moroni were within the walls they were affrightened exceedingly in some
such that they did flee out by the loss of some when Moroni saw that they were
repleting before him he did direct that his men should march against it against
them & it was many & surrounded many & that is took the prisoners & the remain
ing of them & led into the land of Shinarump which was in the borders by the sea there
that had Moroni's intention obtained the possession of the city of Tophibah with
out the loss of one soul & there were many of the Lamanites who were slain more
it came to pass that as many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous
to join the people of Shinarump & become a free people & it came to pass as many
as were desirous to do so it was granted according to their desires therefore all the
prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Shinarump & did begin to labour quick
ly telling the ground raising & sowing of grain & looking & looking & sowing
& thus were the Tophibah released from a great burden they were in some such that they
were then released from all the prisons of the Lamanites & now it came to pass that
at Moroni after he had obtained possession of the city of Tophibah having let
the many prisoners who did desire the arms of the Lamanites & Moroni's hand
ing retained many of the Tophibah who had been taken prisoners which did strength
en the army of Moroni exceedingly therefore Moroni went forth from the land
of Tophibah to the land of Shinarump & it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw
that Moroni was coming against them they were again frightened & fled before the
army of Moroni & it came to pass that Moroni's army did pursue them from
City to City until they were met by Shinarump & the Lamanites fled from
Shinarump down upon the borders by the Sea there until they came
to the land of Moroni & the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together
inasmuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni now Shinarump
the King of the Lamanites was also with them & it came to pass that Moroni & Shinarump
did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of
Moroni inasmuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by
the wilderness on the south & in the borders by the wilderness on the east & they
did encamp in the night for behold the Tophibah & the Lamanites also were
in camp because of the greatness of the march therefore they did not resolve
upon any stratagem in the night time & it was Shinarump for he was exceedingly
angry with Shinarump inasmuch that he concluded that Shinarump & the

31.5 - alibiah, his Brother had been the cause of this great & lasting war betw
them the Lamanites which had been the cause of many a bloodshed yea &
so much famine & it came to pass that Shalam in his anger did go forth into the
camp of the Lamanites & did sit himself down upon the walls of the City & he went
forth with a cast from place ^{to place} inasmuch that he did find the King & he did cast a spear in
at him which did pierce him in the hand but he held the King did awake his
servant before he died inasmuch that they did know Shalam was dead they were exceedingly
sorrowful for he held he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country
yea a true friend to liberty & he had suffered many & exceeding sore afflictions
but he held he was dead & had gone the way of all the earth now it came to pass that
Inomoni marched forth upon the morrow & came upon the Lamanites inasmuch that
they did fight them with great bloodshed & did slay the man of the land &
they did flee even so that they did not return at that time against the Nephites & thus
ended the thirty & first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi & thus
they saw war & bloodshed & famine & affliction for the space of many years &
there had been murders & contentions & dissensions & all manner of iniquity among
the people of Nephi for the righteousness was because of the prayers of the right-
eous they were spared but he held because of the exceeding great length of the war
between the Nephites & the Lamanites many had become weary because
of the exceeding great length of the war & many were ^{in bondage} because of their aff-
lictions inasmuch that they did humble themselves before God even in the dol-
or of humility & it came to pass that after Inomoni had fortified those parts of the
land which were most exposed to the Lamanites until they were sufficiently stor-
ing he returned to the city of Zarahemla & also Helaman returned to the place
of his inheritance there was once again established among the people of Nephi
& Inomoni yielded up the command of his army into the hands of his Son whose name
was Inosomah & he retired to his own House that he might spend the remain-
der of his days in peace & he would return to his judgment seat & Helaman
did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God for because
of so many wars & contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be
made ^{again} in the church therefore Helaman & his brethren went forth & did illu-
minate the word of God with much power & unto the convincing many of the people
of their wickedness which did cause them to repent of their sins & he baptised unto
the Lord then God & it came to pass that they did establish again the Church of
God throughout all the land yea & regulations were made concerning the law & the

Judges & their chief judges were chosen & the people of Nephi began to prosper ³²⁹
again in the land & began to multiply & ^{to} men exceeding many again in the land & they began
to grow exceedingly rich but notwithstanding their riches or their strength or their power
they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes over them when they slow to re-
member the Lord their God but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him
yea they did remember how great things ^{the Lord} he had done for them that he had delivered
them from death & from bonds & from prisons & from all manner of afflictions &
he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & they did pray unto the
Lord their God continually inasmuch that the Lord did bless them according to his
word so that they did wax strong & prosper in the land & it came to pass that all
these things were done & Helaman died in the thirty fifth year of the reign of the
judges was the people of Nephi Chapter XXX

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty & sixth year of the
reign of the judges over the people of Nephi that a rebellion arose & those
sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma & he was a just
man & he did ~~not~~ ^{walk} uprightly before God & he did a little to degrade continually to
keep the commandments of the Lord he did & also did his brother & it came to pass that
Inomoni did also & thus ended the thirty & sixth year of the reign of the judges &
it came to pass that in the thirty & seventh year of the reign of the judges that was
a large company of men even to the amount of five thousand & four hundred ^{men}
& their wives & their children departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the
land which was northward & it came to pass that Harith he being ^{an} ex-
ceeding curious man therefore he went forth & built him an exceedingly large
ship on the borders of the land bountiful by the land Desolation & la-
unched it forth into the great sea by the narrow neck which led into the land
Northward & whithersoever they went many of the Nephites which were in the land did
sail with much provision & did many women & children & they took their course
Northward & thus ended the thirty & seventh year & in the thirty & eighth year this man
built other ships & the first ship did not return & many more ^{ships} did enter in
it & they also took much provision & set out again for the land Northward & it came
to pass that they were never heard of more & we suppose that they were drowned in the
great sea & it came to pass that one of these ships did also did sail in it
& whether I judge we know not & it came to pass that in this year there were
many people who went forth into the land Northward & thus ended the thirty & eighth
year & it came to pass in the thirty & ninth year of the reign of the judges Shiblon
did also & Corianton had gone forth to the land Northward in a ship to carry forth

331
 Pachamuni when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment seat he did
 send with the name of the people but he held Pachachi's that is of the people that
 were dissatisfied that he should be their Governor was exceedingly wrath with them for he was
 without in taking away those people to raise up in rebellion against their brethren &
 it came to pass that he was about to do this he held he was taking was tried ac-
 cording to the voice of the people & condemned unto death for he had raised up in re-
 bellion & sought to destroy the liberty of the people now when those people which
 were dissatisfied that he should be their Governor saw that he was condemned
 to death therefore they were angry & he held they sent for one Kishkamen even to
 the judgment seat of Pachon & murdered Pachon as he sat upon the judgment seat &
 he was pursued by the women & it was but he held so he held was the light of
 Kishkamen that no man could overtake him to be near unto them that sent him
 & they all entered into a covenant & a swearing by their ever lasting Maker that they
 would tell no man that Kishkamen had murdered Pachon therefore Kishkamen
 was not known among the people & for the same he was disguised at the time that
 he murdered Pachon & Kishkamen's his band which had conspired with him
 did mingle themselves among the people in a manner that they all could not be seen
 but as many as were found were condemned unto death & now he held Pachamuni
 was appointed according to the voice of the people he set a chief judge & a governor over
 the people to reign in the stead of his Brother Pachon & it was according to his right
 & all this was done in the sixth year of the reign of the judges & it had an end & it came
 to pass in the first year of the reign of the judges that the Samanites had gather-
 ed together an innumerable army of men armed them with swords & with sim-
 itars & with bows & with arrows & with head plates & with breast plates & with all man-
 ner of shields of every kind & they came down again that they might fight battle aga-
 inst the Ephraimites & this was led by a man whose name was Oriantum & he
 was a descendent of Gasa hemla & he was a dissenter from among the Ephraimites & he was a
 large & a mighty man & therefore the king of the Samanites whose name was Lubad
 sent who was the son of Shimmon, ~~was sent to~~ supposing that Oriantum
 being a mighty man would stand against the Ephraimites in so much with their
 strength & also with his great wisdom that by sending him forth he should gain
 power over the Ephraimites therefore he did stir them up to anger & he did gather together
 his army & he did appoint Oriantum to be their leader & it did come that
 he marched down into the land of Gasa hemla to battle against the Ephraimites & it
 came that because of so much contention & so much difficulty in the going

33 And they had not kept sufficient guards in the land. And he said,
For they had supposed that the Lamanites should not come into the heart of the land.
And it came to pass that the great city which was in the land did come to pass that Coriantumner
did march forth at the head of his numerous host to come upon the inhabitants of the
city. And when he came there with exceeding great speed, that there was no time for
the Nephites to gather together their armies, like as Coriantumner did cut down the watch
by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, &
he did slay every one who did oppose them, inasmuch that they did take possession
of the whole city. And it came to pass that Benoni, which was the chief judge of
the whole Coriantumner, when he was in the midst of the city, he came to pass that Coriantumner
did smite him against the wall, inasmuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Ben-
oni. And now, when Coriantumner saw that it was in possession of the city, he saw
that the Nephites had fled before him, and he did slay every one that he met, and he did
burn the city, and he did obtain the possession of the strength of all the land, and he
did not leave any in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army,
even towards the city of Jerusalem, for it was his determination to go to the end of his way
through the land, that he might obtain the possession of the land, & he did say that
the greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march, but giving them
no time to assemble all Jerusalem together, save it were in small numbers, and in the morn-
ing he did fall upon them, and did smite them down to the earth, that hehold this march of
Coriantumner through the center of the land, gave Mosiah a great advantage over
them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites which were slain.
For hehold, Mosiah had supposed that the Lamanites should not come into the
center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders,
as they had always done, therefore Mosiah had caused that the Lamanites should
maintain those parts round about by the borders, but hehold the Laman-
ites were not frightened according to his desire, but they did come into the center
of the land, and did take the capital city, which was the city of Zarahemla, and he
did march through the main capital city of the land, slaying the people with a great sla-
ughter, both men, women, & children, taking possession of many cities & of many
strong holds, but when Mosiah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth
with him an army, man and beast, to head them, before they should come to the land
Beautiful.

And thus he did, & in that hour they began their journey to the land. Beautiful, & 333
 and once their battle increased, that they began to retreat back, towards the land of
 Gadianton, & it came to pass, that Inoronihah did stand firm in their retreat, &
 did give unto them battle increased, that it became an exceeding bloody battle, & many
 were slain, & among the number which were slain, Concanum was also slain, &
 now behold, the Lamanites could not retreat, neither was there an enemy
 upon the land, & now on the east, now on the west, for they were surrounded every
 hand by the Lamanites, & now Concanum, & Inoronihah, & the Lamanites, & the
 Lamanites, inasmuch that they were in the power of the Lamanites, & he himself was slain, &
 the Lamanites did give themselves into the hands of the Lamanites, & it came to pass that Inoronihah
 took possession of the city of Gadianton again, & caused that the Lamanites
 which had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace, & he
 did the 1st & 2nd year of the reign of the judges, & it came to pass in the 3rd
 & 4th year of the reign of the judges, after Inoronihah had again established
 himself, & peace between the Lamanites & the Lamanites, he held there was no one to fill
 the judgment seat, therefore there began to be a contention again among the people
 concerning who should fill the judgment seat, & it came to pass that Helaman, who
 was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment seat, by the voice of the
 people, but he held, Hishkumen, who had murdered Tabor, did lay wait to destroy
 Helaman also, & he was upheld by his hand, which had entered into a covenant, that
 no one should know his wickedness, for there was one Gadianton, who was en-
 deavouring to carry on the secret work of murder, & of robbery, therefore he became the leader of the band of Hishkumen, & therefore
 he did gather them, & also Hishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment
 seat, he would grant unto them, & he longed to his hand that they should be placed
 in power & authority among the people, therefore Hishkumen sought to destroy Helaman, &
 it came to pass, as he went forth towards the judgment seat, it did say Helaman,
 he held out a servant of Helaman, having learned by night, & having obtained
 through his servant, & through the servant, which had been said by his hand to destroy
 Helaman, & it came to pass that it was Hishkumen, & he gave unto him a sign, therefore Hishkumen
 made known unto him the sign of his device, & receiving that he would stand him to
 the judgment seat, that he might be murdered, & he came to the judgment seat when the servant
 of Helaman had knelt behind of Hishkumen, & he saw that it was his object to murder, & also
 it was the object of all those who belonged to his hand, to murder, & to rob, & to gain, &
 this was their secret plan, & their combination, the Gadianton, Helaman, & the Hishkumen
 men, & he went forth unto the judgment seat, now this did please Hishkumen exceedingly,
 for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design, but he held the servant, Helaman,
 as they were going forth unto the judgment seat, did stab Hishkumen with the
 sword, & he was slain, Helaman all the

337 things, which he had seen, & said, & it came to pass that Helaman did send
forth to take this band of robbers & scoundrel multitude, that they might be executed according to the
law, but he told Joshua Gadimon, that he had found that Ashkimeu did not attempt, feared at last
that he should be destroyed, therefore he caused that his hand should follow him, & they
went forth, & light out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness, thus when Helaman
sent forth to take them, they could no where be found, & more of the Gadimon shall be spoken
on hereafter, that ended the 10th & 11th year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi,
as he told in the end of this chapter, & shall see that the Gadimon did cause the overthrowing
almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi, he told I do not mean the end of the
Book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the Book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the
account, which I have written. — Chapter 11

And then it came to pass in the 12th & 13th year, the reign of the judges, there was
no contention among the people, & after that it was a little peace, which was in the
land, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled
in the ending of the 14th & 15th year, & there was no contention among the people in
the 16th & 17th year, neither was there much contention in the 18th & 19th year, & it
came to pass in the 20th & 21st year, there were much contentions & many dissensions in
the which there were exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla
& went forth unto the land northward, & in that the land they did travel to a considerable
great distance, inasmuch that they came to large bodies of water, & among themselves
& when they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatsoever parts it had not
been rendered desolate, & without timber, because of the many inhabitants who
before inhabited the land, & now no more, the land was desolate, & it was for them
because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before
inhabited the land, it was called desolate, there being but little timber upon the
face of the land, nevertheless the people who were forth, became exceedingly expert in the
working of cement, therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they will
dwell, & it came to pass that they did multiply & spread & build up for them from the
land southward to the land northward, & did spread inasmuch that they began
to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea in lands to the sea south, from the sea
west to the sea east, & the people which were in the land northward, did it well in lands
in houses of cement, & they did say, for whatsoever we should spring up upon the face of
the land, that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses,
yea, their cities, & their temples, & their synagogues, & their schools, & all manner of their
buildings, & it came to pass as timber was exceeding scarce in the land northward, they did
send out much by the way of ship, & they did send a bill the people in the land
northward, that they might build many cities, houses, & cement, & it came to
pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, which were demanded by the king, &
did also go forth into this land, & now there are many words left of the proceedings

[illegible]

338. they say that they have been a stiffnecked people & that they had not at night
kept the commandments; & said that ~~that~~ they had altered & transgressed under the
name of the laws of Moses, on that which the Lord commanded him to give unto
the people & thus saying that these laws had become corrupted that they had been
and a wicked people ^{like} inasmuch that they were ^{like} the Lamanites & be-
cause of their iniquity & because they had begun to transgress & began to be wicked in the
spirit of prosperity & in the voice of revelation & the judgments of God did stand them
in the face & the Lord said they had become ^{weak} like unto them because the Laman-
ites the spirit of the Lord was not upon them & they were not with drawn from
the land because the spirit of the Lord dwelt not dwell in an holy temple therefore they
did ^{close} ~~not~~ to receive them by his mercies & his judgments because they had fallen
into a state of unbelief & awful wickedness & they saw that the Lamanites were
more entering numerous than they & said if they should ^{close} ~~submit~~ unto the Lord the
Lord God they must unavoidably perish & behold they saw that the strength
of the Lamanites was as great as their strength men man for man & thus had they
fallen into their transgression & they had become weak because of their
transgression in the space of not many years & it came to pass that in this same year he
held up his hand up to the judgment seat to a man whose name was Cezoram for
as these laws & his government were established by the voice of the people & they
which ~~he~~ ^{he} had said were more numerous than they which I have said therefore they
were ripening for destruction for the laws had become corrupted & it was not
all they were a stiffnecked people inasmuch that they would not be governed by
the law nor justice and it were to their destruction & it came to pass that to Phihah
became very wise & his integrity & he was raised up to the judgment seat & took it
upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days & his brother Lehi
also all the remainder of his days for they remembered the words which their father
Helaman spoke unto them & they are the words which I speak Behold my sons
desire that ye should remember the commandments of God & I demand that ye
should declare unto the people these words to hold ~~fast~~ & have given unto you the
names of our first parents which I came out of the land of Jerusalem & this I have done that
when ye remember the names that ye may remember them & when ye remember
them ye may remember their words & when ye remember their words ye may
know how that it is said & also written that they were good that I, my sons & I
said that ye should do that which is good that it may be said of you & also written
even as it has been said & written of them & now behold my sons behold I have
said some what more to desire of you which desire is that ye may not do these
things that ye may boast but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourself
a treasure in Heaven good which is eternal & which leadeth not away but
that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life which ye have received

[illegible]

34th he held they were first in the prison to make the motion they might lay
them with the 100 to pass that Joseph & John were authorized to do. they were
informed that they should not lay their hands upon him for from that they should
be banished. never the less they did not know the manner & they were standing in
the midst of the people. he heard a voice say that they were authorized
about with a pillar of fire & that it burned them not their hearts did not
tremble. In this way that the Laminites did not lay their hands upon them neither
didst they know the manner of it. but stand as if they were struck dumb with a
amazement & it came to pass that Joseph & John did stand forth & began to speak
to them saying dear nation for we have it of God that hath shown unto you this
marvellous thing in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands upon
anymore to lay us & to hold us when they had said these words the earth shook exceedingly
& the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth
but he held they did not fall & he held they that were in the prison were Laminites
& Joseph & John were dissenters & it came to pass that they were overshadowed with
a cloud & darkness & an awful ^{sole} ~~voice~~ ^{light} came upon them & it came
to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness saying re-
pent ye & do not ye & seek no more to destroy my servants which I have sent unto
you to declare good tidings & it came to pass when they heard this voice & he
held that it was not a voice of thunder neither was it a voice of a great tumultu-
ous noise but he held it was a ^{still} voice of perfect mildness as if it
had been a whisper & it did him so even to the very soul & notwithstanding the
loudness of the voice he held that the walls were shaking & the walls of the prison trembled
again as if it were about to tumble to the earth & he held that the cloud of darkness which had
overshadowed them did not disappear & he held the voice came again saying repent ye
for the kingdom of heaven is at hand & seek no more to destroy my servants &
it came to pass that the walls shook again & the walls trembled & a 3^d again the third
time the voice came & did speak unto them in many words which cannot be re-
lated here & the walls did tremble again & the earth shook as if it were about to
divide & rend. & it came to pass that the Laminites could not see because of the cloud
of darkness which did overshadow them & yet they were all informed till because
the cloud which did come upon them now first was one among them who was a high priest
who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissembled from them & it
came to pass that he learned him that he held he saw through the cloud of dan-
kness the faces of Joseph & John & he held they did shine exceedingly even as the face
of Angels & he held that they did lift their eyes to heaven & they were in the attitude
as if talking or lifting their voices for some thing which ^{at that} ~~which~~ he held & it came to
pass that this man did cry unto the multitude that they might turn & look
& behold that was said given unto them that they did turn & look & they did

[illegible]

...that he had said, and now it came to pass that when the Sananites
found that there were such things among them they were exceedingly sorrowful & they did all
every means whatsoever means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth
but he held them still, & it came to pass that the more parts of the Nephites increased
that they did unite with these bands of robbers & did enter into their covenants &
their oaths that they would do as the robbers & persecute one another in what was no diffi-
cult circumstances. This then led to the place in that they should not suffer for
their murders & their plunderings & their stealings & it came to pass that they did ha-
ve their signs & their secret signs & their secret words & this that they might
be able to do that which they had entered in & the covenant that whatsoever wickedness
his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor those who
did he long to his hand who had taken his covenant & thus they might murder
& plunder & steal & commit all manner of wickedness contrary to the
laws of their country & also the counsel their God & whosoever of these things belonged to
their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness & their abominations
should be tried not according to the laws of their country but according to the laws
of their wickedness which had been given by Gadanton & his followers now
behold it is their secret oaths & covenants which yet have commended his God &
could not go forth unto the world lest they should be a means of bringing down the
people unto destruction now he said that ^{these} oaths & covenants did not
come forth unto Gadanton from the records which were delivered unto the
man but behold they were put into the heart of Gadanton by that same being who
did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit yea that same being
who did stand with Cain that if he would murder his brother Abel it should
id not be known unto the world & he did all with Cain & his followers from the
time forth to also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to
build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to Heaven & it was that same
being which lead on the people which came from that tower into this land which
spread the words of darkness & abominations over all the face of the land until he
dragged the people down to an entire destruction & to an everlasting Hell yea it
is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadanton to still bring on the
word of darkness & of secret murder & he hath brought it forth from the beginning
of man's residence to this time & he hold it is he which is the author of all sin
& he hold he hath cast on his workers darkness & secret murder & doth hand down
his plots & his oaths & their covenants & their plans of awful wickedness from
generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children
of men & now behold he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites yea
inasmuch that they had become exceedingly wicked yea the more part of them
had turned out of the way of righteousness & did triumph under their plots

[illegible]

348 not the Lord had come according to his promise & now will he dispath
that Jerusalem was not destroyed until he say that the sons of Judah were
not slain all except it were he to keep & do ye not behold that the seed of Judah
are with us & they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem but he said this is not
all our Father. He was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things
which are testified of these things & also almost all of our fathers & even down to
this time and they have testified of the coming of Christ & have looked forward &
have rejoiced in his day which is to come & he told he is God & he is with them
& he did more at Jerusalem than that they were redeemed by him & they gave
unto him glory because of that which is to come & now seeing ye know these things &
cannot deny them except ye shall tell otherwise in this ye have sinned for ye
have rejected all these things without understanding so many evidences which ye have
received & even ye have received all things both things in Heaven & all things
which are in earth are witnesses that they are true but he told ye have rejected the
truth & he told against your holy God & against his time instead of laying up for
yourselves treasure in Heaven in that nothing shall corrupt & where nothing can
out which is eternal ^{ye are} hoping up for yourselves wrath against the day of Judgment & ye
know this time ye are ripening because of your murders & your covetousness & your
edness for everlasting destruction & ye except ye repent it will come unto you soon
ye & behold it is now & even at your doors & ye are in unto the judgment seat & ye
shall be told & ye shall be numbered & he told in his blood & he hath been man-
nured by his brother who is with him in the judgment seat & he told ye shall be told
your word & hand whose answer is God's answer & the evil one which seeks to de-
stroy the souls of men he told now it came to pass that when Joseph had spoken these
things the Laman men who were among them now to the judgment seat & they saw
that were true which went & they said among themselves as they went he told
now we will know it is true who told that man he is a prophet & God will com-
mand them to prophesy such man as these things unto us he told us to not believe
one that he told your words that he told that he is a prophet never the less if this
thing which he hath said concerning the Chief Judge be true that he be dead
then will we believe that the other words which he hath spoken ^{are} true that
came to pass that they ran in their might & came in unto the judgment seat & he
told the Chief Judge had fallen to the earth & did lie in his blood & now he told
when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly inasmuch that they fell to
the earth for they had not believed the words which Joseph had spoken concern-
ing the Chief Judge but now when they saw they believed & fear came upon them
first all the judgments which Joseph had spoken & should come upon the people the
quake & the did quake & had fallen to the earth now immediately when the Chief Judge
had been murdered he being stabled by his brother by a gain of money & he

for the women came to the people, saying the cry of murder among them to 549.
behold, the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment seat, & behold,
the judge of the law came to the people, saying, I have been told that ye have gathered together, & now, behold,
I see the people, knowing nothing concerning the multitude which had gathered together at the
judgment seat. Therefore, they said among themselves, Behold, man, art thou which have murder-
dered the judge of God, that thou shouldst come here, that they could not see from whence it came to
pass that they laid hold on thee, & wouldst thou have them interpret for thee, & thou
proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain & that the murderers had been taken
& was sent into prison. It came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves
together to mourn the loss of the hand of the great chief judge, which had been slain
in & it was also that the judge was slain & that the murderers had been taken
were also gathered together at the burial, & it came to pass that they inquired among the
people saying, where are the five which were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge
(which is now dead) & they answered & said, concerning this five, which ye say ye had
sent, we know not, but there are five which are the murderers, whom we have
sent into prison. It came to pass that the judge desired that they should be brought
to the place where he was slain, & he held the five which were sent to inquire
inquired of them to know concerning the matter, & they told them all that they had
done, saying, we ran & came to the place of the judgment seat, & when we saw all things
as it was, we were terrified, & we were terrified in our hearts, & we were
when we were terrified, we were terrified in our hearts, & we were
the murderers, for we know not who have done it, & we know not who have
run & we are terrified, & we are terrified in our hearts, & we are
it now it came to pass that the judge did command the matter unto the people, & did say
against Kiphi, saying, we have known that this Kiphi must have agreed with someone
to slay the judge, & he might do so, & we know that he might be consented unto
to slay him, & he might have done it, & we know that he might be consented unto
now he hold, we will do that this man, & he shall be in his hand, & we shall
to us the true murderer, this judge & he came to pass that the five were liberated on the
day of the burial, & the judge did say unto the people, & did say
they had spoken against the law, & did contend with them, & he said in himself that they
did contend, & they were terrified, & they were terrified that they should be taken, & he
before the multitude, & they began to question him in many ways, that they might know
him, that they might know him, & he said unto them, saying, I have been
man that hath done this murder, now, tell us & we will know the guilt of
ying, behold, here is money, & also we will grant unto thee thy life, if thou wilt tell
us & acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him, but Kiphi
said unto them, O ye fools, ye are deceived, & ye are blind, & ye are stiff-necked
people, do ye know how long the Lord hath suffered that ye should go on

All things & all manner of inequalities did come to pass as he was just standing in his
 heart he said a voice came unto him saying blessed art thou ^{Joseph} for those things which
 thou hast done for I have be holden how thou hast dealt with ^{unbelievingness} ~~unbelievingness~~ ^{unbelief} ~~unbelief~~ the word
 whether any given unto thee unto this people & thou hast not feared them & hast not
 sought their counsel but hast sought counsel to keep my commandments & now here
 art thou hast done this with such unbeliefness be hold I will tell thee how I
 will make thee mighty in word & indeed in fact in words yet even that all things shall
 all be done unto thee according to the word for thou shalt not ask that which is contra-
 ry to my will be hold thou art Joseph & I am God be hold I declare it unto thee in the pre-
 sence of mine angels that yet shall have power over this people & shall visit the earth
 with famine & with pestilence & destruction according to the wickedness of this people
 be hold I give unto thee power that whatsoever ye shall feel on earth shall be do-
 ne in Heaven & whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in Heaven
 then shall ye have power among ^{brother} the people & thou of ye I had say unto this people it shall be
 woe in brain & it shall be done & ye I had say unto the mountain be thou cast
 down & become a plain & it shall be done & be hold of ye now say that God shall visit the
 is people it shall come to pass when I hold commandment that ye shall go & declare un-
 to the people that I am said I be hold God who is the Almighty sought ye repent ye shall
 be smitten even unto destruction & be hold now it came to pass that when the Lord had
 spoken these words unto Joseph he did stop & did not go unto his own house but did re-
 turn unto the multitude & he was scattered a bond upon the face of the land & began
 to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him concerning
 this destruction if they did not repent now be hold notwithstanding that great mi-
 nacle which Joseph had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief
 Judge they did harden their hearts & did not hearken unto the words of the Lord & then
 Joseph did declare unto them the word of the Lord saying except ye repent they
 shall be smitten even unto destruction & it came to pass that when
 Joseph had declared unto them the word ^{be hold} ~~for~~ they did still harden their hearts & would
 not hearken unto his words therefore they did revile against him & did seek to lay their
 hands upon him that they might cast him into prison but behold the power of God
 was with him & they could not lay him & cast him into prison for he was
 taken by the spirit & conveyed away out of the midst of them & it came to pass that
 thus he did go forth in the spirit from multitude to multitude declaring
 the word of God even until he had declared it unto them all & then among
 all the people & it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words & then
 began to be contentions in so much that they were divided against themselves & then
 began to slay one another with the sword & thus ended the seventy & first year of
 the reign of the Judges over the people of Joseph

32 (C. 11) III I did now it came to pass in the twenty
& second year of the reign of the judges that the famine began to increase insomuch
that ^{the} people were ⁱⁿ mourning all the land among all the people of the land it was
that there was a famine which did come on this week of destruction & wickedness
a time recorded last all that year & in the twenty & third year it did also last & it came
to pass that in this year the Lord did command the Lord saying O Lord do not let
that this people shall be destroyed by the sword that O Lord rather let there
be a famine in the land to bring them upon in mourning & at the Lord their God & per-
haps they will repent & turn unto Thee so it was done according to the words of
the Lord & there was great famine upon the land among all the people of the land & thus
in the twenty & fourth year the famine did continue & the work of destruction did cease
by the sword but because of the famine to this work of destruction did also contin-
ue in the twenty & fifth year for the Lord it was a matter that it was day & night not
cold & frost & rain in the season of grain to the whole earth was smitten & even among the
Lamanites as well as among the Nephites so that they were smitten that they did perish
by thousands in the most wicked parts of the land & it came to pass that the people saw
that they were a hand to perish by famine & they began to remember the Lord their God
& they began to remember the words of the Lord the people began to plead with their chief
judges & their leaders that they would say unto the Lord he hold us, know that there
is a man of God & that he say unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this
famine but all the words which they had spoken concerning a destruction he
fulfilled & it came to pass that the judges did say unto the Lord according to the words
which had been said & it came to pass that when the Lord saw that the people had
repented & did humble themselves in sackcloth & cried again unto the Lord say-
ing O Lord he hold this people & he said they have sinned against the hand of God
from amongst them insomuch that they have become evil & they have concealed
their secret plans in the earth now O Lord because of this their humility with them turn
away thine anger & let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked
men whom thou hast already destroyed O Lord will thou turn away thine anger
from these people & cause that famine may cease in this land O Lord will thou hear
their voice & cause that it may be done according to my words & send down rain upon
the face of the earth that she may bring forth her fruit & her grain in the season of grain
O Lord then did it hearken unto my words when I said let there be a famine that the pessi-
lence of the word might cease but know that there will even at this time hearken unto
my words for they said that if this people repent I will spare them yet O Lord &
they said that they have repented because of the famine & the pestilence & destruc-
tion which has come upon them & now O Lord will thou turn away thine anger &
say again if they will show that they will O Lord then ^{canst} thou bless them according

to thy word which thou hast said & it came to pass that in the seventy & sixth year
the Lord did turn away his anger from the people & caused that ^{rain} should fall
upon the earth in so much that it did bring forth his fruit in the season of his year
& it became known that it did bring forth his grain ^{in the} season of his grain & he held
the people in peace a long day & the whole face of the land was filled with
rejoicing & they did not mind seek to destroy Joseph but they did esteem him as
a great prophet & a man of God having great power & authority given unto him
from God & he held the people in peace a whole year behind him as to things pertaining
to righteousness & thus it did come to pass that the people of Joseph began to
assemble in the land & began to build up their walls & began to multiply
to spread them until it did cover the whole face of the land north on the Jordan
& on the south side from the Sea west to the Sea east & it came to pass that the
seventy & sixth year did end in peace & the seventy & seventh year began in blood
the Church did spread throughout the face of all the land & the most part of the
people both the Nephites & the Lamanites did belong to the Church & they did have
exceeding great peace in the land & it ended the seventy & seventh year
as they had peace in the seventy & eighth year saw it was a few contentions
the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets & in the
seventy & ninth year there began to be much strife but it came to pass that Joseph
& Lehi & many of them brethren which knew concerning the true bairn of doctrine
were having many consultations daily therefore they did breath unto the people
inasmuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year & it came to
pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the Judges even the
people of Joseph there were a certain number of the dissenters from the
people of Joseph which had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites &
were called by the name of Kamearites & also a certain number which were
remnants of the Lamanites being stirred up to anger by them by their
actions therefore they commenced a war with their brethren & they did commit murder
& plunder & then they would retreat back into the mountains & into the wil-
derness & secret places hiding themselves that they could not be discovered
neither daily an addition to their numbers in as much as there were dissenters that
went forth unto them & thus in a few years even in the space of not many years they
became an exceedingly great host of robbers & they did search out all the secret
places of Gadianton & thus they became robbers of Gadianton now he held these
robbers did make great havoc & great destruction among the people of Joseph
& also among the people of the Lamanites & it came to pass that it was expedient that
there should be a stop put to this work of destruction therefore they sent an army
of strong men into the wilderness & upon the mountains to search out this
band of robbers & to destroy them but behold it came to pass that in that same

& they were driven back into their own lands & thus ended the eighth year
 of the reign of the judges over the people. But it came to pass in the commencement
 of the ninth & first year they did go forth again against the band of robbers & did destroy
 many of them & were also visited with much affliction. They were again obliged to return
 out of the wilderness & out of the mountains unto their own lands because of the exceedingly
 great numbers of these robbers which infested the mountains & the wilderness
 & it came to pass that thus ended their year & the robbers did still increase & were strong
 inasmuch that they did defy the whole armie of the king & also of the Lamanites & they
 did cause great fear to come unto the people. Upon all this, again the land was for they did
 visit many parts of the land & did do great destruction unto them & perished both man &
 did carry away others captive into the wilderness & more especially their women & their
 children & were their great evil which came unto the people because of their iniquity did
 this come again in the same manner of the said Lord & thus ended the eighth & first year
 of the reign of the judges in the eighth & second year they began again to seek the Lord
 their God & in the eighth & third year they began to walk in iniquity & in the eighth
 & fourth year they did not mind their ways & it came to pass in the eighth & fifth
 year they did war & they were in their pride & in their wickedness & thus they
 were refining again for destruction & thus ended the eighth & fifth year. Thus we can be-
 hold how fast & also the carnalness of the hearts of the children of men ye can see
 at the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless & prosper those who put their
 trust in him & yet we may see at the same time when he doth prosper his peo-
 ple in the increase of their flocks & their herds & their gold & silver &
 in all manner of precious things of every kind & yet sparing their hearts & de-
 livering them out of the hands of their enemies so, leaving the hearts of their enemies that they should
 not declare war against them & yet inflicting all things for the well being & happi-
 ness of his people & yet in the time that they do harden their hearts & do large of the Lord
 their God & do triumph under them & yet the Lord will visit them because their case
 & their exceedingly great prosperity & thus we see that & yet the Lord doth chasten his
 people with many afflictions & yet cause he doth visit them with death & with tem-
 pest & with famine & with all manner of afflictions & yet will not remember him &
 how quick he is to hear & how quick he is to visit & how quick he is to visit & how
 slow he is to go & yet the children of men & yet how quick to hearken unto the words
 of the Lord & yet to visit their hearts upon the vain things of the world & yet how quick
 to be lifted up in pride & yet how quick to be cast & do all manner of that which is in-
 iquity & how slow are they to remember the Lord their God & to give ear unto his
 Counsel & yet how slow to walk in wisdom & yet he doth they do not desire that
 the Lord their God who hath created them should rule & reign over them not
 withstanding his great goodness & his mercy towards them they do set at naught
 his Counsel & they will not that he should let them guide. O how great is the nothing

many of the children of men, even they are less than the dust of the earth for heh. 58
old the dust of the earth, most bitter & thicker to the dividing around at the command
of our great & everlasting God yea, behold at his voice doth the hills & the mountains in
shaking & by the power of his voice they are broken up & become small yea even like
unto small yea by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake yea by the power
of his voice doth the foundations of the earth & the very center of the earth unto the
earth, move it is moved yea if he say unto the earth that it shall go back that it lengthen
out the day for many hours & it is done & thus according to his word the earth
doth back it & appear it unto man that the Sun standeth still yea & he told it
it is so for sure it is the case that if he say unto the Sun & he told also if he say
unto the motion of the great deep, he then dried up it is done he told if he said
unto this mountain he shall raised up & come out & shall upon that City that
it be raised up & he told it is done & he told if a man hideth up & to cause
in the earth & the Lord shall say let it be raised because of the iniquity of him
that hath hid it up. he told it shall be raised & if the Lord shall say he shall
be raised that no man shall find it from this time hence forth & forever
behold no, man doth it hence forth & forever & he told if the Lord shall say
unto a man because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cursed forever it shall be done
& if the Lord shall say because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my
presence & he will cause that it shall be so & no man whom he shall say this for it
shall be unto him that will do iniquity & he cannot be saved Therefore for this
cause that men might be saved hath a sentence been declared therefore blessed
are they who will repent & hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God for
these are they that shall be saved & may God grant in his great fulness that men
might be brought unto repentance good works that they might be restored unto
grace for grace according to their works & I would that all men might be saved for
we read that in that great & last day there are some which shall be cast out yea
what shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord yea which shall be consigned
to a state of endless misery fulfilling the words which ^{saith} they that have done
good shall have everlasting life & they that have done evil shall have everlasting
damnation & that it is written — — — (Isaiah - vi) — — —

And now I have written the things which I saw & heard & the things which I saw & heard
that I might be able to write them & I would that all men might be saved for
we read that in that great & last day there are some which shall be cast out yea
what shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord yea which shall be consigned
to a state of endless misery fulfilling the words which ^{saith} they that have done
good shall have everlasting life & they that have done evil shall have everlasting
damnation & that it is written — — — (Isaiah - vi) — — —

356 come into his heart & it came to pass that they would not believe that he had
 come into the City therefore he went & got upon the wall thereof & stretched forth his
 hand & cried with a loud voice & enquired unto the people what manner things
 the Lord put into his heart & he said, unto them Behold, I Samuel & Samanah
 despise the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart & he said he hath
 put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this
 people & a hundred years hence it will be away in the sword of justice & shall be upon
 this people & a hundred years hence it will be upon this people & it will come thence unto the peo-
 ple & nothing can save this people save it be repentance & faith in the Lord Jesus Christ
 who shall come into the world & shall suffer many things & shall be slain for
 his people & he held an Angel of the Lord before him & it came to pass that he did bring glad-
 tidings to my soul & he held a man that came to declare it unto you also that ye
 may have glad tidings, but he hold ye would not receive me, therefore thus
 saith the Lord because of the hardness of the hearts of the people, the Lophites &
 the Nephites will take away my word from them & will withdraw my spi-
 rit from them & will no longer be with them & will turn the hearts of their brethren
 against them & a hundred years shall not pass away but I will cease
 that they shall be smitten & I will visit them with the sword & with famine &
 with pestilence & I will visit them in my fierce anger, & they shall be those of the
 fourth generation & ye are now to behold your utter destruction & they shall surely
 come & ye shall repent & I will visit the fourth generation with visitation &
 destruction but if ye will repent & return unto the Lord your God I will turn away
 mine anger saith the Lord & ye shall with the Lord & I will visit them who will not
 turn unto me but will not believe that I speak the truth & ye will not enter the great City of
 Gideon for behold it is because they who are righteous that it is called Gideon unto the
 great City for I will visit the Lord that I will visit many places even the most part of the
 great City that will harden their hearts against me saith the Lord but blessed
 are they who will repent for they will have peace but behold if it were not for the
 righteous who come in this great City I should cause that fire should come
 down out of Heaven & destroy it but he hold it is for the righteous that it is called
 Gideon but behold the time cometh saith the Lord that when ye shall cast out the
 righteous from among you then shall ye be ripe for destruction & ye will be unto the
 great City because of the wickedness & abominations which ^{ye} will do & ye will be
 unto the City of Gideon for the wickedness & abominations which ^{are} in the City
 will be visited the City which is in the land & which is possessed by the
 Lophites because of the wickedness & the abominations which are in them & he hold a
 sword shall come upon the land with the Lord of Hosts because of the people who will
 do upon the land & because of their wickedness & their abominations & it shall
 come to pass saith the Lord of Hosts & a great & a fearful day shall be that which shall

[illegible]

358 suffering you & a how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish & blind
guides & a how long will ye choose darkness rather than light. Behold the anger of the Lord
is already kindled against you. Behold he hath caused the land, inasmuch of your iniqui-
ties, to hold the time cometh that he causeth your riches that it become as chaff, ^{that} ye
cannot hold them & in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them & in the days of your
poverty ye shall cry on to the Lord & in vain shall ye cry for your ^{deposition} destruction is already come upon
you & your destruction is made sure. Then shall ye weep & howl in that day with the Lord
of Hosts & then shall ye lament & say O that I had repented & had not killed the prophets
& I had not slain them & cast them out of the land in that day shall ye see O that we had remem-
bered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches & then they would not
have become chaff, that we should lose them for we hold our riches and goe from
us. Behold we layeth a load here & on the morrow it is gone & behold our friends are
taken from us in the day we have sought them for little year, we have ^{hid} up our
treasures & they have slipped away from us because of the curse of the land O that we
had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us for we hold the land
is cursed & all things are become as chaff & we cannot hold them. Behold we are
mourned by the Lord, yet we are envied & envied about by the angels of God who
have sought to destroy our souls. Behold our iniquities are great & the Lord cannot stop
his attention from them. Behold our language is in these days but
behold your days of probation ^{are} ended & we have pre-estimated the day of your salva-
tion & it is immediately at hand. Your destruction is made & revealed. Ye have
sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain & ye have sought for
happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness
which is our great & eternal head. O ye people of the land that ye would
hear my words & say that the angels of the Lord be turned away from you & that
ye would repent & the land & now it came to pass that I turned the Lamanites did proph-
esy a great many more things which I cannot be written & behold he said unto them & I
shall give unto you a sign for a sign shall come more cometh & then he hold ^{from} some of the
of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name & behold this will I give
unto you for a sign at the time of his coming for he hold there shall be great lights in
Heaven inasmuch that in the night before he come there shall be no darkness in-
so much that it shall be as plain unto man as if it were day therefore there shall be one
day & a night & a day as if it were one day & there were no night & this shall be
unto you for a sign for ye shall know of the rising of the Sun & also of its sitting
therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be ^{days} a night &
nevertheless the night shall not be darkened & it shall be the night before
he is born & behold there shall be a new Heaven such an one as ye never have be-
hold & this also shall be a sign unto you & behold there is not all these shall be many
many signs & wonders in Heaven & it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed

Wonder inasmuch that ye shall fall to the earth & it shall come to pass that who shall
men shall believe on the Son of God the same shall have everlasting life & behold
that hath the Lord commanded me by his Angel that I should come & tell this thing
to you & he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you & he hath
said unto me say unto this people repent & prepare the way of the Lord & now be-
cause I am a manlike, & have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath com-
manded me & because it was hard against you & all angry with me & do seek to destroy
me & have cast me out from among you & ye shall hear my words for I have this inter-
est I have come up upon the walls of this city that ye might hear & know of the judgments
of God which doth await you because of your iniquities & also that ye might know the condi-
tions of repentance & also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ the Son of God.
The Father of Heaven the Creator of all things from the beginning & that ye might
know of the signs of his coming to the intent that ye might believe on his name & if
ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins that thereby ye may have remission
of them through his merits & behold again another sign which I will give unto you a sign of
his death for he shall die & that salvation may come unto you & it shall be
with him & he cometh expedient that he die to bring to pass the resurrection of the
dead that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord & he shall
his death bringeth to pass the resurrection & redeemeth all mankind from the first
death that spiritual death for all mankind by the fall of Adam being cut off from
the presence of the Lord and considered as dead both as to things temporal & to things
spiritual but behold the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind & he cometh
mankind & bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord & he shall bringeth to
pass the conditions of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not condemned
& cast into the fire but whosoever repenteth not is he condemned & cast into the fire & he
cometh upon them again spiritual death & a second death for they are cut off again as to
things pertaining to righteousness therefore repent ye repent ye lest by knowing these things
and not doing them ye shall suffer condemnation & ye are brought
down unto the second death but behold another sign which I will give concerning another sign a sign
of his death he shall die that he shall suffer death the Sun shall be darkened &
refuse to give ^{his} light in the day & also the Moon shall be darkened & there shall be no light
upon the face of the land even from the time that he shall suffer death for the space of the
three days to the time that he shall rise again from the dead & at the time that he
shall yield up the Ghost there shall be thunders & lightnings for the space of many
hours & the Earth shall shake & tremble & the rocks which are upon the face of the earth
which are ^{about} the earth & beneath which ye know at this time is solid on
the more part of it is one solid mass shall be broken up & they shall be rent
in the air & shall even as he be found in seams & in cracks & in broken fragments
upon the face of the whole earth & he shall be both above the earth & beneath it

360 he said these shall be great tempests & these shall be many mountains laid low like unto anally & these shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains whose height thereof is great & many highways shall be broken up & many cities shall become desolate & many graves shall be opened & shall be filled up with many of the dead & many saints shall appear unto many & he told the us that the Angel took care in London he said unto me that there should be thunders & lightnings from the space of many years & he said unto me that while the thunder & the lightning lasted to the tempest that these things should be & that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days & the Angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these to the intent that they might believe that these signs & these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men & this is the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved & that whosoever will not believe a righteous judgment might come upon them & also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation & now remember ye me in this my brethren that whosoever perishesth perishesth unto himself & whosoever dieth iniquity dieth it unto himself for he holdeth out free ye are permitted to set longambles in he holdeth out in the given in the knowledge & he hath made you free he hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil & he hath given unto you that ye might have life or death & ye can do good & he restored unto you that which is good or have that which is good restored unto you & ye can do evil & have that which is evil restored unto you & now my beloved brethren behold I do love unto you that except ye shall repent your hands shall be left unto you & also ye except ye repent your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give such for ye shall attempt to see men shall be no place for ye & ye shall be no more which are with child for they shall be heavy & cannot be borne they shall be burdened down & shall be left to perish ye are unto this people which are called the people of Joseph but they shall repent when they shall see all these signs & wonders which shall be showed unto them for he should they have been a chosen people of the Lord & the people of Joseph hath he loved & also hath he hastened them in the days of their iniquities hath he hastened them because he loved them but behold my brethren the Lamanites hath he hated because their hands have been evil continually & this because of the iniquity of the iniquities of their fathers but behold salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Gospel & for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days & I would that ye should be told that the most part of them are in the path of righteousness & they do with submission to the Lord & they do a desire to keep his commandments & his statutes his judgments according to the law I have given unto you that the more part of them are doing this & they are striving with unrestrained diligence that they

may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth. ³⁶¹
 These are many which do add to their number daily & behold ye do know of yourselves for
 ye have witnessed it that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth &
 to know of the wicked & a horrible traditions of their fathers & are led to believe the
 holy Scriptures & the prophecies of the holy prophets which are written which lead
 them to faith in the Lord & repentance which faith & repentance bringeth a
 change of heart unto them therefore as many as have come to this ye know of yourselves
 are firm & steadfast in the faith & in all things wherein they have been made free
 ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war & they learn to take them up
 last by any means they shall sin ye can tell that they learn to sin for behold they
 will not in themselves that they be sadden down & slain by their enemies & will not lift
 their hands against them & this because of their faith in Christ & now because of their steadfastness
 when they do believe in that thing which they do believe for because of their firmness when
 they are once enlightened behold the Lord shall bless them & prolong their days not-
 withstanding their iniquity & even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall
 prolong their days until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers & also
 by the prophet James & many other prophets concerning the restoration of our brethren the
 Lamanites again to the knowledge of the truth. I say unto you that in the latter times
 the promises of the Lord shall be accomplished to our brethren the Lamanites & not fail-
 ing. The many afflictions which they shall have & notwithstanding they shall be
 driven to & upon the face of the earth & be hunted & shall be smitten & scattered ab-
 road having no place for refuge. The Lord shall be merciful unto them & this accord-
 ing to the prophecy that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge which is
 the knowledge of their redemption & their great & their true Shepherd & be numbered
 among his sheep. Therefore I say unto you it shall be better for them than for you
 except ye repent for behold had the might of your brethren been shown unto them which
 have been shown unto you ye are unto them which have dwindle in unbelief be-
 cause of the traditions of their fathers ye can tell of yourselves that they never would
 again have dwindle in unbelief. I say unto the Lord. I will not utterly destroy
 them but I will curse that in the days of my wisdom they shall return again unto
 me with the Lord & now behold saith the Lord concerning the people of the Teph-
 tes if they will not repent & observe to do my will I will utterly destroy them saith
 the Lord because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works
 which I have done among them & as sure as the Lord liveth shall these things
 be said the Lord & now it came to pass that our men many which heard the words
 of Samuel the Lamanite which he spake upon the walls of the city & as many as
 believed on his words went forth & sought for Tephites when they came. Some of them
 him they confessed unto him their sins & denied not desiring that they might
 be Baptized unto the Lord but as many as there were which did not believe

36 L in the words of Samuel were angry with him & they cast stones at him upon the wall & also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall but the power of the Lord was with him inasmuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows now when they saw that they could not hit him there were many more who did believe on his words in so much that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized for behold Nephi was baptizing & prophesying & preaching saying unto the people showing signs & wonders & working miracles among the people that they might know that the Christ must shortly come telling them of things which must shortly come that they might know & remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them he had heard to the intent that they might believe therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized for they came repenting & confessing their sins but the more part of them did not believe the words of Samuel therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones & their arrows they cried out unto their captains saying take this fellow & bind him for behold he hath said & because of the power of the Devil ^{which is in him} we cannot hit him with our stones & our arrows therefore take him & bind him & away with him & as they were taking him they laid their hands on him behold he did cast himself down & did flee out of their hands & he came unto his own country & began to preach & to prophesy among his own people & behold he was never heard of more among the Nephites & thus were the affairs of the people & thus ended the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges over the people & thus ended also the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges the more part of the people remaining in their pride & wickedness & the lesser part making more iniquity before God & thus were the conditions also in the eighty & eighth year of the reign of the Judges & there were but little alteration in the affairs of the people until it came the people began to be more hardened in iniquity & to do more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God in the eighty & ninth year of the reign of the Judges but he hold it came to pass in the ninth year of the reign of the Judges there were great signs given unto the people & wonders & the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled & angels did appear unto men with men & did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy & thus in that year the Gentiles began to be put to their names & the people began to harden their hearts all came it unto the most believing part of them both of the Nephites & also of the same nations began to depend upon their own strength & upon their own wisdom saying some things they may have guessed right among so many but behold we know that all these great & marvellous ^{works} cannot come to pass which hath been spoken & they began to reason & to contend among themselves saying that it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come if so be he be the Son of God the Father of Heaven & of Earth as it hath been spoken

why will he not shew himself unto us as well as unto the people which shall be
of Jerusalem, & why will he not shew himself in this land as well as in the
land of Jerusalem, but he hold we know that this is a wicked tradition which
has been handed down unto us by our fathers to cause us that we should believe
in some great & marvelous thing, which should come to pass but not among us but
in a land which is distant a land which we know not therefore they can keep
us in ignorance for we cannot visit there with our own eyes that they are true &
they will by the cunning & the mystical arts of the evil one work some great
mystery which we cannot understand which will be passed down to be shewed
unto the world & also to cause us to be dependent upon the temple teachers &
read & thus will they keep us in ignorance if we yield ourselves unto them all the days
of our lives & many more things did the people imagine upon their hearts which was foolish
& vain & they were much distressed for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually
yea he did go about spreading rumors & contentions upon all the face of the land
that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good &
against that which should come & notwithstanding the signs & the wonders which
were wrought among the people of the land & the many miracles which they did
Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land & thus
ended the ninety year of the reign of the Judges over the people of Joseph & thus ended
the Book of Helaman according to the record of Helaman & his Sons

The Book of Nephi the Son of Nephi which was the Son of Helaman
& Helaman was the Son of Helaman which was the Son of Alma which
was the Son of Alma being a descendant of Nephi which was the Son of Lehi
who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah the king
of Judah

Chapter 1 -

Now it came to pass that the ninety & first year had passed away & it was
ordained years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem & it was in the year that
Satan was the chief judge & the governor over the land of Joseph the Son of Helaman
had departed out of the land of Jerusalem giving charge unto his Son Nephi which
was his eldest Son concerning the plots of Baal & all the records which had been kept
all these things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem
then he departed out of the land & whether he meant no man to know his Son
Nephi did keep the record in his old years record of the people & it came to pass
that in the commencement of the ninety & second year he told the prophecies of the
prophets began to be fulfilled more fully for there began to be great signs &
greater miracles wrought among the people but nevertheless some men began to
say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled which were spoken by Sam-
uel the Lamanite & they began to rejoice over them but these saying he told the
time is past & the words of Samuel are not fulfilled therefore ye are going to suffer

364 concerning this thing has been said, it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land & the people which believed began to be very sorrowful lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass. And behold they did watch & fast continually for that day & that night & that day which should be one day as if there were no night. And they might know that ~~these things~~ ^{these things} had not been vain now it came to pass that there was a day & a night by the unbelief that all those who believed in those traditions would be put to death except the sign should come to pass which had been given by ^{him} the prophet now it came to pass that when Joseph the Son of Joseph saw that wickedness of his people his heart was exceedingly sorrowful & it came to pass that he went out & bowed himself down upon the earth & cried mightily to his God in the behalf of his people & a voice came unto him & he was about to be destroyed because of their faith in the traditions of their fathers & it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day & behold the voice of the Lord came unto him saying lift up your head & be of good cheer for behold the time is at hand & on that night shall the sign be given & on the morrow shall come into the world to them unto the world that I will fulfill all that I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets. Behold I come unto you even to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world & I will do the will of both of the Father & of the Son of the Father because of me & of the Son because I am I will & behold the time is at hand & this night shall the sign be given & it came to pass that the words which came unto Joseph were fulfilled according as they had been spoken for he beheld at the going down of the sun there was no darkness & the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came & there were many which had not believed the words of the prophets fell to the earth & died and ^{and} they were dead for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who had believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated for the sign which had been given was already at hand & they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear & that in fact all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east both in the land north in the land south were as exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth for they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years & that the sign which had been given was already at hand & they began to fear because of their iniquity & their unbelief & it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night but it was as light as the day & it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again according to its proper order & they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born because of the sign which had been given & it had come to pass & all things ended what according to the words of the prophets & it came to pass also that a new star did appear according to the word & it came to pass from that time forth there began to be lightings sent forth among the people by Satan to harden their hearts to the intent that they might not be led in these signs & records which they had seen but rather ^{misunderstanding}

those things & desirings the more part of the people did believe & were converted unto
 the Lord & it came to pass that for the next year among the people & also many other others
 baptizing unto repentance in the which there were a great multitude of lives & thus the
 people began again to have peace in the land & there were no contentions save it were a
 few that began to speak and saying to prove by the Scriptures that it was no more
 expedient to abrogate the law of Moses now in that time they did say having not under-
 stood the Scriptures that it came to pass that they soon became converted & were con-
 vinced of the error which they were in for it was made known unto them that the law
 was not yet fulfilled & that it must be fulfilled in every what year the word came an-
 to them that it must be fulfilled yea that we fast now till it should not be a week
 it should all be fulfilled there fore in this same year when they brought to a knowledge
 of this error & did confess their fault & thus the ninety & second year did pass away
 bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass
 according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets & it came to pass that
 the ninety & third year did also pass away in peace save it were for the sad condition
 upon the hills which did dwell upon the mountains which did inhabit the land for
 so strong were their holds & their secret places that the people could not overpower them
 therefore they did commit many murders & did do much slaughter among the people
 & it came to pass that in the ^{next} year they began to increase in a great degree be-
 cause there were many dissenters of the Lamanites who did flee unto them which did
 cease much sorrow unto those Lamanites who remained in the land & there ^{was} also cause of
 much sorrow among the Samnites for he heard they had many children which did grow up
 & began to question in years that they became for themselves & were ^{led} away by some which
 were forerunners by their living & their flattering words to join the Lamanites & thus
 they saw the Samnites as if they had also began to decrease ^{as} to their faith & righteousness
 because of the wickedness of the rising generation & it came to pass that ^{they} passed away
 the ninety & fourth year also & the people began to forget those signs & wonders which
 they had heard & began to be less astonished at signs & wonders from Heaven in-
 so much that they began to be hard in their hearts & blind in their minds & began to dis-
 believe all which they had heard & seen & imagining up some vain thing in their hearts
 that it was wrought by men & by the power of the Devil to lead away & deceive the
 hearts of the people that did Gatan get possession of the hearts of the people again in so much that
 he did blind their eyes & lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a fan-
 tasy & a vain thing & it came to pass that the people began to ^{man} tongues & wickedness & abominations
 & they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given & Gatan did
 go about leading away the hearts of the people tempting them & causing them that they sh-
 ould do great wickedness in the land & thus did pass away the ninety & sixth year & also
 the ninety & seventh year & also the ninety & eighth year & also the ninety & ninth year
 & also an hundred years had passed away since the days of which which was

366 King over the people of the Nephites & in hundred & nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem & nine years had passed away from the time ~~which~~ ^{the} sign was given which was spoken of by the prophets that Christ should come into the world now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period ^{when} the sign was given on from the coming of Christ therefore nine years ~~had~~ ^{was} passed away & Lehi which was the ^{father of} Nephis ^{which} had the charge of the records did not return to the land of Zarahemla & he found in all the land it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness notwithstanding the much preaching & prophesying which was sent among them & thus passed away the twentieth year & the thirty first year came to pass in iniquity & they began to be again contentious through out all the land ^{for} the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous & did slay in many of the people ^{which} did begin to be multiplied & did spread so much death & damage through out the land that it seemed as if that all the people harkening to the Lamanites should take up arms against them therefore all the Lamanites which had become converted unto the Lord did unite with them & the Nephites were compelled for the safety of themselves & their women & their children to take up arms against these Gadianton robbers also to maintain ^{their} ~~rights~~ ^{rights} & their privileges of their church & of their worship & their freedom their liberty & it came to pass that before this thirtieth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war which had been in the land & it came to pass that these Lamanites which ^{had} ~~united~~ ^{united} with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites & their count was taken from them & therefore they became white like unto the Nephites & their young men & their daughters became exceedingly fair & they were numbered among the Nephites & were called Nephites & thus ended the thirtieth year & it came to pass in the Commencement ^{year} of the Lamanites ^{year} there was a rebellion & the people of Nephis continued to do as of old & according to the law the people of Nephis did gain some advantage of the robbers inasmuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains & into their secret places & thus ended the thirtieth year & in the thirtieth year they did come forth again against the people of Nephis because of the wickedness of the people of Nephis & their many contentions & dissensions the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them & thus ended the thirtieth year & thus was the people in a state of many afflictions & the sword of destruction did hang over them inasmuch that they were about to be smitten down by it & this because of their iniquity

Chapter II And now it came to pass that in the thirtieth year from the coming of Christ ~~there~~ ^{there} as the governor of the land received an Epistle from the leaders of the enemies of the land & the words which were written saying I am almost noble & chief gentler of the land & I write this Epistle unto you & desire unto you exceedingly great things because of your iniquities & also the Lamanites of your people in maintaining that which is support to the Gadianton

368

their women & their children their flocks & their herds & all their substance
 will save it when their land unite one place & he caused that his signification should
 be built round about them & the strength thereof should be invincible
 at & because that there should be a mile back of the high places of the mountains of
 all the mountains were numbered among the high places should be placed his guards round
 about to watch them & to guard them from the robbers day & night yet he said unto them
 again & said with exception of repentance of all your iniquities & your unbelief that they can
 be in no wise be delivered out of the hands of these Gadianton robbers & so great a marvel
 was the word of prophecy of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people
 & they did meet them in their night to do according to the words of Lachoneus & it came
 to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the high places
 at the time that he said should come down out of the wilderness against them now the
 chiefest among all the chief captains & the great commanders of all the armies of the high places
 was appointed & his name was Gidgiddoni now it was the custom among all the high places
 to appoint their chief captains name it was in their times of wickedness & some of them
 had the spirit of revelation & also of prophecy therefore this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet
 among them & also was the chief judge now the people said unto Gidgiddoni ^{pray}
 to the Lord & let us go upon the mountains & into the wilderness that we may fall upon
 the robbers & destroy them in their own lands but Gidgiddoni said unto them the Lord
 forbid for if we should go against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands
 therefore we will be firm & settled in the center of our lands & we will gather all our
 quills together & we will not go against them but we will wait till they shall come
 against us therefore in the Lord's strength if we do this we will deliver them into our hands
 & it came to pass in the summer year in the latter end of the year that all the ^{tribes}
 of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land & they had taken
 their houses & their chambers & their cattle & all their flocks & their ^{herds} & their
 substance & did march forth by thousands & by tens of thousands until they
 had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather them-
 selves together to defend themselves against their enemies in the land which was appoi-
 nted was the land of Gershon & the land which was between the land of Gershon
 & the land Beautiful ^{to} the line which was between the land Beautiful & the
 land of Gershon & there were a great many thousand people who were called high places
 who did gather themselves together in this land now Lachoneus did cause that
 they should gather themselves together in the land eastward because of the great
 war which was upon the land northward & they did so they gathered themselves against their
 enemies & they did dwell in one land & in one body & they did hear the words which
 had been spoken by Lachoneus inasmuch that they did repent of all their
 sins & they did put off their baggage unto the Lord their God that he would

delivered them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle & they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies & ^{did} Giddianhi caused that they should make weapons of war & every kind that they should be strong with armor & with shields & with bucklers after the manner of his instructions & it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle & began to come down to rally forth from the hills & out of the mountains & the wilderness & the strong holds ^{that} ~~their~~ ^{their} places & began to take possession of the lands both which was in the land south & which was in the land north & began to take possession of all the lands which had been desolated by the L^ophites & the L^ophites which ~~had~~ ^{had} been left desolate but he held there ^{that} ~~the~~ ^{the} wild beasts & game in those lands which had been desolated by the L^ophites & there ^{was} ~~was~~ no game in the wilderness & the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness for the want of food for the L^ophites had left their lands desolate & had gathered all their flocks & their herds & all their substance & they were in one body & there ^{was} ~~was~~ no chance for the robbers to plunder & to obtain food save it were to come upon open battle against the L^ophites & the L^ophites being in one body & having so great a number & having secured for themselves provisions & houses & cattle & flocks of every kind that they might subsist in the space of twenty years in the worst time they did hope to destroy the robbers as soon as the face of the land & thus the eighteenth year did pass away & it came to pass in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the L^ophites for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder & rob & murder & they dared not spread themselves upon the face of the land inasmuch that they could raise grain lest the L^ophites should come upon them & slay them & therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the L^ophites & it came to pass that they did come up to battle & it was in the sixth month & he held great assembly & ^{that} ~~was~~ ^{that} the day that they did come up to battle & this was a day of blood after the manner of robbers & they had a lamb ^{skin} ~~skin~~ about their loins & they were dyed in blood & their heads were covered with blood & they had head plates upon their garments & this was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi because of their armor & because of their being dyed in blood & it came to pass that the armies of the L^ophites when they saw the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi that all fallen to the earth & did lift their faces to the Lord their God for he would spare them & deliver them out of the hands of their enemies & it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw that they began to shout with a loud noise because of their fear for they had supposed that the L^ophites had fallen with them because of the ^{threat} ~~threat~~ of their armies but in this thing they were disappointed for the L^ophites did not fear them but they did fear their God & did supplicate him for preservation therefore when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were forced to meet them again in the strength of the Lord they did receive them & the battle commenced in that the sixth month & great & terrible was the battle

318 And of great great terrible was the slaughter thereof inasmuch that there
 never was known before a slaughter among all the people of Ishi since he left there
 solemn & notwithstanding the threatnings & the oaths which Eidgeidoni had made before
 that the Ishi did beat them inasmuch that they did fall back before them & it came
 to pass that Eidgeidoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as to
 the borders of the wilderness & that they should not spare any that should fall into their
 hands by the way & thus they did pursue them & did slay them to the borders of the
 wilderness until they had fulfilled the commandment of Eidgeidoni & it came
 to pass that Eidgeidoni who had stood & fought with boldness was pursued as he fled
 & being weary because of his much fighting ^{he} was overtaken & slain & thus was the end
 of Eidgeidoni. He did not know it came to pass that the armies of the Ishi did return again
 to their place of security & it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away & the
 robbers did not come again to battle with them - did they come in the twentieth year - but in
 the twenty & first year they did not come up to battle but they came up on all sides to
 lay siege round about the people of Ishi for they did suppose that if they should cut
 off the people of Ishi from their lands & should have them in on every side & if they should
 cut the most precious their ancient privileges that they could cause them to yield the
 submission according to their wishes now they had appointed unto themselves an other leader
 in whose name was Jemnahah. Therefore it was Jemnahah that did cause that
 this siege should take place but he held that was an advantage unto the Ishi &
 for the robbers
 for it was impossible to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Ishi
 because of their much provision which they had laid up in store & because of the quantity of
 provisions among the robbers for he held they had nothing but it was meat for their subsis-
 tance which meat they did obtain in the wilderness & it came to pass that the wild game the
 same years in the wilderness inasmuch that the robbers were about to perish with hun-
 ger & the Ishi were continually marching out by day & by night & falling upon
 their enemies & killing them off by thousands & thus it became the des-
 tination of the people of Jemnahah to withdraw from their design because of the great
 destruction which came upon them by night & by day & it came to pass that Jemnahah
 did give commandment to his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege
 & to march into the Santhanah most dark of the land, northward & so on. Eidgeidoni being an-
 noyed of their design & knowing of their weakness because of the want of food & the great sla-
 uughter which had been made among them therefore he did send out his armies in the
 night time & did cut off the way of their retreat & did place his armies in the way
 of their retreat & did they do in the night time & got on their march beyond the rob-
 bers so that on the morning the robbers began their march they were met by the armies
 of the Ishi both in their front & in their rear & the robbers were cut off on the south
 were also cut off in their places & so that all these things were done by command-
 ment of Eidgeidoni & there were many thousands who did yield themselves up to the

unto the high hills & the remainder of them were slain & their leader Gernard rich 38
was taken & hanged upon a tree & as men upon the top thereof until he was dead & when
on they had hanged him until he was dead they did all the hall to the east & did
say with one voice saying may the Lord become high & their right & as new & in
the house of heart that they may cease to be & let to the east all who shall seek to slay them
because of bonds & secret combinations such as they man have been fell to the east
they did rejoice & as again with one voice saying may the God of Abraham & the
God of Isaac & the God of Jacob be praised for his righteousness now so long as they shall
call on the name of this God & no violation will come to pass that they did break to the east in
singing & praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them in preserving them
from falling into the hands of their enemies & they did say to the most high God &
they did say Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty the most high God & their
hearts were swollen with joy unto the ^{gushing} ⁱⁿ ^{pass} many ^{times} because of the great
good news that he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies & they knew it was
because of their repentance & their humility that they had been delivered from an eternal
destruction & now he held that was not a living soul among all the people of the
isles who did doubt in the least ~~thing~~ the words of all the holy prophets which had
been spoken for their sins that it must needs be that they must be delivered & they knew
that it must be sufficient that Christ had come because of the many signs which
had been given according to the words of the prophets & because of the things which had come
to pass already they knew it must needs be that all things should come to pass according
to that which had been spoken therefore they did for sake all their sins & their abominations
& then when they did come God with all diligence they did now it came to pass that when
they had taken all the soldiers prisoners inasmuch that none did escape who were not sl
and they did cast their prisoners into prison & did cause the words of God to be preached unto the
sinners as many as would repent of their sins in law in command that they would murder no
more more let all who did as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant & who
did still continued to have their hearts swayed in their hearts & as many as were found
breathing out threatenings against them & such as were condemned & punished according
to the law & then they did put an end to all those wicked & secret & abominable combina
tions in the which there were so much wickedness & many murders committed & they
had the brethren & sisters & an assembly of the saints & the brethren & the brethren
& the brethren & the brethren & the brethren & the brethren & the brethren & the brethren
had many things transpired which in the eyes of some would be great & marvelous re
venges & they could not tell all as written in this book yet this book cannot contain
one hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of brethren's fore years
but do hold that are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people & are more that but
a but account given by the same & have made my record of these things according
to the record of the people which were engraven on the plates which were called the plates of
the

372 he is to do make this record plates in which I have made with mine own
 hands to be held I am called Mormon being called of the Lord in the land of the
 land in the which I have made to establish the Church among this people ^{he held} the last cha-
 racter which was established among them after their transgression ^{he held} and a disciple
 of Jesus Christ the Son of God I have been called of him to do that his word among his
 people that they may be have everlasting life & that he be his obedient that I accord-
 ing to the will of God that the prayers, those which have gone hence which were the holy ones sh-
 ould be fulfilled according to their faith, I should make a record of these things which have
 been done & a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that I have begun
 to write until the present time therefore I do make my record from the time which
 hath been given by the Lord which was before me until the commencement of my day & I should make
 a record of the things which I have seen with mine eyes & I know the record which I make
 to be a just & a true record nevertheless there are many things which according to our language
 we are not able to write & I cannot make an end of my saying which is of myself & I should
 begin my account of the things which I have seen before me I am Mormon & a descendant
 of Lehi I have seen to hear my Lord & my Saviour Jesus Christ that he brought me
 out of the land of Jerusalem & we are now here in the land which he
 brought me of that land & I have given me a my people so much knowledge unto the
 revelation of our souls sure to it hath blessed the house of Israel & hath been merciful unto
 the seed of Joseph & I am much as the children of the Lord I have kept his commandments he hath
 blessed them & prospered them according to his word & as I shall be again bring a man-
 nant of the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord then God is as surely as the Lord liveth
 will to gather in from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob
 who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth & as he hath covenanted with all the
 house of Israel & I will so shall the covenant which he hath covenanted with the house of Israel
 be fulfilled in his own time I am to bring all the house of Israel unto the knowledge
 of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them & then shall they know the in Redeemer which is
 Jesus Christ the Son of God & then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the
 earth unto their own lands from whence they have been dispersed & as the Lord liveth
 so shall it be Amen

Chapter III

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the land of the sixth year
 after many with our family his flocks, his herds his horses & his cattle & all things which
 he had did he bring unto them & it came to pass that they had not taken up all their pos-
 sessions therefore they did take with them all that they had not denuded of all their gain
 of every kind & their gold & their silver & all their precious things & they did return to
 their own lands & their possessions both on the north & on the south both on the land
 on the east & on the land southward & they granted unto those Nephites who had
 entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land who were desirous to remain
 Lamanites, lands according to their number that they might have made their habitation

374 because of those who testified of these things & those who were angry with
the chief judges who had been high priests & lawyers year after year ~~these~~ ^{the} ~~judges~~
lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things now there was no lawyer
judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death real their con-
demnation was signed by the governor of the land now there were many of those who
believed in things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly who were taken & put
to death secretly by the judges that the knowledge of this deed came not unto the gover-
nor of the land until after their death now behold this was contrary to the laws of the land
that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of
the land there fore a complaint came up unto the land of Judah unto the governor of the
land against the judges who had condemned unto death not according to the law now
it came to pass that they were taken & brought up before the judge to be judged of their
crime which they had done according to the law which had been given by the pro-
phets now it came to pass that those judges had many friends & kindred & even almost all
the lawyers & the high priests did gather themselves together with the kindreds of those
judges who were to be tried according to the law & they did enter into a covenant one with
another & entered into that covenant which was given by them of old which covenant was given
unto the people of the Lord to combine against all righteousness therefore they did
combine against the people of the Lord & entered into a covenant to destroy them & to deliver those
who were guilty of iniquity from the grasp of justice which was about to be administered
according to the law & they did see or disdain the law & the rights of their country &
they did combine one with another to destroy the governor & to establish a king over the land
that the land should no more have liberty but should be subject unto kings now
behold I will shew unto you that they did not establish a king over the land but in the
same year year the fifth year they did destroy upon the judgment that year did murder
in the chief judges of the land & the people were divided one against another & they did
separate one from another into two bands men according to his family & his kindred
friends & thus they did destroy the government of the land & the king did appoint a
chief over a leader over them & thus they became leaders & leaders of tribes now behold the
men were no more as men then as he had much family & many kindred & friends
therefore the tribes became exceeding great now all this was done & there were no more
yet a more terrible thing than this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield
themselves unto the law & the regulations of the government was destroyed & as
one of the most combination of the friends & the kindreds of those who murdered the prophets
& the chief judges & the contention in the land inasmuch that the majority of the
people of the land ^{had} nearly all become wicked yet there were some righteous men
among them & that sign was had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned
from righteousness like the dog to his vomit or like the sow to her wallowing
in the mire now this secret combination which had brought to pass iniquity upon

The people that they had been visited by the power of spirit of God which was upon
 Christ in whom they believed was, many as had been cast out from them & ^{real} healed
 of their sicknesses & diseases, & miracles did truly manifest unto the people that they had
 been wrought upon by the spirit of God & had been healed & they did show forth signs also
 & did do some miracles, & ~~and~~ ^{many people} they passed away the thirty & second year also
 & the people did say unto the people in the commencement of the thirty & third year & he did preach
 unto them repentance & remission of sins now, & would have you remember also that there
 were none who were brought unto an ^{evil} intent who were not baptized with water ^{and}
 for there were ordained of the high priests to this ministry, that all such as should come
 unto them should be baptized with water & this as a witness & a testimony before God
 & unto the people, that they had repented & received a remission of their sins & that were
 among in the commencement of the year that were baptized unto repentance & that the
 more part of the year did pass away - - - Chapter III - - -

I find now it came to pass, according to our record & we know our record to be true for
 he that did was a just man who did this record, for he truly did many mira-
 cles in the name of Jesus & there was not one man who could do a miracle in the
 name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity & now it came to pass
 if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time the thirty &
 third year had passed away & the people began to look with great earnestness for the
 sign which had been ^{given} by the prophet Samuel the Lamanite, & in the ^{time} ~~sign~~ that there sh-
 ould be darkness in the space three days over the face of the land & there began to be
 great doubtings & disputations among the people notwithstanding so many signs had been
 given & it came to pass that in the thirty & fourth year in the first month in the fourth
 day of the month there arose a great storm such as none had been known in
 all the land & there was also great & terrible tempests & there was terrible & continuous
 much, that it did shake the whole earth & it was as hard to divide a sword & there were
 exceeding sharp lightnings & the harvest had been known in all the land & the city of
 Zarahemla did take fire & the city of Jerusalem did sink in to the depth of the sea
 & the inhabitants thereof were drowned & the earth was raised up upon the city of
 Moroniak that in the place of the city there became a great mountain
 & there ^{was} ~~was~~ a great & terrible destruction in the land southward but behold there
^{was} ~~was~~ a more great & terrible destruction in the land northward for behold the whole
 face of the land was changed because of the tempests & the whirlwinds & the thundings
 & the lightning & the exceeding great quaking of the whole earth & the highways
 were broken up & the land was adorned & spoiled & many of the places became
 rough & many great & notable cities were sunk & many were burned & many
 were shook till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth & the inhabitants
 thereof were slain & the places were left desolate & there were some cities
 which remained, but the damage thereof was exceeding great & there were

[illegible]

[illegible]

382 I declare unto you my doctrine & this is my doctrine & it is the doctrine which the Father
 hath given unto me & I bear record of it. I am a son of the Father & the Father hath recorded me & the
 Father hath recorded me of the Father & I bear record of the Father's commandments all
 men every which do repent & believe in me & whose believeth in me & is baptized the Father
 shall be saved & they are they which shall inherit the Kingdom of God & who are not baptized shall be damned & I say unto you that this is my doctrine
 I am record of it from the Father & whose believeth in me & believeth in the Father also
 in to him will the Father be made manifest unto him & he will visit him with fire & with the Holy
 Ghost & thus will the Father be made manifest unto the Holy Ghost & will be made manifest unto
 him & the Father be made manifest for our Father & his Holy Ghost are one & I say again I say
 unto you ye must repent & become as a little child & be baptized in my
 name on ye can in no wise receive these things & I say unto you ye must
 repent & be baptized in my name & become as a little child on ye can in no
 wise inherit the Kingdom of God & I say unto you that this is my
 doctrine & whose buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock & the gates of
 Hell shall not prevail against them & whose shall build upon less than this &
 is established it on my doctrine the same cometh of evil & do not build upon my
 rock but do build upon a sandy foundation & the gates of Hell standeth open
 open to receive such when the floods come & the winds beat upon them & thus
 for ye for the unto this people & believe the words which I have spoken
 to the ends of the earth & And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these
 words unto the people to them which had been called now the number of them
 which had been called & received were as the sand of the sea & he lifted up his voice
 & he held he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude & cried unto them
 saying Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve wh-
 ich I have chosen from among you to minister unto you in the name of the Father
 on & I say unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water & say
 in that ye are baptized with water behold I will baptize you with fire & with
 the Holy Ghost & I say unto you that he that believeth in me & is
 baptized after that he hath seen me & knoweth that I am is again made blessed
 & they which shall believe in your words because ye shall testify that ye have
 seen me & that ye know that I am your Father & they which shall believe in
 your words & come down in the path of humility & be baptized for they shall be
 visited with fire & with the Holy Ghost & shall receive a remission of their sins & ye
 blessed are the poor in spirit which come unto me for theirs is the Kingdom of the
 Father & again blessed are all they that mourn for they shall be comforted & blessed
 are the meek for they shall inherit the earth & blessed are all they which do hunger
 & thirst after righteousness for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost & blessed
 are the merciful for they shall obtain mercy & blessed are all the pure in heart

for they shall see God & be blessed as all the people make for they shall be called
 the children of God & be blessed as all they which are persecuted for my name sake
 for there is the Kingdom of Heaven & the Kingdom of Angels when men shall be called
 shall say all manner of evil against you falsely for my sake for ye shall have
 great joy to be exceeding glad for great shall be your reward in Heaven
 for so be seated they the prophets which were before you verily I say
 unto you I give unto you to be the better of the earth but if the salt shall
 lose its ^{savour} where will shall the earth be salted the salt shall be thenceforth
 good for nothing but to be cast out & to be trodden under foot of men
 verily I say unto you I give unto you to be the light of this people a city that
 is set on a hill cannot be hid behold do men light a candle & put it under
 a bushel nay but on a candle stick & it giveth light to all that are in the house
 therefore let your light so shine before this people that they may see your
 good works & glorify your Father which is in Heaven think not that I am
 come to destroy the law or the prophets I am not come to destroy but to fulfil
 for verily I say unto you one jot nor one tittle shall pass away from the
 law that in me it shall all be fulfilled & behold I have given unto you
 the law & the commandments of my Father that ye shall believe in me &
 that ye shall repent of your sins & come unto me with a broken heart & a con-
 trite spirit & behold ye have the commandments before you & the law is fulfilled
 therefore come unto me & ye shall be saved I verily say unto you that except ye
 shall keep my commandments which I have commanded you at this time ye
 shall in no case enter into the Kingdom of Heaven ye have heard that it hath been
 said by them of old time & it is also written before you that thou shalt not kill &
 whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God but I say unto you
 that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment &
 whosoever shall say to his brother I curse thee shall be in danger of the council &
 whosoever shall say ^{shall} I will kill thee shall be in danger of Hell fire Therefore if ye shall
 all come unto me or shall desire to come unto me & rememberest that thy bro-
 ther hath aught against thee go thy way unto thy brother & first be reconciled
 to thy brother & then come unto me with full purpose of heart & I will receive
 you & all with thee advising quickly while thou art in the way with
 him lest at any time he shall get thee & thou shalt be cast into prison ve-
 rily I say unto thee thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid
 the uttermost deni-^{ing} & while ye are in prison can ye pay one deni-^{ing} verily
 verily I say unto you nay behold ~~that~~ is written by the mouth of old time that thou
 shalt not commit adultery but I say unto you that whosoever look-
 on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery already in his
 heart behold I give unto you a commandment that ye refrain none of

35th then things ~~to enter~~ to enter into your heart for it is better that ye should deny yourselves these things which things will take up your cross than that ye should be ashamed to tell it hath been written that whosoever shall put away his wife let him give her a writing of divorcement ~~very~~ verily I say unto you that whosoever shall put away his wife saving for the cause of fornication causeth him to commit adultery & whosoever shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery & again it is written ye shall not forswear thyself but shall perform unto the Lord thine oaths but verily I say unto you I swear not at all neither by Heaven for it is Gods throne nor by the earth for it is his foot stool neither shall I swear by my head because I can not make one hair black or white for whatsoever I will of more than there are hairs on the head it is committed to you for aye & a look for a look but I say unto you that ye shall not resist evil but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek turn to him the other also & if any man will sue thee at the law & take away thy coat let him have thy cloak also & whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile go with him two miles to him that is better than to him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away & behold it is written also that ye shall love thy neighbor & hate thine enemy but he that doth say unto you love your enemies bless them that curse you do good to them that hate you & pray for them who despitefully use you & persecute you that ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil & on the good therefore those things which were of old time which were under the law in me are all fulfilled & all things are done away & all things have become new therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I & your Father who is in heaven is perfect verily I say that I would that ye should do alms even to the poor but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven therefore when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you as the hypocrites do in the Synagogues & in the streets that they may have glory of men verily I say unto you they have their reward but when thou doest alms let not thy right hand know what thy right hand doeth that thine alms may be in secret & thy Father who is in secret himself shall reward thee openly & when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites for they love to pray standing in the Synagogues & in the corners of the streets that they may be seen of men verily I say unto you they have their reward but thou when thou prayest thou shalt go into thy closet & when thou hast shut thy door pray to thy Father who is in secret & thy Father who is in secret shall reward thee openly but when ye pray use not vain repetitions as the

[illegible]

388 This much did the father command me that I should tell unto
 them that, then I have which are not of this fold, them also
 so I must bring & they shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold
 & one shepherd know because of stiffneckedness & unbelief they unders-
 stood not my word that I was commanded to say no more of the
 Father concerning this thing unto them but, verily I say unto you that the
 Father hath commanded me & I tell it unto you that ye were separated from
 among them because of their iniquity therefore it is because of their iniquity
 that they know not of you & now I say unto you again that the other tribes ha-
 ve the Father separated from them & it is because of their iniquity that they
 know not of them & verily I say unto you that ye are they of whom I said other
 I have which are not of this fold them also I must bring & they
 shall hear my voice & there shall be one fold & one shepherd & they un-
 derstand me not for they supposed it had been the Gentiles for they un-
 derstood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preach-
 ing & they understand me not that I said they shall hear ^{my voice} & they
 understand me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear ^{my voice}
 that I should not at any time move unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost
 but behold ye have been hearing my voice & now ye are among sheep & are
 numbered among them which the Father hath given me & verily I
 say unto you that I have other sheep which are not of this land, neither of the
 land of Jerusalem neither of any part of that land round about whether I
 have been to minister for men of whom I speak unto them which have not as yet hear-
 ed my voice, neither have at any time manifested myself unto them but I have
 received a commandment of the Father that I ^{shall} go unto them & that they shall
 hear my voice & shall be numbered among my sheep that there may be one fold
 & one shepherd it is my will to go to them myself unto them & command you that ye
 shall write these ^{sayings} things after that I am gone that if so be that my people at Jeru-
 salem they who have seen me & been with me in my ministry do not ask the
 Father in my name that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost &
 also of the other tribes who ~~they~~ know not of that these sayings which ye shall write
 shall be kept & shall be manifested unto the Gentiles that through the ^{power} of the
^{of the Father} the remnant of their seed which shall be scattered forth upon the face of the ear-
 th because of their unbelief may be brought in or may be brought to a knowledge
 of me their righteousness then will I gather them from the four quarters of the earth &
 then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of
 the house of Israel & blessed are the Gentiles because of their belief in me and of the
 Holy Ghost which witnesseth unto them of me & of the Father behold because
 of their belief in me saith the Father because of the unbelief of you I have of

390 And when they began to sing the words of the things
 which were said unto them, the Father in my name ^{that} they may understand & pre-
 pare your minds, for the moment is come unto you again but now I come
 to the Father & also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel. For they are not lost
 unto the Father for he knoweth the will of the Father he hath taken them in that I came to pass
 that whosoever had thus spoken he cast his eyes round about again on the
 multitude & behold it was as if they added ten thousand upon him as if they
 would add him to his & a little longer with them & he said unto them Behold
 my heart is ~~broken~~ with compassion because you have people that are sick
 among you bring them hither I have many that are lame or blind or halt or
 maimed or leprous that are withered that are deaf that are afflicted
 in any manner bring them hither we will heal them for I have compassion
 on you my heart is afflicted with mercy for I perceive that ye desire that I should
 show unto you what I have come unto you but I cannot for as yet I see that your
 faith is imperfect I shall stand here and wait until I see that when he had thus
 spoken all the multitude with one accord did go forth with their sick & their affli-
 cted & their lame & their blind & their dumb & with all they that were affli-
 cted many more which could not tell of their names they were brought forth unto
 him & he said unto them I will heal you and then he laid his hand upon their heads
 and behold their infirmities were healed as many as could come for the
 multitude did kiss his feet inasmuch that they did bathe his feet with
 tears & he came to pass that he commanded that their ill & their sick should
 be brought here they brought them to the children & sat them down upon the
 ground about him & he was dead in the midst & the multitude gave way to
 him & did not bring him to him then he came to pass that he had said
 been brought to him & he was in the midst he commanded the multitude that they
 should kneel down upon the ground & he came to pass that when they had
 knelt upon the ground he said unto them with a voice of great power I am troubled
 because of the unbelief of the people of the house of Israel, when he had said
 these words he simply also knelt upon the earth & when he knelt he prayed unto
 his Father with things which he prayed cannot be written & the multitude did
 hear record with ~~him~~ and him & after this manner they hear record The
 things which he said & the things which he heard before so great & marvelous
 things as we now do & as Jesus spake unto the Father & no tongue cannot
 speak neither can it be written by any man neither can the hearts of men
 conceive so great & marvelous things as we both saw & heard Jesus speak
 & no one can conceive of the joy which I felt & saw at the time we heard
 him pray for us unto the Father & it came to pass that when Jesus had made
 an end of praying unto the Father he arose but so great was the joy of

multitude, that they were overcome. And it came to pass that Jesus ^{came} ^{up} ^{unto} them & bade them arise & they arose from the earth. & he came to them & blessed
 one of them of whom I have heard & now he told me that he had seen him in vision & he was
 in the multitude of men & he bade them to the children one by one
 & blessed them & placed them in the Father's arms & when he had done this he
 went again to the multitude & said unto them Behold of our little
 ones how they looked to be heard. They cast their eyes towards Heaven & they
 said the Father open & they saw angels descending out of Heaven as it were in the
 midst of the multitude & came down & ministered unto those little ones about & they were
 enabled a hour with fire & the angels did minister unto them & the multitude
 did see & hear & hear & saw it & they know that their record is true for they all
 of them did see & hear every man for himself & they were in number about
 two thousand & six hundred souls & they did consist of men ^{children} ^{men} ^{women} ^{children}
~~And~~ And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should
 bring him some meat & wine & when he had said this he gave them bread & wine
 he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the grass
 & when the disciples had come with bread & wine he took of the bread & broke it
 blessed it & he gave unto the disciples & commanded that they should eat & when they had
 eat & were filled he commanded that they should give unto the multitude &
 when the multitude had eaten & were filled he said unto the disciples Behold there
 shall I be seated on my Father's throne & I will give power that he shall break
 bread & give it unto the people of my Church & unto all those who
 shall believe & be baptized in my name & this shall ye always & hereafter do
 even as I have done even as I have broken bread & blessed it & gave it unto you & this
 shall ye do in remembrance of my body which I have given unto you & it shall
 be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me & if ye do always
 remember me ye shall have my spirit to be with you And it came to pass that
 when he had said these words he commanded his disciples that they should
 take of the wine of the cup & drink of it & that they should also give unto the
 multitude that they might drink of it And it came to pass that they did so &
 did drink of it & were filled & they gave unto the multitude & they did drink & they were
 filled & when the disciples had done this Jesus said unto them Blessed are ye for this
 thing which ye have done for this is fulfilling my commandments & that doth wit-
 ness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you
 & this shall ye always do unto those who repent & are baptized in my name &
 ye shall do it in remembrance of me & I had which I have shed for you that ye
 may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me & if ye do al-
 ways remember me ye shall have my spirit to be with you & I give unto
 you a commandment that ye shall do these things & if ye shall always do these

392 ¹ ~~These~~ blessed are ye for ye are built upon my rock but whose among
 you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock but are built
 upon a sandy foundation & when ~~the~~ ^{the} winds come & the winds
 blow & beat upon them they shall fall & the gates of hell is already open to re-
 ceive them therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments which
 the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you & ye shall be ready
 unto ye ye must watch & pray always lest ye be tempted by the devil & ye are
 led ^{away} ~~away~~ ^{from} ~~from~~ ^{of} ~~of~~ ^{the} ~~the~~ ^{line} ~~line~~ ^{by} ~~by~~ ^{him} ~~him~~ ^{as} ~~as~~ ^{have} ~~have~~ ^{played} ~~played~~ ^{among} ~~among ^{you} ~~you ^{and} ~~and~~ ^{so} ~~so ^{shall} ~~shall ^{ye} ~~ye ^{pray} ~~pray
 my church among ~~the~~ ^{my} ~~people~~ ^{people} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~are~~ ^{are} ~~kept~~ ^{kept} ~~in~~ ⁱⁿ ~~my~~ ^{my} ~~name~~ ^{name} ~~like~~ ^{like}
 I do I am the light I have set an example ~~to~~ ^{for} ~~you~~ ^{and} ~~it~~ ^{came} ~~to~~ ^{pass} ~~that~~ ^{that}
 when Jesus had made these words unto his disciples he turned again unto the mu-
^{sacred} ~~ltitude~~ ^{multitude} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~hold~~ ^{hold} ~~them~~ ^{them} ~~unto~~ ^{unto} ~~you~~ ^{you} ~~ye~~ ^{ye} ~~must~~ ^{must} ~~watch~~ ^{watch} &
 pray always lest ye enter into temptation for satan desireth to have you
 that he may sift you as wheat therefore ye must always pray unto
 the Father in my name & whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name
 which is right believing that ye shall receive ~~to~~ ^{be} ~~hold~~ ^{it} ~~shall~~ ^{be} ~~given~~ ^{given}
 unto you pray in faith & minister unto the Father always in my name that your
 wives & your children may be blessed & behold ye shall meet together oft
 ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet
 together but suffer them that they may come unto you & ordain them not
 but ye shall pray for them & shall not cast them out if it so be that they
 come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father in my name that ye
 hold up your light & it may shine unto the world be hold I am the light
 which ye shall hold up that which ye have seen me do behold ye ^{that} ~~have~~ ^{seen}
 I have prayed unto the Father & all have witnessed & ye see that I have com-
 manded that none of you should go away but rather have commanded that ye
 should come unto me that ye might feel & see when I shall go unto the
 world & whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led
 into temptation & now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words
 he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen & saith unto
 them Behold many will say unto you give unto you another commandment &
 then I must go ~~unto~~ ^{to} my Father that I ^{may} ~~might~~ ^{fulfill} ~~other~~ ^{other} ~~commandments~~ ^{commandments} ~~which~~ ^{which} ~~he~~ ^{he}
 shall give me & now I will this is the commandment which I give unto you
 that ye shall not suffer anyone knowingly to partake of my flesh & blood un-
 lawfully when ye shall minister of or whosoever eateth & drinketh my flesh & blood
 unlawfully eateth & drinketh damnation to his soul therefore if ye know
 that a man is unworthy to eat & drink of my flesh & blood ye shall forbid him
 nevertheless ye shall not cast him out from among you but ye shall minister
 unto him & shall pray for him unto the Father in my name & if it so be that he~~~~~~~~~~~~

repenteth & is baptiz'd in my name then shall ye receive him & shall
 minister unto him of my flesh & blood but if he repent ~~not~~ not he shall
 not be numbered among my people that he may not destroy my people for
 he hath I know my sheep & they are numbered nevertheless shall not cast him
 out of your synagogues or your places of worship for unto such ye shall contin-
 ue to minister for ye know not but what this will ^{return} ~~repent~~ ^{report} ~~return~~ ^{come}
 unto me will full purpose of heart & I shall heal them & ye shall be the means of bring-
 ing salvation unto them therefore keep these sayings which I have commanded
 you that ye come not under condemnation for me unto him whom the Father sent
 me with & I give you these commandments because of the disputations which
 have been among you ~~before~~ ^{therefore} & blessed are ye if ye have no disputations
 among you & now I go unto the Father because it is expedient that I should go
 unto the Father for your sakes And it came to pass that when Jesus had made
 an end of these sayings he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had cho-
 sen one by one even until he had touched them all & spake unto them as he touch-
 ed them & the multitude heard not the words which he spake therefore they did not
 hear record but the disciples hear record that he gave them power to give the Li-
 ly Ghost & I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true And it came
 to pass that when Jesus had touched them all there came a cloud & overshadow-
 ed the multitude that they could not see Jesus & while they were overshadow-
 ed he departed from them & ascended into Heaven & the disciples saw & did
 hear record that he ascended again into Heaven Chapter 18 - And now it
 came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into Heaven the multitude ^{did} ~~disper-~~
 sed every man did take his wife & his children & did return to his own home
 & it was raised abroad among the people immediately before it was ^{that}
 dark that the multitude had seen Jesus that he had ministered unto them
 & that he would also chew himself on the morrow unto the multi-
 tude yea & even all the night it was raised abroad concerning Jesus & in-
 so much did they send forth unto the people that there were many yea and
 exceeding great number did labor exceedingly all that night that they
 might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself
 unto the multitude And it came to pass that on the morrow when the multi-
 tude was gathered together behold Joseph his brother whom he had ^{was}
 raised from the dead whose name was Timothy & also his son whose name
 was Jonas & also Nathoni & Nathoni-hah his brother ^{and} Kume & Trumoni
 & also Jeremiah & Shemnon & Jonas & Gedekiah & Shish now these were
 the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen And it came to pass that
 went forth & stood in the midst of the multitude & behold the multi-
 tude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated

394 Twelve ladies & the twelve did teach the multitude but he-
 hold they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the
 face of the earth & should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus &
 the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus and it came to pass
 that they arose & ministered unto the people & when they had ministered them
 same words which Jesus had spoken nothing changing from the words which Jesus
 had spoken behold they knelt again & prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus &
 they did pray for that which they most desired & they desired that the Holy Ghost should
 be given unto them & when they had thus prayed they went down unto the waters
 edge & the multitude followed them and it came to pass that Joseph went down
 into the water & was baptized & he came up out of the water & began to baptize
 & he did baptize all those whom Jesus had chosen and it came to pass when they were
 all baptized & had come up out of the water the Holy Ghost did fall upon them
 & they were filled with the Holy Ghost & with fire & he held they were encircled ab-
 out as if it were fire & it came down from Heaven & the multitude did
 witness it & do hear record & angels did come down out of Heaven & did min-
 ister unto them & it came to pass that while they were ministering unto the disciples
 behold Jesus came & stood in the midst & ministered unto them & it came to pass that
 he spake unto the multitude & commanded them that they should kneel down
 again upon the earth & also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth
 And it came to pass that when they had all knelt ^{down} upon the earth he com-
 manded his disciples that they should pray & behold they began to pray & they did pray unto
 Jesus calling him their Lord & their God & it came to pass that Jesus departed out
 of the midst of them & went a little way off from them & bowed himself to the
 earth & he said Father I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto
 these whom I have chosen & it is because of their belief ^{in me} that I have chosen them
 out of the world in that I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost
 unto all them that shall believe in their words & Father thou
 hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believed in me and
 thou seest ^{that} they believe in me because thou hast sent them and they
 pray unto me and they pray unto me because I am with them and
 now Father I pray unto thee for them and also for all those which shall
 believe on their words that they may believe in me that I may be
 in them as thou Father art in me that we may be one, and it
 came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father he
 came unto his disciples and behold they did still continue without cea-
 sing to pray unto him and they did not multiply many words
 for it was given unto them what they should pray and they were
 filled with desire and it came to pass that Jesus beheld them

395 as they did pray unto him and his countenance did shine upon them and the light of his countenance did shine upon them and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed ^{all} the whiteness yea ^{whereas} their countenance be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof and Jesus ^{said} saith unto them pray on nevertheless they did not cease to pray and he turned from them again and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth and he prayed again unto the Father saying Father I thank thee that thou hast purified these which I have chosen because of their faith and I pray for them and also for them which shall believe on their words that they may be purified in me through faith on their words even as they are purified in me Father I pray not for the world but for those which thou hast given unto me out of the world because of their faith that they may be purified in me that I may be in them as thou Father art in me that we may be one that I may be glorified in them. And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples and behold they did pray earnestly without ceasing unto him and he did smile upon them again and behold they were white even as Jesus and it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father and tongues cannot speak the words which he prayed neither can be written by man the words which he prayed and the multitude did hear and do ^{from} record and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed nevertheless so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written neither can they be uttered by man, and it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples and ^{said} saith unto them so great faith have I never seen among all the Jews wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles because of their unbelief verily I say unto you there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard and it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray and also his disciples, and he commanded them that they should not cease to praying their hearts and he commanded them that they should arise and stand upon their feet and they arose up and stood on their feet, and it came to pass that he ~~broke~~ ^{took} bread again and blessed it and gave to the disciples to eat and when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread and give unto the multitude and when ~~the~~

396 they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink
 and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude and there had been no
 bread neither wine brought by the disciples neither by the multitude but he
 truly gave unto them bread and also wine to drink and he said unto
 them that eat of this bread eat of my body to thine soul and he that drink
 -eth of this wine drink of my blood to thine soul and thine soul shall
 never hunger nor thirst but shall be filled now when the multitude
 had all eat and drank behold they were filled with the spirit and
 they did cry out with one voice and gave glory to Jesus whom they
 both saw and heard and it came to pass that when they had all
 given glory unto Jesus he said unto them behold I finish the command-
 -ment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people
 which are a remnant of the House of Israel he ^{renewed} ~~renewed~~ that I spoke unto
 you and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled behold they are
 written ye have them before you therefore search them and verily
 verily I say unto you that when they shall be fulfilled there is the
 fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his
 people of the House of Israel and then shall the remnant which
 shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth be gathered
 in from the east and from the west and from the south and from
 the north and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord
 their God who hath redeemed them and the Father hath commanded
 me that I should give unto ^{you} this land for your inheritance and I
 say unto you that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessings which
 they shall receive after ~~this~~ ^{that} I have scattered my people then shall
 all ye which are a remnant of the House of Jacob be with among them
 and ye shall be in the midst of them which shall be many and
 ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest
 and as a young lion among the flock of sheep who
 if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces
 and none can deliver. ^{his} ~~his~~ hand shall be lifted up upon ^{his} ~~his~~ adversaries
 and all ^{his} ~~his~~ enemies shall be cut off and I will gather my people to-
 -gether as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor for I will make my
 people whom the Father hath covenanted ye and I will make thy horn
 iron & I will make thy hoofs brass and thou shalt beat in pieces
 many people and I will consume their pain unto the Lord and their substance
 unto the Lord of the whole earth and behold I am he which doeth it
 and it shall come to pass saith the Father that the sword of my justice
 shall hang over them at that day and except they repent it shall fall

397 11, on them ^{the} rather yea even upon all the ~~Gentiles~~ Nations of
 the Gentiles, and it shall come to pass that I will establish my People
 of Israel and behold this People will I establish in this Land
 unto the fulfilling of the Covenant which I made with your Father Joseph and
 it shall be a new Jerusalem and the Powers of Heaven shall be in the
 midst of this People yea even I will be in the midst of you Behold I am
~~in the~~ he of whom Moses spake, saying a ^{Prophet} ~~People~~ shall the Lord your God
 raise up unto you of your Brethren like unto me him shall ye hear
 in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you and it shall come to
 pass that every Soul which will not hear that ~~Prophet~~ Prophet shall be cut
 off from among the People. Verily I say unto you, yea and all the Prophets
 from Samuel and those that follow after as many as ^{as} have spoken have testified
 of me and behold ye are the Children of the Prophets and ye are of the
 House of Israel and ye are of the Covenant which the Father made
 with your Father saying unto Abraham and in thy seed shall all
 the ^{kindreds of} ~~through~~ ^{of} the Earth be blessed, the Father having raised me up
 unto you first and sent me to bless you in turning away every one
 of you from his Iniquities and this because ye are the Children of the
 Covenant after that ye were blessed then fulfill the Father the Covenant whi-
 -ch he made with Abraham saying in thy seed shall all the Kindreds of the
 Earth be blessed unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the
 Gentiles which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all
 unto the scattering of my People O House of Israel and they shall be as-
 -sured unto the People of this Land nevertheless when they shall have recei-
 -ved the fullness of my Gospel then if they shall harden their hearts ag-
 -ainst me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads saith the
 Father and I will remember the Covenant which I have made with my
 People, & I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in
 mine own due time that I would give unto them again the Land of their
 Fathers for their inheritance which is the Land of Jerusalem which is the prom-
 -ised Land unto them forever saith the Father & it shall come to pass that
 at the time cometh when the fullness of my Gospel be preached unto them
 and they shall believe in me that I am Jesus Christ the Son of God & shall
~~bring~~ ^{bring} unto the Father in my name then shall their watchmen lift up their
 voice & with the voice together shall they sing for they shall see eye to eye
 then will the Father gather them together again & give unto them Jerusalem
 for the Land of their inheritance then shall they break forth into joy
 singing together ye waste places of Jerusalem for the Father hath comforted his
 People he hath redeemed Jerusalem the Father of hath made bare his Holy

898 arm in the eyes of all the Nations and all the ends of the Earth shall
 see the salvation of the Father and the Father & I are one and then shall be
 brought to pass that which is written awake awake again & put on thy strength
 - the O' Lion put on thy beautiful garments O Jerusalem the Holy City
 for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised &
 the unclean shall shake thyself from the dust arise sit down O Jerusalem
 loose thyself from the bands of thy neck ^{live} O Jerusalem & Lion for thus
 saith the Lord ye have sold yourselves for naught & ye shall be redeemed
 without money. Verily, verily I say unto you that my People shall know
 my name ye in that day they shall know that I am he that speak
 & then shall they say how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of
 him that bringeth good tidings unto them that publisheth peace that
 bringeth good tidings unto them of good that publisheth the salvation that say
 - the unto Zion thy God reigneth and then shall a cry go forth depart ye
 depart ye go ye out from thence touch not that which is unclean go ye forth
 of the midst of her be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord for ye shall
 not go out with haste nor go by flight for the Lord will go before you &
 the God of Israel shall be your ^{return} ~~reward~~ behold my servant shall deal
 prudently he shall be exalted & exalted and be very high as many were
 astonished at thee his visage was ^{remained} more than any man and his form
 more than the sons of men so shall he sprinkle many Nations his kingly
 shall shut their mouths at him for that which had been told them shall
 they see and that which they had not heard shall they consider. Verily, verily I
 say unto you all these things shall surely come even as the Father hath
 commanded me & then shall this Covenant which the Father hath commanded
 with his People be fulfilled & then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with
 my People & it shall be the land of their inheritance & verily I say unto you
^{sign} ~~sign~~ unto you that ye may know the time when these things shall be
 about to take place that I shall gather in from their long ^{dispersion} ~~dispersion~~
 my People O House of Israel & shall establish again among ^{them} my Lion
 and behold this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign forve
 - only I say unto you that when these things which I ^{shall} ~~shall~~ ^{shall} ~~shall~~ unto you and sh
 - I shall ~~shall~~ ^{shall} unto you hereafter of myself & by the power of the hol
 y Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father shall be made known
 unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this People which are a
 remnant of the House of Jacob and concerning this my People which
 shall be scattered by them verily, verily I say unto you when these things
 shall be made known unto them of the Father and shall come forth of the
 Father from thence unto you for it is wisdom in the Father that they should

399 be established in this land & be set up as a free People by the Power of
 of the Father that these may be brought forth from them unto a remnant of you
 seed that the Covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath coven-
 -anted with his People of House of Israel therefore when these works and
 the work which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth
 from the Gentiles unto your seed which shall dwell in unbelief be-
 -cause of iniquity for thus it ~~becometh~~ becometh the Father that it should
 come forth from the Gentiles that he may show forth his power unto the
 Gentiles for this cause, that the Gentiles if they will not harden their hearts
 that they may repent and come unto me and be baptised in my name
 and know of the true points of my doctrine that they may be numbered among
 my People of House of Israel & when these things come to pass that they seed
 shall begin to know these things it shall be a sign unto them that they may
 know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of
 the Covenant which he hath made ^{it shall come} unto the People which are of the House of
 Israel & when that day shall come to pass that things shall show their mouths
 forth that which had not been told them shall they see & that which they had
 not heard shall they consider, for in that day for my sake shall the Father
 work a work among which shall be a great & a marvelous work among them
 and there shall be among them which will not believe it although a man
 shall declare it unto them, but behold the life of my servant shall be in
 my hand therefore thus shall not hurt him although he shall be married
 because of them yet I will heal him for I will show unto them that
 my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the Devil therefore it shall come
 to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words which are Jesus Christ
 which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles & shall
 give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles
 it shall be done even as Moses said thus shall be cut off from among my
 People which are of the Covenant & my People which are a remnant of Jacob
 shall be among the Gentiles you in the midst of them as a lion among
 the Beasts of the forest as a young lion among the flocks of sheep who
 if he go through with breadth down & teareth in pieces & none can
 deliver their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries & all their
 Enemies shall be cut off yea we be unto the Gentiles except they repent
 for it shall come to pass in that day saith the Father that I will cut
 off thy Floods out of the midst of thee & I will destroy mine Enemies & I will
 cut off the cities of thy land & throw down all thy strong holds & I will cut
 off witchcrafts out of thy hand & there shall have no more soothsayers thy
 Groven Images I will also cut off & thy Standing Images out of the midst of

400 of thee & thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands & will
 pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee so will I destroy thy cities
 & it shall come to pass that all weeping & deceivings & envying & strife & priest
 -craft & whoredoms shall be done away. For it shall come to pass saith the
 Father that at that day whosoever will not repent & come unto me bel
 -oved son thou wilt be cut off from among my people & House of Israel
 & I will execute vengeance & fury upon them even as upon the heathen
 such as they have not heard. Chapter X But if they will repent &
 hearken unto my words & harden not their hearts I will establish my ch
 -urch among them & they shall come in unto the covenant & be numbered
 among this the remnant of Jacob unto whom I have given this land for their
 Inheritance & they shall assist my People the remnant of Jacob & also
 as many of the house of Jacob of Israel as shall come that they may build
 a city which shall be called the New Jerusalem & then shall they assist
 my People that they may be gathered in which are scattered upon all
 the face of the land in unto the New Jerusalem & then shall the powers
 of Heaven come down among them & I also will be in the midst and
 then shall the work of the Father commence at that day even when this
 Gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this People & I say
 unto you at that day shall the work of the Father commence among
 all the dispersed of my People yea even the tribes which have been
 lost which the Father hath had away out of Jerusalem yea the work shall
 commence among all the dispersed of any People with the Father to
 prepare the way whereby they may come unto me that they may
 call on the Father in my name yea & then shall the work commence with the Father
 among all Nations in preparing the way whereby his People may be gathered
 home to the land of their inheritance & they shall go out from all Nations
 & they shall not go out in haste nor go by flight for I will go before them
 saith the Father & I will be their rearward & then shall that which is written
 come to pass. Sing & lamentation that didst not bear, break forth into si
 -nging & cry aloud thou that didst not travel with maid nor more are the
 children of the desolate than the children of the married wife saith the
 Lord enlarge the place of thy tent & let them stretch forth the curtains
 of thy habitations have not I enlarged thy borders & strengthen the stakes for
 thou shalt break forth on the right hand & on the left & his seed shall in
 -herit the Gentiles & make the desolate cities to be inhabited fear not for
 thou shalt not be ashamed neither be thou confounded for thou shalt not
 be put to shame for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth & shalt not
 remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more for thus saith the Lord

401 the Lord of Hosts is his name & thy redeemer the Holy one of Israel the God
 of the whole earth shall he be called for the Lord hath called thee as a woman - once
 - when & grined in spirit & wife of youth when thou wast & used saith thy God for
 a small moment have I forsaken thee & with great mercies will I gather thee
 in a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment but with everlasting
 kindness will I have mercy on thee saith the Lord thy redeemer for thus the waters of
 Noah unto me & as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more
 go over the earth so have I sworn that I would not be wrath with thee for the
 Mountains shall depart & the hills be removed but my kindness shall not depart
 from thee neither shall the Covenant of my peace be removed saith the Lord that
 hath mercy on thee & thou of the house of Israel in the tempests & not comforted behold
 I will lay my stones with fair colors & lay thy foundations with sapphires & I will
 make thy windows of agates & thy gates of Carbunkles & all thy borders of pleasant
 stones & all the Children shall be taught of the Lord & great shall be the plea-
 -ce of thy Children in righteousness & shall thou be established thou shalt be
 free from oppression for thou shalt not fear & from terror for it shall not con-
 -near thee be hold they shall surely gather together against thee not by me
 whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake behold I
 have created the Smith that bloweth the Coals in the fire & that bringeth
 -eth forth an instrument for his work & I have created the ^{water} ~~water~~ to destroy
 no weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper & every tongue that shall
 revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn this is the heritage of
 the servants of the Lord in their righteousnessness is of me saith the Lord & now behold
 I say unto you that ye had ought to search these things yea a Commandment
 I give unto you that ye search these things diligently for great is the words of
 Isaiah for surely he spake as touching all things concerning my People which
 are of the House of Israel therefore it must needs be that he must speak
 also to the Gentiles & all things that he spake hath been & shall be even accord-
 -ing to the words which he spake therefore give heed to my words, write
 the things which I have told you & according to the time & the will of the
 Father ^{it shall} go forth unto the Gentiles & whosoever will hearken unto my words
 & repenteth & baptised the same shall be saved, search the Prophets for
 many there be that testify of these things & now I come to pass that which Jesus
 had said these words he ^{saith} ~~saith~~ unto them again after he had expounded all the
 scriptures unto them which they had received he ~~saith~~ ^{saith} unto them in old
 other scriptures I would that ye should write that ye have not & it came to pass
 that he said unto Nephi bring forth the Records which ye have kept & when
 Nephi had brought forth the Records & laid them before him he cast his eyes
 upon them & saith & I say unto you I Commanded my servant Samuel the

402 Lamanites that he should testify unto this People that at the day that the Father should ^{that} send his name in me there were many Saints which should arise from the dead & should appear unto many & should minister unto them & he said unto them were it not so & his Disciples answered him & said yea Lord Samuel did prophesy according to thy words & they were all fulfilled & Jesus said unto them how be it that ye have not written this thing that many Saints did arise & appear unto many & did minister unto them & it came to pass that I & the remembrance of this thing had not been written & it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it should be written therefore it was written according as he commanded Chapter XI

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had expounded all the Scriptures in one which they had written he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them & it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the word which the Father had given unto Malachi & he would tell unto them & it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them & these are the words which he did tell unto them saying thus said the Father unto Malachi behold I will send my messenger & he shall prepare the way before me & the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his Temple even the messenger of the Covenant whom ye delight in behold he shall come saith the Lord of Hosts but may abide the day of his coming & who shall stand when he appeareth for he is like a refiner's fire & like fullers soap & he shall sit as a refiner & purifier of Silver & he shall purify the Sons of Levi & purge them as gold & silver that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness then shall the offering of Judah & Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord as in the days of old & as in former years & I will come near to you to judgment & I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers & against the adulterers & against false swearers & against those that oppress the hireling in his wages the widow & the fatherless & that turn aside the stranger & fear not me saith the Lord of Hosts for I am the Lord & I change not, therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances & have not kept them, return unto me & I will return unto you saith the Lord of Hosts but ye said wherein shall we return will a man rob God yet ye have robbed me but ye say wherein have we robbed thee in tithes & offerings ye are cursed with a curse for ye have robbed me even this whole nation bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse that there may be meat in my house and prove me now herewith saith the Lord of Hosts if I will not open you the windows of Heaven & pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it & I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes he shall

46 I will not destroy the fruits of your ground neither shall your vine cast
 her fruit before the time in the field saith the Lord of Hosts & all Nations
 shall call you Blessed for ye shall be a delightful land saith the Lord
 of Hosts. your words have been stout against me saith Lord yet ye say what
 have we spoken against thee ye have said it is vain to serve God & what do we
 profit that we have kept his ordinances & that we have walked mournfully
 before the Lord of Hosts & now we call the proud happy yea they that work
 wickedness are set up yea them that tempt God are even delivered them
 they that feared the Lord spake often one to another & the Lord hearkened & heard &
 a Book of remembrance ^{was} written before him for them that feared the Lord & that
 thought upon his name & they shall be mine saith the Lord of Hosts in that day
 when I make up my jewels & I will spare them as a man spareth his own son
 that sweeth him then shall ye ^{return} discern between the righteous & the wicked
 between him that serve the God & him that serveth him not for behold the day
 cometh that shall burn as an Oven & all the proud yea & all that do wickedly
 shall be stubble & the day that cometh shall burn them up saith the Lord
 of Hosts. that it shall leave them neither ^{root} ~~any~~ nor branch but unto you
 that fear my name shall the stock of righteousness arise with healing
 in his wings & ye shall go forth & grow up as ~~calves~~ Calves of the stall
 & ye shall tread down the wicked for they shall be ~~as~~ ashes under the sole
 of your feet in the day that I shall do this saith the Lord of Hosts remember
 ye the Law of Moses my servant which I commanded unto him in horeb
 for all Israel with the statutes & judgments behold I will send you Elijah the Prophe
 - it before the coming of the great & dreadful day of the Lord & he shall turn
 the heart of the Fathers to the children & the heart of the children to their fat
 - hers ~~that~~ least I come & smite the Earth with a curse And now it came to pass
 that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitu
 - de & he did expound all things unto them both great & small & he sayeth
 these scriptures which ye had not with you the Father commanded that I
 should give unto you for it was wisdom in him that they should be given
 unto future generations & he did expound all things even from the beginn^g
 until the time ^{now} should come in his glory yea even all things which
 should come upon the ~~earth~~ Earth even until the elements should
 melt with fervent heat & the earth should be wrapped together as a ser
 - vice & the Heaven & the Earth should pass away & even unto the great
 last day when all people & all kindreds & all Nations & Tongues shall
 stand before God to be judged of their works whether they be good or
 whether they be evil if they be good to the resurrection of everlasting
 life & if they be evil to the resurrection of damnation being on a

404 parallel the one on the one hand & the other on the other hand according to the mercy & the Justice & the holiness which is in Christ which was before the world began Chapter XII

And now there cannot be written in this Book even an hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the People but behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the People & these things have I written which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the People & I have written them to the intent ^{that} they may be brought again unto this People from the Gentiles according to the words which Jesus hath spoken & when they shall have received this which is expedient that they should have first to try their faith & if it should so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them & if it so be that they will not believe these things then shall the greater things be withheld from them unto their condemnation behold I were about to write them all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi but the Lord forbid it saying I will try the faith of my People therefore I Mormon do write the things which have been Commanded me of the Lord, And now I Mormon make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been Commanded me therefore I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the People for the space of three days & after that he did show himself unto them & he did break bread & bless it & give it unto them & it came to pass that he did teach & minister unto the Children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken & he did loose their tongues & they did speak unto their Fathers great & marvelous things even greater than he had revealed unto the People & loosed their tongues that they could utter & it came to pass that after he had ascended into Heaven the second time that he showed himself unto them & ^{he} gone unto the Father after having healed all their sick & their lame & opened the eyes of the blind & he stopped the ears of the deaf & even had done all manner of cures among them & raised a man from the dead & had shown forth his Power unto them & had ascended unto the Father, behold it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together & they both saw & heard these Children yea even Babes did open their mouths & utter marvelous things & the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them & it came to pass that the Disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize & to teach as many as did come unto them & as many as were baptised in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost & many of them saw & heard unspeakable things which

5 are not lawful to be written & they taught & did minister one to another
 and they had all things common among them every man dealing
 justly one with another and it came to pass that they did do all things
 - as even as Jesus had commanded them & they which were baptised in the
 name of Jesus were called the Church of Christ & it came to pass that as the
 Disciples of Jesus were journeying & were preaching the things which they had
 both heard & seen & were baptising in the name of Jesus it came to pass that the
 Disciples were gathered together & were united in mighty prayer & fasting & Jesus
 again showed himself unto them for they were praying unto the Father in his name
 & Jesus came & stood in the midst of them & said unto them what will ye that I shall
 give unto you & they said unto him Lord we will that thou wouldst tell us the
 name whereby we shall call this Church for there are disputations among
 the People concerning this matter & the Lord said unto them verily verily
 I say unto you whosoever it be that the People should move & dispute because
 of this thing have them not read the scriptures which say & ye must take upon
 you the name of Christ which is my name & whosoever shall call upon the name of
 the Father & of the Son & of the Holy Ghost in my name & endure to the end the same shall
 be saved & the Lord said therefore whosoever ye shall do ye shall do it in my name
 therefore ye shall call the Church in my name & ye shall call upon the Father in
 my name that he will bless the Church for my sake & howbeit my Church shall
 it be called in my name for if a Church be called in Moses name the Church
 shall be called in his name & the name of a man it shall be the Church of a man but
 if it be called in my name then it is my Church if it so be that they are built upon my
 Gospel verily I say unto you that ye are built upon my Gospel therefore ye shall call
 whatsoever things ye do call in my name therefore if ye call upon the Father for the Church
 if it be in my name the Father will hear you & if it so be that the Church is built upon
 my Gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it but if it be not built
 upon my Gospel & is built upon the works of ~~men~~ ^{men} or upon the works of the devil
 verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season & by & by the fire cometh
 & they are burned down & cast into the fire from whence there is no return for
 their works do follow them but it is because of their works that they are burned down
 therefore remember the things that I have told you & I have given unto you my
 Gospel & this is the Gospel which I have given unto you that I came into the world to do
 the will of my Father because my Father sent me & my Father said unto me that I should
 lift up the life upon the Cross & after that I had been lifted up upon the Cross
 might draw all men unto me that had never been lifted up by men & men so should
 men be lifted up by the Father & should be judged of their works whether
 they be good or whether they be evil & for this cause have I been lifted up therefore
 according to the power of the Father will draw all men unto me that they may

406 be judged according to their works & it shall come to pass that whosoever
 - hath been baptised in my name shall be filled & it is endureth to the end behold
 him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to
 - judge the world & he that endureth not unto the end the same is he that is also
 - cast into the fire from whence there can no more return because of the
 - nature of the Father & this is the word which he hath given unto the children of
 - men & for this cause he fulfilth the words which he hath ~~of~~ given & he lieth
 - not but fulfilth all his words & no unclean thing can enter into his Kingdom
 - therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments
 - in my blood because of their faith & the repentance of all their sins & their
 - faithfulness unto the end now this is the commandment I give all ye ends of the car-
 - -th & come unto me & be baptised in my name that ye may be sanctified by the
 - reception of the Holy Ghost that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day
 - Verily verily I say unto you this is my Gospel & ye know the things that ye must do
 - in my Church for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do
 - that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do therefore if ye do these things
 - blessed are ye for ye shall be lifted up at the last day Chapter X VIII
 - And the things which ye have seen & heard save it be those which are
 - forbidden write the ^{words} of this People which shall be even as hath been
 - written of that which hath been for behold out of the Books which have been
 - written & which shall be written shall this People be judged for by their works
 - be known unto men & behold all things are written by the Father therefore out of
 - the Books which shall be written shall the world be judged & know ye
 - that ye shall be judges of this People according to the judgment which I shall
 - give unto you which shall be just therefore what manner of men had ye
 - ought to be verily I say unto you even as I am and now I go unto the Father and
 - verily I say unto you whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name
 - it shall be given unto you therefore ask & ye shall receive know & it shall
 - be opened unto you for he that asketh receiveth ^{unto} & to him that knocketh
 - it shall be opened and behold my joy is great even unto fullness because
 - of you & also this generation yea & even the Father rejoiceth & also all the ho-
 - ly Angels because of you & this generation for none of them ^{are} lost behold I
 - would that ye should understand ^{the} ^{mean} them which are now alive
 - of this generation & none of them are lost & in them I have fullness of joy
 - but behold it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this genera-
 - tion for they are lead away captive by him even as was the Son of Perdition for
 - they will sell me for silver & for gold & for that which is filthy & corrupt which
 - thieves can break through & steal & in that day will I visit them even
 - in burning their works upon their own heads & it came to pass that when

407 Jesus had ended these sayings he sayeth unto his disciples enter ye in at the
 strait gate for strait is the gate & narrow is the way that leads to life & few
 there be that find it but wide is the gate & broad the way which leads to death
 and many there be that travel therein until the night cometh wherein
 no man can work & it came to pass when Jesus had said these words he spake
 unto his disciples one by one saying unto them what is it that ye desire of me after
 that I am gone to the Father & they all spake save it were three saying we de-
 sire in after we have come unto the age of man that our ministry wherein thou hast
 called us may have an end that we may speedily come unto thee in thy Kingdom &
 he saith unto them blessed are ye because ye desire this thing of me therefore
 after that ye are seventy & two years old ye shall come unto me in my Kingdom
 & with me ye shall have rest & when he had spake unto them he turned himself
 unto the three & said unto them what will ye that I should do unto you when I am
 gone unto the Father & they grieved in their hearts for they durst not speak unto
 him the thing which they desired & he said unto them I would have you put troug-
 -ht upon me desired the thing which John my Beloved ~~and true~~ ^{was} with
 me in my mind to relate that I was lifted up (by the Jews) desired of me therefore
 more blessed are ye for ye shall never taste death but ye shall live to behold all the
 doings of the Father unto the children of men even until all things shall be ful-
 filled according to the will of the Father when I shall come in my glory with
 the powers of Heaven & ye shall never endure the pains of death but when I shall
 come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortal-
 -ity to immortality & then shall ye be blessed in the Kingdom of my Father
 & again ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh neither
 sorrow or we it be for the sins of the world & all this will I do because of the thing
 which ye have desired of me for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls
 of men unto me while the world shall stand & for this cause ye shall have
 fullness of joy & ye shall sit down in the Kingdom of my Father & your
 joy shall be full even as the Father hath given me fullness of joy & ye shall be
 even as I am & I am even as the Father & the Father and I am one & the Holy Ghost
 beareth record of the Father and me & the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto
 the Children of men because of me and it came to pass that when Jesus had spake
 these words he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three
 which were to tarry & then he departed and behold the Heavens were opened and
 they ^{were} caught up into Heaven & saw & heard unspeakable things & it was forbidden
 them that they should utter neither was it given unto them power that they could
 utter the things which they saw & heard & whether they were in the body or out
 of the body they could not tell for it did seem unto them like a
 Transfiguration of them that they were changed from this body of flesh into

408 an immortal state that they could behold the things of God but it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard & seen because of the commandment which was given them in Heaven & now whether they were mortal or immortal from the day of their Transfiguration I know not but this much I know according to the Record which hath been given they did go forth upon the face of the land & did minister unto all the People uniting as many to the Church as would believe in their Preaching Baptizing ~~then~~ them & as many as were Baptized did receive the Holy Ghost & they were cast into Prison by them who did not belong to the Church & the Prisons could not hold them for they were rent in twain & they were cast down into the earth but they did smite the earth with the word of God inasmuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth & therefore they could not dig pits sufficiently to hold them & thrice they were cast into a furnace & received no harm & thrice were they cast into a den of wild beasts & behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb & received no harm & it came to pass that times they did go forth among all the People of the Land & did preach the Gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the Land & they were converted unto the Lord & were united unto the Church of Christ within the isle of that Generation were blessed according to the word of Jesus. And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time behold I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death but the Lord forbade, therefore I write them not for they are hid from the world but behold I have seen them & they have ministered unto me & behold they will be among the Gentiles & the Gentiles know them not, they will also be among the Jews & the Jews shall know them not & it shall come to pass when ~~that~~ ~~when~~ the Lord shall sit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel & unto all Nations Kindreds Tongues & People & shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls that their desire may be fulfilled & also because of the Convincing power of God which is in them & they are as the Angels of God & if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto what soever man it seemeth them good therefore great & marvelous works shall be wrought by them before the great & coming day when all People must surely stand before the Judgment seat of Christ; yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them before that Judgment day & if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ ye would according to the words of Christ know that these things must surely come to pass & so be unto him that will not hear him

409 unto the words of Jesus is also to them which he hath chosen & sent among them
 for whose ruineth not the words of Jesus & the words of them which he hath sent in with
 not him & therefore he will not receive them at the last day & it would be better for
 them if they had not been born for soye suppose that ye can get rid of the jus-
 tice of an offended God who hath been trampled under feet of men that
 thereby salvation might come, and now be hold and speak concerning them
 from the Lord shall I choose ye even those which were carryt up into ^{the} heavens
 that I know not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality ^{behold}
 But Jesus & we have enquired of the Lord & he hath made it manifest unto me
 that ^{ye need} needs be a change wrought upon their bodies and ~~ye~~ needs be that
 they must taste of death therefore that they might not taste of death there was
 a change wrought upon their bodies that they might not suffer pain nor ^{any}
 save it were for the sins of the world now this change was not equal to that which
 should be ^{at} the last day but there was a change wrought upon them
 in so much that Satan could have no power over them that he could not tempt
 them & they were sanctified in the flesh that they were Holy & that the powers
 of the earth could not hold them in this state they were to remain until the
 judgement day of Christ & at that day they were to receive a greater change &
 to be received into the Kingdom of the Father to go no more out but to dwell with
 God eternally in the heavens & now behold I say unto you that when the Lord
 shall see fit in his wisdom that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles
 according to his word then ye may know that the Covenant which the Father
 hath made with the Children of Israel concerning this restoration to the land
 of their inheritance is already beginning to be fulfilled & ye may know that the
 words of the Lord which have been spoken by the Holy Prophets shall all
 be fulfilled & ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the
 Children of Israel & ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which
 have been spoken are vain for be hold the Lord will remember his Covenant
 which he hath made unto his People of the House of Israel & when ye shall see
 these sayings coming forth among you then ye need not any longer spurn at the sayings
 of the Lord for the sword of his justice is in his right hand & behold at that day if ye shall
 spurn at his sayings he will punish that it shall soon overtake you & we caution that
 ye spurn at the sayings of the Lord ye are unto him that shall deny the Christ & his
 works ye are unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord & that shall say
 the Lord no longer worketh his revelation & by Prophecy & by gifts & by tongues & by
 healings & by the power of the Holy Ghost ye are unto him that shall say at
 that day that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ to get gain for he
 that doeth this shall become like unto the sons of perdition for whom there was no man
 among according to the words of Christ ye are ye need not any longer his nonfurnance

all game of the Jews ^{and} of the remnant of the house of Israel for behold the Lord
 remembereth his covenant unto them & he will do unto them according to that which
 he hath sworn: therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of
 the Lord unto the left: that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the
 covenant which he hath made unto the House of Israel Chapter XIV

¶ Hearken O ye Gentiles and hear the words of Jesus Christ the Son of God the living
 God which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you for behold
 he hath commanded me that I should write saying, turn all ye Gentiles from your
 wicked ways & repent of your evil doings of your lyings & deceivings & your whoredoms
 & of your secret abominations & your adulteries & of your Murders & your Priestcrafts
 & your envyings & your strifes & from all your wickedness & abominations & come
 unto me & be baptised in my name that ye may receive a remission of your
~~sin~~ sins & be filled with the Holy Ghost that ye may be numbered with my
 People which are of the House of Israel — in Book II. which is the son
 of mine one of the Disciples of Jesus Christ — An account of the People of Nephi after
 — ^{baptized first} — his ^{first} ~~disciple~~ ^{disciple} — And it came to pass that like the thirty & fourth year year
 passed away & also the thirty & fifth. & behold the Disciples of Jesus had formed
 a Church of Christ in all the lands round about & as many as did come unto
 them & did truly repent of their sins were baptised in the name of Jesus & they
 did also receive the Holy Ghost and it came to pass in the thirty & sixth year the
 People were all converted unto the Lord upon all the face of the land both Nephites
 & Lamanites & there were no contentions ^{or} ~~disputations~~ ^{disputations} among them & every man did
 deal justly one with another & they had ~~the~~ ^{all} things common among them therefore there
 were not rich & poor bond & free but they were all made free & partakers of the
 Heavenly gift & it came to pass that in the thirty & seventh year passed away also
 & there still continued ^{to be} peace in the land & there were great & marvellous works
 wrought by the Disciples of Jesus inasmuch that they did heal the sick & raise the
 dead & cause the lame to walk & the blind to receive their sight & the deaf to hear
 and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men & in noth-
 ing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus & thus did the
 thirty & eighth year pass away & also the thirty & ninth & the forty & first & the forty
 & second year even until forty & nine years had passed away & also the fifty & first
 and the fifty & second year & even until fifty & nine years had passed away & the
 Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land ye in so much that they did
 build cities again where there had been cities burned yea even that great city
 Zarahemla did they ~~cause~~ ^{cause} to be built again but there were many cities
 which had been sunk & waters came up in the stead thereof therefore these
 cities could not be renewed & now behold it came to pass that the People of Nephi
 did wax strong & did multiply exceedingly fast & became an exceeding fair

411 And delightful people & they were married & given in marriage & were
blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto
them & they did not walk any more after the performances & ordinances of the Law of
Moses but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their
Lord & their God continuing in fasting & prayer & in meeting together oft both to
pray & to hear the word of the Lord, and it came to pass that there was no contention
among all the people in all the land but there were mighty miracles wrought among the
the Disciples of Jesus & it came to pass that the seventy & first year passed away & also
the seventy & second year & yet in fine until the seventy & ninth year had passed
away yea even an hundred years had ^{passed} away & the Disciples of Jesus whom he had
chosen had all gone to the paradise of God save it were the three which should
tarry & there were other Disciples ordained in their stead & also many of that genera-
tion which had passed away & it came to pass that there was no contention in the land
because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the People & there were
no enmities nor strifes nor tumults nor whoredoms nor lying nor murders nor
manner of lasciviousness & every one could be a happy & simple among all the People
which had been created by the hand of God there were no robbers nor no murderers
neither were there sinners nor no manner of iniquities but they were in one the chil-
dren of Christ & heirs to the Kingdom of God & now blessed were they for the Lord did
bless them in all their doings yea even they were blessed & prospered until an hundred
& ten years had passed away & the first generation from Christ had passed away & there was
no contention in all the land & it came to pass that Nephi (ye that kept the last re-
cord & he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died & son Amos kept it in his stead & he
kept it upon the plates of Nephi also & he kept it eighty & four years & there was still
Peace in the land save it were a small part of the People who had revolted
from the Church & took upon them the name of Lamanites therefore there began
to be Lamanites again in the land & it came to pass that Amos died also &
it was an hundred & twenty & four years from the coming of Christ, and his son
Atmos kept ^{the record} in his stead & he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi & it was also written
in the Book of Mosiah which is this book & it came to pass that Two Hundred & age
-ars had passed away & the second generation had all passed away save it were
a few & now Mormon would that ye should know that the People had
multiplied in so much that they were spread upon all the face of the land
& that they had become exceeding rich because of their prosperity in Christ
& now in this Two hundred & first year there began to be among them those
- which were lifted up in pride & in the wearing of costly apparel & all manner
- of fine pearls & of the fine things of the world & from that time forth they did
have their goods & their substance no more common among them & they began to be
divided into classes & they began to build up Churches unto themselves to get gain and

412 began to deny the true Church of Christ & it came to pass that when two hundred & ten years had passed away there were many Churches in the Land & there were Churches which professed to know the Christ & yet they did deny the more part of his Gospel inasmuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness & did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness & this Church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity & because of the power of Satan which did get hold upon their hearts, & again there was another Church which denied the Christ & they did persecute the true Church of Christ because of their humility & their belief in Christ & they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them therefore they did ~~exercise~~ ^{possess} power & authority over the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry with them & they did cast them into prison but by the power of the word of God which was in them the prisons were rent in twain & they went forth doing mighty miracles among them nevertheless notwithstanding all these miracles the People did harden their hearts & did seek to kill them even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus according to his word & they did cast them into furnaces of fire & they came forth receiving no harm & they also cast them into dens of wild beasts & they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb & they did come forth from among them receiving no harm nevertheless the People did harden their hearts for they were led by many priests & false Prophets to build up many Churches & to do all manner of iniquity & they did smite upon the people of Jesus but the people ^{of Jesus} did not smite again & thus they did dwindle in unbelief & wickedness from year to year even until two hundred & thirty years had passed away - & now it came to pass in this year year in the two hundred & thirty & first year there was a great division among the People & it came to pass that in this year there arose a People which was called the Nephites & they were true believers in Christ & among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites therefore the true believers in Christ & the true worshipers of Christ among whom were the three disciples of Jesus which should tarry; were called Nephites & Jacobites & Josephites & Zoramites & it came to pass that they who rejected the Gospel were called Lamanites & Lemuelites & Shemuelites & they did not dwindle in unbelief but they did willfully rebel against the Gospel of Christ & they did teach their children that they should not believe even as their Fathers from the beginning ^{did} & it was because of the wickedness & abominations of their Fathers even as it was in the beginning & they were taught to hate the children of God even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning & it came to pass that two hundred & forty four years had passed away & thus were the affairs of the People & the more wicked part

413 of the People did war strong & became exceeding more numerous
than were the People of God & they did still continue to build up churches to them-
selves & adorn them with all manner of precious things & thus did two hundred
~~years~~ & fifty years pass away & also two hundred & sixty years & it came to pass
that the wicked part of the People began again to build up the secret oaths & com-
binations of Guadadon & also the people which were called the people of Nephi
began to grow in their hearts because of their exceeding riches & became
vain like unto their brethren the Lamanites & from this time the Disciples
began to sorrow for the sins of the world & it came to pass that ^{when three} hundred
years had passed away both the People of Nephi & the Lamanites had become
enemies & rebel one like unto another & it came to pass that the Robbers of
Guadadon did spread over all the face of the Land & there were none
that were righteous save it were the Disciples of Jesus, and Gold & silver
did they lay up in store in abundance & did traffic in all manner of tra-
ffick & it came to pass that after three hundred & five years ~~was~~ had pa-
ssed away & the people did still remain in wickedness & Amos died &
his brother Ammaron did keep the Record in his stead & it came to pass that
when three hundred & twenty years had passed away Ammaron being con-
strained by the Holy Ghost did hide up the records which were sacred & he
even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation
to generation which were sacred & he hid them until the three hundred & twenty year
from the coming of Christ did he hide them up unto the Lord that they
might come again unto the remnant of the House of ^{Parab} ~~Israel~~ according to the
Prophecies & the promises of the Lord & this is the end of the record of Ammaron
the last of ^{human} ~~the~~ ^{Chapter 1} (And now I Mormon make a record of the things)
which I have both seen & heard & call it the Book of Mormon & I did
about the same time that Ammaron hid up the Records unto the Lord he
came unto me & being about ten years of age I began to be learned some
what of the manner of the learning of my People & Ammaron
said unto me: perceive that thou art a sober child & art quick to observe ther-
efore when ye are about twenty & four years old I would that ye should
remember the things that ye have observed concerning this People & when
ye are of that age go to the land of Abitum unto a hill which shall be called
Shim & there have deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings con-
cerning this People & behold ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself & the
remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are & ye shall engrave upon
the Plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this People
& I Mormon being a descendant of Nephi & my Father's name was Mormon &
I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me & it came to pass

414 That being eleven years old was carried by my Father into the land southward
even to the land of Garamanta the whole face of the land having become covered
with buildings & the people were numerous almost as it were the sands of the
sea it came to pass that in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites
which consisted of the Zephites & the Jacobites & the Josephites & the Yoramites &
this war was between the Zephites & the Lamanites & the Ishmaelites
now the Lamanites & the Ishmaelites & the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites & the
two parties were Zephites & Lamanites it came to pass that the war began to
be among them in the borders of Garamanta by the waters of Sidon & it came
to pass that the Zephites had gathered together a great multitude of men
even to exceed the number of thirty thousand & it came to pass that they did
have in this same year a number of battles in the which the Zephites did
slay the Lamanites & did slay many of them it came to pass that the La-
manites withdrew their design & there was peace settled in the land & peace
did remain for the space of about four years that there was no blood shed but
with them did prevail upon the whole land inasmuch that the Lord did take
away his beloved children & the work of miracles & of healing did cease because of the
iniquity of the people & there were no gifts from the Lord & the Holy Ghost did not
come upon any because of their wickedness & unbelief & being fifteen years of
age & being somewhat of a sober mind therefore I was visited of the Lord & tasted
and knew of the goodness of Jesus & I did endeavor to preach unto the people but my
mouth was shut & I was forbidden that I should preach unto them for behold
they had rebelliously rebelled against their God & the beloved Disciples were taken
away out of the land because of their iniquity but I did remain among them but I was
forbidden ~~to~~ preach unto them because of the hardness of their hearts & because
of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake & there
came out of the land robbers which were among the Lamanites & did infect the land in-
asmuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the ear-
th & they became slippery because the Lord had cursed the land that they
could not hold them nor retain them again & it came to pass that there
were sorcerers & witchcraft & magics & the power of the evil one was wrought upon
all the ~~land~~ face of the land even unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abin-
adi & also Samuel the Lamanite it came to pass that in that same year there
began to be a war again between the Zephites & the Lamanites notwithstanding
I being young was large in stature therefore the People of Nephi appointed me that
I should be their leader or the leader of their armies therefore it came to pass that in
my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Zephites against
the Lamanites therefore three hundred & twenty two years had passed away & it
came to pass that in the three hundred & twenty seventh year the Lamanites

11/15 did come upon us with exceeding great power inasmuch that they did fight my
armies & because they would not fight they began to retreat towards the North country
& it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angolah & we did take possession of the city
& made preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites & it came to pass that
we did fortify the city with ~~our~~ our mights but notwithstanding all our fortifications the
Lamanites did come upon us & did drive us out of the city & they did also drive us forth
out of the land of David & we marched forth & came to the land of Goshon which was in
the borders west by the sea where it came to pass that we did gather in our People as
fast as it were possible that we might get them together in one body but behold the
land was filled with Robbers & with Lamanites & notwithstanding the great destruc-
tion which hung over my People they did not repent of their evil doings therefore
there was blood & war ^{and} spread throughout all the ^{land of the} land both on the part of the Nephites
and also on the part of the Lamanites & it was one complete revolution through-
out all the face of the land & now the Lamanites had a King & his name was Aaron
& he came against us with an army of forty thousand & behold I withstood him with
forty & two thousand & it came to pass that I beat him with my army that
he fled before me & behold all this was done & three hundred & thirty years had pass-
ed away & it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity & began to cry
even as had been prophesied by Samuel the Prophet for behold no man could die that
which was his own for the thieves & the Robbers & the murderers & the magic art &
the witchcraft which was in the land thus there began to be a mourning & a lamen-
tation in all the land because of these things & more especially among the
People of Nephi & it came to pass that when Mormon saw their lamentations & their
mourning & their sorrowing before the Lord my heart did begin to rejoice within me
knowing the merits & the long suffering of the Lord therefore supposing that he
would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous People
but behold this my joy was vain for their sorrowing was not unto repentance
because of the good will of God but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned
because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin & they did
not come unto Jesus with broken hearts & contrite spirits but they did curse God
& wish to die nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives &
it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again & I saw that the
day of grace was passed with them both temporally & spiritually for I saw
thousands of them hewn down because of their rebellion against their God & heaped
up as dung upon the face of the land & thus three hundred & forty & four years
had passed away & it came to pass that in the three hundred & forty & fifth year
the Nephites ^{begin} did flee before the Lamanites & they were pursued until they
came even to the land of Goshon before it was possible to stop them in their retreat
& now the city of Goshon was near the land where Mormon had deposited

41 the Records unto the Lord that they might not be destroyed. & behold
I had gone according to the word of the Lord & taken the plates & I did
make a record according to the words of the Lord upon the plates of
Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness & abominations
which were upon the plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wicked-
ness & abominations for behold a continual scene of wickedness & abomi-
nations had been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to
behold the ways of man & woe is me because of their wickedness for my re-
art has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness all my days
nevertheless I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day & it came to pass
that this year the People of Nephi again were hunted & driven & it came
to pass that we were driven forth until we had come Northward to the land
which was called Shem & it came to pass that we did fortify the City of Shem
& we did gather in our People as much as it were possible that perhaps we
might save them from destruction & it came to pass in the three hundred
& forty sixth year they began to come upon us again & it came to pass that
I did speak unto my People & did urge them with great energy that they we-
ld stand boldly before the Lamanites & fight for their wives & their child-
ren & their houses & their homes & my words did arouse them somewhat to
vigor in so much that they did not flee from before the Lamanites but did
and with boldness against them & it came to pass that we did contend with
an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand & it came to pass
that we did stand before them with our firmness that they did flee from before
us & it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies
and did meet them again & did beat them nevertheless the strength of the Lord was
not with us yea we were left to ourselves that the spirit of the Lord did not
abide in us therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren & my
heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my People because
of their wickedness & their abominations but behold we did go forth again
not the Lamanites & the Robbers of Gadianton until we had again
taken possession of the lands of our inheritance & the three hundred & forty seventh
year had passed away & in the three hundred & fiftyth year we made a tri-
-umphant victory with the Lamanites & the Robbers of Gadianton in the which we did get
the lands of our inheritance divided & the Lamanites did give unto us
the land Northward yea even to the narrow passage which lead into the
land Southward & we did give unto the Lamanites all the land Southward &
it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until
ten years more had passed away & behold I had employed my People
the Nephites in preparing their lands & their arms against the time

417 of battle & it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me by ^{his} voice that I should go forth & build up again my ^{temple} & ye shall be gathered & such say with that people but it was known
 as they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them & granted unto them a chance for repentance & behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord & it came to pass that after this
 tenth year had passed away making in the whole three hundred & sixty years from the coming
 of Christ & the King of the Jews the Lord did send an ^{angel} to me which gave unto me to know
 that they were preparing to come again to battle against us & it came to pass that I did cause
 People that they should gather themselves together at the land desolation to a city which was in the borders
 by the narrow pass which lead into the land southward & there we did place our armies that we might
 stop the armies of the Lamanites that they might not get possession of any of our lands therefore we
 did fight against them with all our force & it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty
 & first year the Lamanites did come down into the City of Desolation to battle against us & it came
 to pass that in that year we did beat them inasmuch that they did not turn to their own lands
 again & in the three hundred & sixty & second year they did come down again to battle
 & we did beat them again & did slay a great number of them & their dead was cast into
 the sea & now because of this great thing which we had done the Lamanites began
 to boast in their strength & began to say before the Heavens that they would avenge themselves of the
 blood of their brethren which had been slain by their enemies & they did swear by the Names & al-
 so by the throne of God that they would go up to battle against their enemies & would cut them
 off from the face of the land & it came to pass that I did command them utterly by Refuse from this time
 forth to be a commander & a leader of this people because of their wickedness & abomination
 behold I had lead them not with standing their wickedness I had lead them many times to
 battle & I had loved them according to the Love of God which was in me with all my heart
 & my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them nevertheless
 it was without faith because of the hardness of their hearts & their hearts I delivered them
 out of the hands of their enemies & they repented not of their sins & when they had sworn by
 all that had been forbidden them by our Lord & savior Jesus Christ that they would go up
 unto their enemies to battle & avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren behold the voice
 of the Lord came unto me saying in my ears & will repay & because this people repented
 not after that I had delivered them behold they shall be cut off from the face of the earth
 & it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies & I did stand as an
 even as the Lord had commanded me & I said I stand as an idle witness to manifest unto
 the world the things which I saw & heard according to the manifestations of the spirit which
 had testified of things to come therefore I write unto you Gentiles & also unto you House of Israel
 when the works shall commence that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land
 of your inheritance yea behold I write unto all the ends of the earth & ye unto you twelve
 of Israel which shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom
 Jesus chose to be his Disciples in the land of Jerusalem & I write also unto the remnant of this
 People which shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land & they
 shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem

418 & these things do the spirit manifest unto me therefore I write unto you all & for the
cause I write unto you that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgement seat
of Christ ye every soul which belong to the whole human family of Adam ye must
stand to be judged of your works whether they be good or evil & also that ye may be
alive the Gospel of Jesus Christ which ye shall have among you & also that the Jews the
Covenant People of the Lord shall have other witnesses besides ~~that which~~ ^{those which} they saw & heard
that Jesus whom they slew was the very Christ & the very God & I would that I could
persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent & prepare to stand before the judgement seat of
Christ — Chapter 11 And now it came to pass that in the three hundred &
sixty & third year the Nephites did go up with their armies ~~to battle~~ ^{to fight} against the Lamanites
out of the land of desolation & it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back
again to the land of desolation & while they were yet many a fresh Army of the Lamanites
did come upon them & they had a sore battle in somuch that the Lamanites did take
possession of the City Desolation & did slay many of the Nephites & did take many pri-
soners & the remainder did flee again the inhabitants of the City Teancum now the City
Teancum lay on the borders by the sea shore & it was also near the City Desolation &
it was because ~~that~~ the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they be-
gan to be smitten for were it not for that the Lamanites could have had no power
over them but he hold the judgements of God will overthrow the wicked & it is by the
wicked that the wicked are punished for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the
Children of men unto bloodshed & it came to pass that the Lamanites did make prepa-
ration to come against the City Teancum & it came to pass in the three hundred & sixty & fourth
year the Lamanites did come against the City Teancum that they might take possession
of the City Teancum also & it came to pass that they were repulsed & driven back by the Neph-
ites & when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites thence did again boast of
their own strength & then went on in their own might & took possession again of the City desolat-
ion & now all these things had been done & there had been thousands slain on both si-
des both the Nephites & the Lamanites & it came to pass that ^{the} three hundred & sixty & sixth
year had passed away & the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle & yet
the Nephites repented not of the evil ~~which~~ ^{which} they had done but persisted in their vi-
ciousness continually & it is impossible for the tongue to ~~describe~~ ^{describe} or for man to ar-
rite a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood & carnage which was
among the People both of the Nephites & of the Lamanites & every heart was hard-
ened so that they delighted in the slaying of Blood continually & there never
had been so great wickedness among all the Children of Adam nor even among all
the House of Israel according to the words of the Lord as were among this People & it came
to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the City Desolation & this because their
numbers did exceed the numbers of the Nephites & they did also march forward against
the City Teancum & did drive the inhabitants forth out of the same & did take many
prisoners of women & of children & did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idols & gods

419 and it came to pass that in the three hundred & sixty & seventh year the
-phites being angry because the Lamanites had ~~over~~ ^{despoiled} their women & their ch-
-ildren that they did go against the Lamanites with exceeding great anger in so
much that they did bat again the Lamanites & drive them out of their lands &
the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hun-
-dred & seventy & fifth year & in this year they did come down against the Neph-
-ites with all their powers & they were not numbered because of the greatness of their
numbers & from this time forth did the Nephites ^{gain} no power over the Lamanites but began
to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun & it came to pass that the Lamanites
did come down ~~against~~ ^{into} the land desolation & there was an exceedingly sore battle foun-
-d in the land desolation in the which they did beat the Nephites & they fled again
from before them & they came to the city Bery & there they did stand against the Lam-
-anites with exceeding boldness in some wise that the Lamanites did not beat them until
they had come again the second time & when they had come the second time the Nephites were
driven & returned unto an exceedingly great ~~land~~ ^{city} after their women & their children
were again ~~driven~~ ^{driven} into the state & it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from
before them to being all the inhabitants with them both in towns & villages & most mor-
-mon seeing that the Lamanites were about to over throw the land therefore I did go to the hill
shim & I did take up all the records which I or my son had hid up unto the Lord & it
came to pass that I did go forth among the People of Nephi & said in front of the cate
which I had made that I would no more assist ^{them} & they gave me command again
of their armies for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their
afflictions but behold I was without hope for I knew the judgments of the Lord
which should come upon them for they repented not of their iniquities but did
struggle for their lives without calling upon that being who had created them
& it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the City of
Jordan but behold they were driven back that they did not take the City at that time
& it came to pass that they came against us again & we did maintain the City & there were
also other Cities which were maintained by the Nephites which strong holds did cut them
off that they could not get into the Country which lay before us to destroy the inhab-
-itants of our land until it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by the inh-
-abitants there were not gathered in were destroyed by the Lamanites & their tow-
-ns & villages & Cities were burned with fire & thus the three hundred & seventy &
nine years passed away & it came to pass that in the three ^{hundred} & eightieth year the
Lamanites did come again against us to battle & we did stand against them boldly
but it was all in vain for so great were their numbers that they did beat the People
~~of the Nephites~~ ^{of the Nephites} under their feet & it came to pass that we did again take
to flight & ^{the} ~~the~~ ^{those} light were swifter than the Lamanites did escape & they who
-de flight did not exceed the Lamanites were swept down & destroyed & now behold I
Mormon do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them an
awful scene of blood & carnage as was laid before mine eyes but I knowing that
these things must ^{surely} be made known & that all things which are hid must be

420 revealed upon the house top & also that a knowledge of these things must come
into the remnant of these People & also unto the Gentiles which the Lord hath said
should scatter this People & this People should be counted as sought among
them therefore I write a small abridgement desiring not to give a full account
of the things which I have seen because of the commandment which I have re-
ceived & also that ye might not have to great sorrow because of the wickedness of this
People & now behold this I speak unto their seed & also to the Gentiles ^{which} ~~which~~ hath care
for the House of Israel that realize & know from whence their blessings come
for I know that such will sorrow for the ^{Calamity of the} house of Israel yea they will sorrow
for the destruction of this People they will sorrow that this ^{had not} ~~had not~~ ^{repent} ~~repent~~
that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus now these things
are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob & they are written of
in this manner because it is known of God that wickedness will not
bring them forth unto them & they are to be hid up unto the Lord that
they may come forth in his own due time & this is the commandment
which I have received & behold they shall come forth according to the co-
-mandment of the Lord when he shall see fit in his wisdom & behold they shall go unto
the unbelieving of the Jews & for this intent shall they go that they may be persuaded
that Jesus is the Christ the Son of the living God that the Father may bring about throa-
-gh his most beloved his great and eternal purpose in the restoring the Jews or all
the house of Israel to the land of their inheritance which the Lord their God hath
given them unto the fulfilling of his Covenant & also that the seed of this People may
more fully believe his Gospel which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles for this
People shall be scattered & shall become a dark filthy & a loathsome People beyond
the description of that which ever hath been amongst us yea even that which hath
been among the Lamanites & this because of their unbelief & finally for behold
the spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers & they
are without Christ & God in the world & they are driven about as chaff
before the wind they were once a delightful some People & they had Christ for
their shepherd yea they were lead even by God the Father but now behold
they are lead about by Satan even as chaff is driven before the wind or as a
vessel is tossed about upon the waves without sail or anchor or without any
thing where with to steer her & even as she is so cast they & behold the Lord hath
removed their blessing which they might have received in the land for the Gentiles who
shall possess the land but behold it shall come to pass that they shall be driven &
scattered by the Gentiles & after that they have been driven & scattered by the Gentiles
behold then will the Lord remember the Covenant which he made unto Abraham
& unto all the house of Israel & ^{the} ~~the~~ Lord will remember the prayers of the right-
-eous which ^{have} ~~have~~ been put up unto him for them & then O ye Gentiles how can ye stand
before the power of God except ye shall repent & turn from your evil ways know ye

421 not that ye are in the hands of God know ye not ^{that} he hath all power & at his
great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll therefore repent ye &
humble yourselves before him lest he shall come out in justice against you & at
a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion & tear you in
pieces & there is none to deliver ~~Chapter III~~ & thus now I finish my record
concerning the destruction of my People the Nephites & it came to pass that we
did march forth before the Lamanites & I Mormon wrote an Epistle unto the
King of the Lamanites & desired of him that he would grant unto us that we
might gather ^{together} our People unto the land of ~~Cumorah~~ ^{Cumorah} by a hill which was call-
ed Cumorah & there we would give them battle & it came to pass that the
King ~~of~~ of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired &
it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah & we did
pitch our tents round about the hill Cumorah & it was in a land of many
waters rivers & fountains & here we did hope to gain advantage over the Laman-
ites & when three hundred & eighty & four years had passed away we had
gathered in all the remainder of our People unto the land Cumorah &
it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our People in one to the lan-
d of Cumorah behold I Mormon began to be old & knowing it to be the last str-
uggle of my People & having been commanded of the Lord that I should not
suffer that the records which had been handed down by our Fathers which were
sacred to fall into the hands of the Lamanites for the Lamanites would destroy
them therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi & hid upon the hill
Cumorah all the Records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the
Lord save it were those few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni & it cam-
e to pass that my People with their wives & their Children did now behold in
armies of the Lamanites marching towards them & with that awful fear of
death which fills the breasts of all the wicked did they await to receive them
& it came to pass that they came to battle against us & every soul was filled
with terror because of the greatness of their numbers & it came to pass that they did fall
upon my People with the sword & with the bow & with the arrow & with the axe &
with all manner of weapons of war & it came to pass that my men were hewn down
yea or even my ten thousand which were with me & I fell wounded in the midst &
they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life & when they had gone through
& hewn down all my People save it twenty & four of us among whom was my son
Moroni & we having survived the death of our People did behold on the morning
when the Lamanites had returned unto their Camps from the top of the hill
Cumorah the ten thousand of my People which were hewn down being laid in
the front by me was also beheld the ten thousand of my People which were hewn
down by my son Moroni & behold the ten thousand of ~~the Lamanites~~ ^{the Lamanites} had fallen & he also
did fall down

422 in the midst & Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand & Gilgal had
fallen with his ten thousand & Limhak had fallen with his ten thousand
& Gensum had fallen with his ten thousand & Eumenibrah & moronihah
& Antionum & Shilohom & Shom & Josh had fallen with their ten thousand
each & it came to pass that there were ten more which did fall by the sword
with their ten thousand each yea even all my people save it were those
twenty & four ^{which} were with me & also a few which had escaped into
the south countries & a few which had deserted over into the Lamanites
I had fallen & their flesh & bones & blood lay upon the land & the living is it by the hand
of them who slew them & moulder upon the land & I remember the relations they mother
earth my soul was sore with anguish because of the slain of my people & ^{that} ye
men how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord & ye fair ones how could
ye have spoken that Jesus was slain with a few arms to cause you to hold if
ye had not done this ye would not have fallen but behold ye are fallen & I mourn
on your loss & ye fair ones & daughters ye fathers & mothers ye husbands & wives
ye daughters how is it that ye could have fallen but behold ye are gone & my sorrows
cannot bring you return & the day cometh that your mortal must put on immor-
tality & these bodies which are now moulder in corruption must soon become
incorruptible bodies & then ye must stand before the judgment seat of Christ to be judged
according to your works & it is sad that ye are righteous then are ye blessed with your fathers
which have gone before ye & that ye had repented before that this great destruction had come
& when ye that behold ye are gone & the Father ye the eternal Father of Heaven knoweth
that he will do with you according to his justice & mercy. And now I would speak some
what unto the remnant of this people which are spared if it so be that God may give unto
them my words that they may know of the things of their fathers yea I speak unto you
ye remnant of the house of Israel & think the words which I speak know ye that ye are of
the house of Israel know ye that ye must come unto repentance or ye cannot be saved
know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war & delight no more in the shedding
of blood & take them not again & it is that God shall command you know ye that ye
must come to the knowledge of your fathers & repent of all your sins & iniquities & believe in
Jesus Christ that he is the son of God & that he was slain by the Jews & by the power of the
Father he hath risen again whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave also
in him is the sting of death swallowed up & he bringeth to pass the resurrection of
the dead whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment seat & he
hath brought to pass the redemption of the world whereby he hath opened the gates
before him at the judgment day that it given unto them to dwell in the presence of God
in his Kingdom to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above unto the Father & unto
the Son & unto the Holy Ghost which ^{are} God in a unity of happiness which hath
no end therefore repent & be baptized in the name of Jesus & lay hold upon the

4th Gospel of Christ which shall be set before you not only in this record but also in the
second which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews which record shall come from the
Gentiles unto you, behold this is written for the intent that ye may believe, that if ye believe
that ye will believe this also, if ye believe this ye will know concerning your Father & also the
marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them & ye will also
know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob therefore ye are numbered among the
People of the first covenant & if it so be that ye believe in Christ & are baptised first with
water then with fire & with the Holy Spirit following the example of our Saviour
according to that which is in the commandment it shall be well with you in the
day of Judgment & men — Chapter IV — Behold I, Mormon do finish the
Record of my Father Mormon & behold I have but few things to write which things I have been com-
manded & my Father & now it came to pass that after the great & tremendous battle at Cumorah
behold the Nephites which had escaped into the Country southward were hunted by
the Lamanites until they were all destroyed & my Father also was killed by them & even
I remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my People but behold they are
gone & I fulfill the commandment of my Father & whether they will slay me I know not
therefore I will write & hide up the records in the earth & whether I go it matters not
not behold my Father hath made this record & he hath written the intent thereof & behold
I would write it also if I had room upon the plates but I have not I have none
for I am alone my Father hath been slain in battle & all my kindreds & I have no
friends nor whither to go & how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know
not but I feel four hundred years have passed since the coming of our Lord & Saviour &
behold the Lamanites have hunted my People the Nephites down from City to City &
from place to place even until they are no more & great has been their fall yeagor
& marvellous is the destruction of my People the Nephites & behold it is the hand of
the Lord which hath done it & behold also the Lamanites are at war one with another & the
whole face of this land is one continual round of murder & blood shed & no one knoweth
the end of the war & now behold I say no more concerning them for there are none
save it be Lamanites & robbers that do exist upon the face of the land & there are none
that I do know the true God save it be the Disciples of Jesus which did tarry in the
land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer
them to remain with the People & whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth
withhold I behold my Father & I have seen them & they have ministered unto us & those
receive with this record & shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are
in it the same shall know of greater things than these behold I am Mormon and
were it possible, I would make all things known unto you behold I make an end of
speaking concerning this People. I am the son of Mormon & my Father was a descen-
dant of Lehi & I am the same who hid up this Record unto the Lord the plates
thereof are of no worth because of the Commandment of the Lord for he truly saith that

424^{no} none shall have them to get gain but the reward thereof is of great worth & whose shall bring it to light him will the Lord bless for no one can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God for God will that it shall be done with an eye singled to his glory or the welfare of the ancient & long dispersed covenant People & the Lord & blessed be him that shall bring this thing to light for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light according to the word of God yea it shall be brought out of the earth & it shall shine forth out of darkness & come unto the knowledge of the People & it shall be done by the power of God & if there be fault to thy be faults of a man but behold I know no fault nor blindness God knoweth all things therefore he that condemneth let him beware least he shall be in danger of hell fire & he that sayeth a new unto me only shall be smitten let him beware least he commandeth the which is forbidden of the Lord for behold the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again for according to his works shall his wages be therefore he that smiteth shall be smitten again of the Lord behold what the scripture saith if man shall not smite nathless shall be judge for judgement is mine saith the Lord & vengeance is mine also & will I repay & he that shall smite out wrath & stripes against the work of the Lord & against the covenant People of the Lord which is the house of Israel & shall say we will destroy the work of the Lord & the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel the same is in danger to be hewn down & cast in to the fire for the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on until all his promises shall be fulfilled search the scriptures Prophecies of Isaiah behold I cannot write them yea behold I say unto you that those saints which have come before me which have possessed this land shall cry yea even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord that the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them & he knoweth their prayers that they were in behalf of their Brethren & he knoweth their faith for in his name could they remove mountains in his name could they cause the earth to shake by the power of his word & they cause Prisons to tumble to the earth yea even the fiery furnace could not harm them neither wild beasts nor poison serpents because of the power of his word & he told their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth & no one need say they shall not come for they surely shall for the Lord hath spoken it for out of the earth shall they come by the hand of the Lord & none can slay it & it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away & it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead & it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord because of unjust combinations & the works of darkness & it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied & churches become evil & shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts yea even in a day when leaders of Churches & teachers in the pride of their hearts even to the smiting of them who belong to their Church yea it shall come in a day when there shall be inward of fires & tempests & vapours of smoke in foreign lands & there shall also be heard of

115 1000 & numbers of wars & a. & q. a. in diverse places yea it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth, there shall be murders & robings & lying & the sinning & the horridness & all manner of abominations when there shall come any who will say do this or do that it mattereth not for the Lord will uphold such at the last day but woe unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness & in the bonds of iniquity yea it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall ^{say} ~~not~~ ^{say} unto me & to you & money you shall be forgiven of yourselves. O ye wicked & perverse ~~Generations~~ & stiff-necked People why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain & have ye transgressed the Holy word of God that ye might bring damnation upon your souls behold look ye unto the revelations of God for behold the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled behold the Lord hath shown unto me great & marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come at that day when these things shall come forth among you behold I speak unto you as if ye were present & yet ye are not but behold Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me & I know you doing & I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts & there are none save a few only which do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts unto the wearing of very fine apparel unto evening & to night & making of suppers & all manner of iniquity & your churches ye even everyone have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts for behold ye do love money & your substance & your fine apparel & the adorning of your churches more than we love the poor & the needy the sick & the afflicted O ye pollutions ye hypocrites ye traitors which sell yourselves for that which will canker why have ye polluted the church of God why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies because of the promise of the world why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life yet suffer the hungry & the naked & the sick & the afflicted to pass by you & notice them not ye why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain & cause that widows should mourn before the Lord & also orphans to mourn before the Lord & the blood of their fathers & their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground for vengeance upon your heads behold the word of the Lord cometh hither over you & the time soon cometh that it shall be the hour of the saints when you for he will not suffer their cries any longer & now I speak unto concerning those who do not believe in Christ behold will ye believe in the day of your visitation behold when the Lord shall come yea even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll & the elements shall melt with fervent heat ye in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God then will ye say ^{that} there is no God then will ye longer deny the Christ or can ye hold the Lamb of God & ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy being when your souls are marked with a consciousness of your guilt that ye have ever abused the Holy Law behold I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a Holy

426 & a just God under a consciousness of your filthiness before him than ye would
to dwell with the damned souls in hell for behold when ye shall be brought
to see your nakedness before God & also the glory of God & the holiness of Jesus
Christ it will kindle a flame of anguishable fire upon you & then ye are
issuing turn ye unto the Lord cry mightily unto the Father in the name of
the Jesus that perhaps ye may be found spotless fair & white having been
cleansed by the blood of the Lamb at that great & last day. And again I speak
unto you who deny the revelations of God & say that they are done away that
there ^{are} no revelations nor prophecies nor gifts nor healing nor speaking with ton-
gues & the interpretation of tongues behold I say unto you he that denyeth
these things knoweth not the Gospel of Christ ye ^{for} have not read the scrip-
tures if so ^{they} do not understand them for do not read that God is the same
yesterday today & forever in him there is ~~nothing~~ no variableness neither shadow of changing
& now if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a God which doth vary & in him there is a
-ow of changing then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a God which is not a God of mira-
cles but behold I will ^{show} you a God of miracles even the God of Abraham & the God
of Isaac & the God of Jacob it is that same God which created the heavens & the earth & all
things that in them ^{behold} he created Adam & by Adam came the fall of man & be-
-se of the fall of man came Jesus Christ even the Father & the Son & because of Jesus Christ
came the redemption of man & because of the redemption of man which came by Jesus
Christ they are brought back into the presence of the Lord & ye this is wherein all men
are redeemed because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection which bring-
-eth to pass a redemption from an ^{which death} ~~eternal~~ sleep from which sleep all men shall
be awake by the power of God when the trumpet shall sound & they shall come forth
both small & great & all shall stand before his bar being redeemed & loosed
from this eternal bond of death & then cometh the judg-
-ment of the Holy one upon them & then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall
be filthy still & he that is righteous shall be righteous ^{still} & he that is happy shall
be happy still & he that is unhappy shall be unhappy ~~still~~ ^{still} & he that is happy shall
~~be happy still~~ & he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still and now all ye that have imagined up unto
-rveselves a God which can do no miracles I would ask of you have all these things
past of which I have spoken in the end come yet behold I say unto you nay & God has
not ceased to be God of miracles behold are not the things that God hath wrought
marvellous in our eyes ye & who can comprehend the marvellous works of God who
shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heavens & the earth should be
by the power of his word man was created & the dust of the earth & by the power of his word
both miracles been wrought & who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles
& there ^{well} many mighty miracles wrought by the ^{hands of the} apostles & if there ^{well} miracles wrought then
why has God ceased to be a God of miracles & yet be an unchangeable being & behold I say

427 unto you he changeth not if so he would cease to be God & he warran't not to be God
and is a God of miracles & the reason why he causeth to do miracles among the children of men
is because that they disbelieve in him & are far from the right way & know not the God in
whom they should trust behold I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ doubting
nothing whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him
& this promise is made all even unto the ends of the earth for behold thus saith Jesus
Christ the Son of God unto his Disciples who he should carry you & also to all his
Disciples in the hearing of the multitude go ye into all the ~~earth~~ world & preach
this Gospel to every creature & he that believeth & is Baptised shall be saved but
he that believeth not shall be damned & these signs shall follow them that believe
in my name shall they cast out devils they shall speak with new tongues they shall
take up serpents & if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them they shall lay
hands on the sick & they shall recover & whosoever shall believe in my name doubt-
ing nothing unto him will I confirm all my words even unto the ends of the earth &
now behold who can stand ~~and~~ against the works of the Lord who can deny his sayings
who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord who will despise the works of the
Lord who will despise the children of Christ behold all ye ^{that are} despising the works of the Lord
for ye shall wonder & marvel & ^{that ye} shall not wonder not but hearken unto the
word of the Lord & ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye
shall stand in need doubt not but be believing & begin as in times of old & come
unto the Lord with all your heart & work out your own salvation with fear &
trembling before him likewise in the days of your probation strip yourselves
of all unclean ness ask not that ye may consume it on your lusts but ask ~~with~~
with a firmness unshaken that ye will yield to no temptation but that ye
will serve the true and living God all that ye are not baptised unworthily
that ye partake ^{not} of the sacrament unworthily but so that ye do all things in worthi-
ness & do it in the name of Jesus Christ the Son of the living God & if ye do this and
endure to the end ye will in no wise be cast out behold I speak ^{unto you} as though I speak
from the dead for I know that ye shall have my words confirmed in ~~truth~~ ^{because}
because of mine imperfection neither my Father because of his imperfection neither
them ~~which~~ have written before him but rather give thanks ~~to~~ to God that he hath
made manifest unto you our imperfections that ye may learn to be more wise
than ~~that which~~ we have been & now behold we have written this record ~~and~~
^{according} to our knowledge in the characters which are called among us the reform-
ed Egyptian being handed down & altered by us according to our manner of
speech & if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in the
Hebrew but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also & if we could have written
in the Hebrew behold ye would have had none imperfection in our record

428
But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written & also that none
other People knoweth our language & because that none other People knoweth
our language therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation
thereof and these things are written that we may rid our garments of the
blood of our brethren which have drimelled in unbelief & to hold these things
which we have desired concerning our Brethren yea even their restoration to the
knowledge of Christ according to the prayers of all the saints which have
dwelt in the land & may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers
may be answered according to their faith & may God the Father remember
the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel & may he bless them
forever through faith on the name of Jesus Christ Amen —

[illegible]

They were not confounded, & it came to pass that David spake again unto
his brother saying he inquired of the Lord whether he would drive him out of the land
or if he would drive him out of the land by unto him whether shall we go & who knoweth
but the Lord will carry us into a land which is choice above all the earth, if
it so be that we be faithful unto the Lord that we may inherit for ever in his land.
And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which
had been spoken by the mouth of the Lord and it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother
of Jared & had compassion upon him & said unto him Go to & gather together thy flocks
both male & female & every kind of the seed of the cattle of every kind & the fowls
& also prepare thy families to thy family & thy friends & thy families in the friends of Jared &
thy families & when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down
into the valley which is northward & there will I meet thee & I will go before thee
into a land which is choice above all the land of the earth & there will I bless
thee & thy seed & raise up unto me of thy seed & the seed of thy brethren & they
which shall go with thee a great nation there shall be none greater than the
nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed upon all the face of the earth
& thus I will do unto thee because of the long time which ye have cried unto me. And
it came to pass that Jared & his brother & their families & also the friends of Jared & his brother
& their families went down into the valley which was northward in the name of the valley
was shinnah being called after the mighty hunting with their flocks which they
had gathered together male & female of every kind & they did also lay snares & catch
fowls of the air & they did also prepare a vessel in the which they did carry with them
the fish of the waters for they did also carry with them the secret which by interpret-
ation is a honey bee & thus they did carry with them swarms of bees & all man-
ner of that which was upon the face of the land seeds of every kind. And it came
to pass that when they had come down into the valley of shinnah the Lord came down
& talked with the brother of Jared & he was in a cloud & the brother of Jared saw
him not. And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should
go forth into the wilderness & go into that quarter where their vision had been seen &
it came to pass that the Lord did go before them & did talk with them as he stood in a cloud
& gave directions whither they should go. And it came to pass that they did travel in the
wilderness & did build hangings in the which they did cross many waters being directed
continually by the hand of the Lord & the Lord would not suffer that they should stay
beyond the ^{by} the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even
unto the land of promise which was choice above all other lands which the Lord God has
preserved for a righteous people & he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of
Jared that whose should possess this land of promise from that time hence forth
for ever should serve him the trial is only if they should be swift of foot when
the fulness of his wrath should come upon them. And now we can behold the

431
 distress of land concerning this land, that it is a land of promise, & what nation shall possess it, shall receive it. For when the Lord shall visit his people, shall come upon them, & the fulness of his wrath come upon them when they are ripe in iniquity, for behold, this is a land, which is better above all other lands, which are at death possessed, shall receive it, or shall be swept off, for in the last day the Lord will visit it, not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off. And this word the Lord said, for he said that ye may know the decrees of God, that ye may repent, & not continue in your iniquities until the fulness be come, that ye may ^{not bring} down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you or the inhabitants of the land, which he has done. Behold, this is a choice land, & what nation shall possess it, shall be full from bondage, & from captivity, & from all other nations under Heaven, if they will but serve the Lord. The land which is Jesus Christ, which has been manifested by the things which we have written. And now I speak with my records, for behold it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared & his brethren forth even to that great sea, which divideth the lands, & as they came to the sea, they beheld them, & they called the name of the place, Helian, because they dwelt in tents, & dwell in tents upon the sea shore, for the space of four years. And it came to pass at the end of the four years, that the Lord came again unto the brethren of Jared & stood in a land & talked with him, & for the space of three hours, did the Lord talk with the brethren, & he had heard him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord, & the brethren of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, & did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren, which were with him. The Lord said unto him, I will forgive thee & thy brethren of thine sins, but thou shalt not in any more, & ye shall remember, that my spirit will not always dwell with man, wherefore if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe, ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord, & they ^{are} thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance, for it shall be a land, & a choice above all other lands, & the Lord said, He to work & build after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built, & it came to pass that the brethren of Jared did go to work, & also his brethren, & built barges after the manner which they had built according to the instructions of the Lord, & they were small, & they were light upon the water, & were like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water, & they were built upon a manner that they were so exceeding tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish, & the hollow thereof was tight like unto a dish, & the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish, & the ends thereof were peaked, & the top thereof was tight like unto a dish, & the length thereof was six fathoms, & the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a door, & the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a door. And it came to pass that the brethren of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying, O Lord, we have done the work which thou hast commanded me, & I have made them, & behold, O Lord, in them there is no light, whether shall we steer, & also we shall perish, for in them we cannot

the Lord stretched forth his hand & touched the stones one by one, with his
 finger & the nail was taken from off the eyes of the brethren, & he
 saw the finger of the Lord, & it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh &
 blood, & the brethren of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was clothed with fear,
 & the Lord saw that the brethren of Jared had fallen to the earth, & the Lord said unto
 him, ^{why} arise, ~~and~~ hast thou felt this? he saith unto the Lord, I saw the finger of the Lord
 & I feared lest he should smite me, for I knew not that the Lord had flesh &
 blood, & the Lord said unto him, because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall
 take upon me flesh & blood, & no man has man come before me with such exceeding
 faith as thou hast, for neither I nor any could not have seen my finger, save it was
 more than this, & he answered, say, Lord, shew thyself unto me, & the Lord said unto ^{him}
 Believest thou the words which I shall speak? he answered, yea, Lord, I know
 that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, & canst not lie, & when
 he had said these words, he held the Lord & named himself unto him & said,
 because thou knowest these things, ye are redeemed from the fall, & thou art
 brought back into my presence, then Lord, shew myself unto you, he held
 him, who was prepared from the foundation of the world, to redeem my people,
 he held I am Jesus Christ, I am the Father & the Son, in me shall all mankind
 end have life, & that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name, & they
 shall become my sons, my daughters, & mine brethren, & none shall be able to
 withstand me, & none shall be able to overcome me, as thou hast seen, & thou
 knowest that ye are created after mine own image, yea, even all men were cre-
 ated in the beginning after mine own image, behold, this body which ye now
 behold is the body of my Son, & man, & he was created after the body of my life
 & even as I appeared unto thee to lie in the spirit, with a spirit unto my people
 in the flesh, & now, as thou hast said, I could not make a full account of these things
 which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say, that Jesus should himself come
 the man in the spirit, even after the manner, & in the likeness of the same body, even as
 he should himself come to the high priests, he ministered unto him, even as he ministered
 unto the Nephites, & all this, that that man knew that he was God, because of the many
 great works which the Lord had showed unto him, & because of the knowledge of the
 man, he could not be kept from holding within the veil, & he saw the finger of the Lord
 which, when he saw, he fell with fear, for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord,
 & he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting, not before, having this per-
 fect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from holding within the veil, & he
 saw, for he did minister unto him, and it came to pass that the Lord said unto
 him, Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen &
 heard, & I shall send me unto the world until the time cometh that I shall glorify
 my name in the flesh, wherefore ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen &
 heard.

434
 I shew it to no man & he be let when ye shall come unto me ye shall write them
 shall seal them up that no man can interpret them for ye shall write them in lan-
 guage that they cannot be read & behold these two stones will give unto thee
 ye shall seal them up with the things which ye shall write for behold the lan-
 guage which ye shall write I have commanded wherefore I will cause in mine own due
 time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write
 & when the Lord had said these words he said & he said unto the brother of Jared all
 the inhabitants of the earth which had been & also all that would be to the Lord with-
 held them not from his sight even unto the end of the earth for the Lord had said
 unto him in times before that if he would believe in him that he could shew unto
 him all things it should be shewn unto him therefore the Lord could not withhold any
 thing from him for he knew that the Lord could shew him all things & the Lord said
 unto him ^{write} these things & seal them up & I will shew them in mine own due time
 unto the children of men and it came to pass that the Lord commanded him ^{that} he should
 seal up the two stones which he had received & shew them not until the Lord should
 shew them unto the children of men & the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to
 go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord & write the things which he
 had seen & they were for hidden to come unto the children of men until after that he
 should be lifted up upon the cross & for this cause did King Benjamin keep them that
 they should not come unto the world until after Christ should shew himself unto his
 people & after that Christ himself had shewed himself unto his people he com-
 manded that they should be made manifest & now after that they have all dwindled
 in unbelief & there ^{where} some say it be the Lamanites & they have rejected the Gospel of
 Christ therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth & I
 should have written upon these & later the very things which the brother of Jared saw
 & these were the greater things made manifest than that which was made manifest
 unto the brother of Jared & these are the things which the Lord hath commanded me to write them & I have
^{written} written them & he commanded me that I should seal them up & he also hath com-
 manded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof in mine own hand & I have sealed up the
 interpretation according to the commandment of the Lord for the Lord said unto me they
 shall not go forth into the world until the day that they shall repent of their iniquities &
 become clean before the Lord & in that day that they shall exercise faith in me say
 the Lord even as the brother of Jared did that they may become sanctified in me then
 will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw & shew unto them
 folding unto them all my revelations saith Jesus Christ the Son of God the Father of
 the Heavens & of the Earth & all things that in them ~~stand~~ be that will contend ag-
 ainst the word of the Lord let him be cursed & he that shall deny the things
 let him be accursed for unto them will I shew no greater things & Jesus Ch-
 rist for I am he which speaketh & at my command the Heavens are opened &

that, & at my word the earth shall shake at my command & the inhabitants
thereof shall pass away even so as by fire & he that believeth not my words believ-
eth not my disciples & if it is he that I do not speak judge ye for ye shall know that
it is I that speaketh at the last day but he that believeth these things which I have
spoken him will I visit with the manifestations of my spirit & he shall know & be re-
solved for because & my spirit he shall know that these things are true for I have
men to do good & whatsoever thing I have said men to do good & of me for good cometh
of none save it be of me & I am the same that leadeth men to all good he that will not
believe my words will not believe me that I am & he that will not believe me will
not believe the Father which sent me for he hold I am the Father & I am the light & the life
& the truth of the world come unto me O ye Gentiles & I will shew unto you the greater
things the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief come unto me O ye house of
Israel & it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid
up for you from the foundation of the world & it hath not come unto you because of
unbelief Behold when ye shall repent that evil of unbelief which doth cause you to re-
main in your awful state of wickedness & hardness of heart & blindness of mind
then shall the great & marvellous things which have been hid up from the foundation
of the world from you ye shall call upon the Father in my name with a
broken heart & a contrite spirit then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered
the covenant which he made unto your fathers O house of Israel & then shall my re-
velations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be added in the
eyes of all the people Remember when ye see these things ye shall know that the time is at
hand that they shall be made manifest in my deed & for whomever shall receive this
word ye may know that the Father has commenced upon all the ^{land} ~~part of the~~ ^{land}
earth & upon all ye under the earth & come unto me & believe in my Gospel & be baptized in
my name for he that believeth & is baptized shall be saved but he that believeth not
shall be damned & righteousness shall follow them that believe in my name & blessed is he
that is found faithful unto my name at the last day for they shall be lifted up to dwell
in the Kingdom prepared for them from the foundation of the world & behold it is
I that have spoken these things Chapter 10 And now I, Moroni have written
the words which were commanded me according to my memory & I have told
you the things which I have sealed up therefore touch them not in order that ye may
translate for that thing is for hiding you from the eyes of the world & it shall be wisdom in
God & behold ye may be permitted that ye may show the plates unto those who
shall assist to bring forth this work & unto those shall they be shown by the power
of God wherefore they shall know a surety that these things are true & in the ^{mouth} ~~name~~
of three witnesses shall these things be established with the testimony of three & this seal
in which shall be shown forth the power of God & also his mind of which the Fa-
ther & the Son & the Holy Ghost bear the record & all this shall stand as a testimony

436
 against the world at the last day & it is so, he that they repent & come unto the Father in the name of Jesus that shall be received into the Kingdom of God & now if I have no authority for these things unless ye know that I have authority when ye shall see me & we shall stand before God at the last day Amen. Chapter III
 And now as Joseph passed to give the second of parcels to his brother Joseph came to him with a letter which the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Joseph had carried up into the mount the brother of Joseph came down out of the mount & he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared and in as he and Joseph beheld they did give light unto the vessels they saw that the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness to give light unto men morning or children that they might not err the great multitude in darkness and it came to pass that when they had finished all manner of parcels that they might submit upon the water & also had for their backs & heads & whatsoever they had in animal or fowl that they should carry with them And it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got a board of their vessels on board & set forth into the sea commanding themselves unto the Lord their God & it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should a fair wind blow upon the face of the water towards the promised land & that they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind and it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea because of the mountain waves which broke upon them & were the great terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind & it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could bear them this vessel being tight like unto a ark & Joseph & his brethren when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord & he did bring them forth again upon the face of the water & it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land & that they were driven forth before the wind & they did sing praises unto the Lord upon the breaking of the sea & did sing praises unto the Lord & he did thank & praise the Lord all the day long & when the night came they did not cease to praise the Lord & thus they were driven forth & no member of the sea could break them within which that could move them & they did have light continually whether it was above the water or under the water & thus they were driven forth upon a hundred & forty days upon the water & they did land upon the shore of the promised land & when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land & did humble themselves before the Lord & did shed tears of joy before the Lord because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them and it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land & went to till the earth & Jared had seven sons & they were called Japham & Gilead & Mahab & Hiram & the brother of Jared also begot sons & daughters & the friends of Jared & his brother were in number a hundred twenty & two souls & they also begot sons & daughters

48
 before they came to this promised land & therefore they began to be un-
 righteous & they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord & they were also taught to
 be high, and it came to pass that this began to spread upon the face of the land & to multi-
 ply to all the earth & this did, was strong in the land & the brother of Jared began to be old
 & saw that he must soon go down to the grave wherefore he saith unto himself will
 I gather together some people that will may number them that will may know & then
 what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves & according to the people that
 gathered together now the number of the sons & the daughters of the brother of Jared ^{was}
 twenty & two souls & the number of the sons & daughters of Jared were twelve he having
 fourteen and it came to pass that they did number their people & after that they had
 numbered them this did desire of them the things which they would that they
 should do before they went down to their graves and it came to pass that the people desir-
 ed of him that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them & now
 behold this was grievous unto them but the brother of Jared said unto them Surely
 this thing leadeth into captivity but Jared said unto his brother ^{offspring} him
 that they may have a king & therefore he said unto them & have ye out from among
 our sons a king whom ye will & it came to pass that they chose even the first born of
 the brother of Jared & his name was Pagag and it came to pass that he refused & would
 not be their king & the people would that his father should constrain him but his father
 would not & he commanded them that they should not constrain no man to be their
 king and it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag & they would not and it
 came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared even all save it were one & Enihah
 was anointed to be king over the people & he began to reign & the people began to
 prosper & they became exceedingly rich and it came to pass that Jared died & his brother also
 & it came to pass that Enihah did walk humbly before the Lord & did remember how great
 things the Lord had done for his father & also taught his people how great things the
 Lord had done for their fathers and it came to pass that Enihah did execute judgment
 upon the land in righteousness all his days whose days were exceedingly many & he begat
 sons & daughters yea he begat thirty & one among whom were twenty & three sons & it
 came to pass that he also lived till in his old age & it came to pass that his son reigned on
 his stead & his son begat Corihon & when Corihon was thirty & two years old he reb-
 elled against his father & went on & dwelt in the land of Nephthi & he begat sons & daugh-
 ters & they became exceedingly fair wherefore Corihon drew away many people after
 him & when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Menon
 where the king dwelt & took him captive which brought to pass the saying of the
 brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity now the land of Menon
 where the king dwelt was near the land which is called ^{by the Nephthi} Legislation by the Nephthi & it
 came to pass that his son dwelt in captivity & his people under ^{him} his son until he
 came exceedingly old nevertheless his son begat Shull in his old age while he was yet in

Optimist & it came to pass that Shale was king with his brother & Shale was
strong & became mighty as to the strength of a man & he was also mighty in judgment
wherefore he came to the hill Ephraim & he did maul them out of the hill & made swords
out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him & after that he had armed them
with swords he returned to the city whom he gave battle unto his brother Corihon by which
means he obtained the kingdom & restored it unto his father Shale & now because of the thing
which Shale had done his father bestowed upon him the kingdom ^{therefore} from he began to
reign on the stead of his father & it came to pass that he did execute judgment in right-
eousness & he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land for the people had be-
come exceeding numerous & it came to pass that Shale also begat many sons & daugh-
ters & Corihon repented of the evils which he had done wherefore Shale gave him power in
his kingdom & it came to pass that Corihon had many sons & daughters & among the sons of
Corihon there was one whose name was Toah & it came to pass that Toah rebelled against
Shale the king & also his father Corihon & drew away Cohon his brother & also all his
brethren & many of the people & he gave battle unto Shale the king in which he did
obtain the land of their first inheritance & he became a king over that part of the land
& it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shale the king & he took Shale the king's
captive him away captive into Shalmon & it came to pass as he was about to put him to
death the sons of Shale crept into the house of Toah by night & slew him & broke
down the door of the prison & brought out their father & placed him upon ^{his throne} again his
own kingdom wherefore the sons of Toah did build up his kingdom in his stead nevertheless
less they did not gain power any more over Shale the king & the people which were
of Shale the king did prosper exceedingly & was great & the country was divided
into numerous kingdoms the kingdom of Shale & the kingdom of Cohon the sons of Toah &
Cohon the sons of Toah caused that his people should give battle unto Shale in which
Shale did beat them & did slay Cohon & now Cohon had a son in which was called himself
a Timrod gave of the kingdom of Cohon unto Shale & he did gain favor in the eyes of Sh-
ale wherefore Shale did bestow great favors upon him in ^{which} he did do in
the kingdom of Shale according to his desires & also in the reign of Shale there came
prophecy among the people ^{which was from the Lord} saying that the wickedness & idolatry of the people
was bringing a curse upon the land & that they should be destroyed if they did not
repent & it came to pass that the people did unite against the prophets & did mock them & it
came to pass that King Shale did execute judgment against all those who did revile against
the prophets & he did execute a law throughout all the land which gave power unto the
prophets that they should go whithersoever they would & by this cause the people were
brought unto repentance & because the people did repent of their iniquities & ^{idolatry} the
Lord did spare them & they began to prosper again in the land & it came to pass
that Shale begat sons & daughters in his old age & there were more years in
the days of Shale & he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his

[illegible]

440
 He gave power, & to murder, & to slay, & to live in carnal all manner of wickedness
 & iniquities, & it was the daughter of David who put it into his heart to search up the
 things of old, & he put it into the heart of which makes for. Which administered it unto
 his kindred & friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing is de-
 sired, & it came to pass that they formed a secret combination even as they of old, which
 combination is a most abominable & wicked abominable in the sight of God, & the Lord
 saith that he will not in secret combinations, neither shall he will that man should shed blood,
 but in all things hath forbidden from the beginning of man, & now, therefore do not
 wonder the manner of their oaths & combinations, for it hath been made known unto me
 that they are had among all people, & they are had among the Lamanites, & they have
 caused the destruction of their people of which I am now speaking, & also the destruction
 of the people of Joseph, & iniquitous nations shall uphold their secret combinations to
 get power & gain, until they shall subvert the nation, he hold, they shall be destroyed
 for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them,
 shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them, & yet he saith
 & it is his will, that he will be gentle, it is wisdom in God that these things should be
 shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins & suffer not that these iniqui-
 tous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power & gain, & the
 work of destruction & are upon you, even the sword of the justice of
 the Eternal God shall be upon you, to your overthrow & destruction, if ye shall suffer
 these things to be, & therefore the Lord commandeth you, whomever shall in these things
 come among you, that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this
 secret combination which shall be among you, as we be united, because of the blood
 of them who have been slain, for they cry from the dust, for vengeance upon
 & also upon those who build it up, for it cometh to pass that where blood is shed, & it
 shall to overthrow the kingdom, & all lands, nations & countries, it cometh to pass the
 destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, which is the father of all lies,
 even that same liar, which beguiled our first parents, & it is the same liar which
 hath caused men to commit murder from the beginning, which hath hardened the
 hearts of men, that they have murdered the prophets, & slayed them, & cast them out from
 the beginning, wherefore, I, Mormon, am commanded to write these things, that evil
 may be done, & it is that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the
 hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually
 that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness & be saved. Chapter III—
 And now, I, Mormon, proceed with my record, therefore behold it came to pass that
 because of the secret combinations of which & his friends he held they did overthrow
 the kingdom of King Benjamin, & the Lord was merciful unto him, & also to his
 sons & to his daughters, & ~~he did not~~ he did not with his destruction, & he
 Lord would them in a dream, that he should depart out of the land, & he gave them

departed out of the land with his family, & traveled many days, & came over ^{by} the hill of Shinarump, & came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, & from
 thence eastward, & came to a place which was called ^{by} the sea shore, & there
 he pitched his tent, & also his sons & his daughter & all his household, & as it were
 spared & his family, & it came to pass that Shish was anointed king over the people, by
 the hand of wickedness, he gave unto Shish his daughter to wife, & it came to pass that
 Shish taught the life of his father-in-law, & he applied unto those whom he had sworn
 by the oath of the ancients, & they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon
 his throne, giving audience to his people, & on a great had been the spreading of this wi-
 cked & ^{secret} society, that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people, therefore Shish
 was murdered upon his throne, & Shish reigned in his stead, & it came to pass that Sh-
 ish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, & kept him
 upon a little or no food, until he had received death, & now the brother of him that
 received death, (his name was Shemrah) ~~was~~ was angry with his father because of that
 which his father had done unto his brother, & it came to pass that Shemrah gathered
 together a small number of men, & fled out of the land, & came over & dwell with Omner,
 it came to pass that Shish began to be jealous, & they won the hearts of the people, without
 standing they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity, according to that which
 he desired, now the people, which were desirous for gain, even as Shish was desirous
 for power, & wisdom, the sons of which did offer them money, by the which means
 they drew away the more part of the people, after them, & there began to be a war betwixt
 in the sons of Shish & ^{Shish} which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruc-
 tion of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty, souls,
 & they which fled with the house of Omner, wherefore Omner was restored again
 to the land of his inheritance, & it came to pass that Omner began to be old, & even the
 less, in his old age he began to Enmer, he anointed Enmer to be king to reign in his
 stead, & after that he had anointed Enmer to be king, he saw peace in the land
 for the space of two years, & he died, having reigned many days, which were full of
 sorrow, & it came to pass that Enmer did reign in his stead, & did fill the steps of his father, & the
 Lord began again to take the curse from the land, & the house of Enmer did prosper exceedingly
 under the reign of Enmer, in the space of nearly two years, they had become exceedingly strong,
 inasmuch that they became a nursing rich, having all manner of fruit, & of grain, & of silk,
 & of fine linen, & of gold, & of silver, & of precious things, & also all manner of cattle of land,
 cows, & of sheep, & of swine, & of goats, & also many other kind of animals, which were useful for
 the food of man, they also had, horses, asses, & camels, & elephants, & camels, & camels,
 all of which were useful unto man, & more especially the elephants, & camels, & camels,
 & thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon the land, which was choice above all
 other lands, & he commanded that where should possess the land, should possess it
 unto the Lord, & they should be destroyed, when they were ripened in iniquity, for

upon such, with the Lord, I will pour out the fulness of my wrath, & Emen did execute
 judgment in righteousness all his days, & he begat many sons & daughters, & he begat
 Coriantum, he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead, & it came to pass that he had anointed Cor-
 antum to reign in his ^{stead} the land some years, & he saw peace in the land, & it came to pass that
 the Lord his brightness was with him, & he did prosper in his days, & he died in ^{the field} & it came to pass that
 Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, & did build many mighty cities, & did
 administer that which was good unto his people, in all his days, & it came to pass that he
 had no children, even until he was exceedingly old, & it came to pass that his wife did be-
 ing an hundred & two years old, & it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife in his
 old age, a young maid, & begat sons & daughters, wherefore he lived until he was an
 hundred & forty & two years old, & it came to pass that he begat Com, & Com reigned in his ste-
 ad, & he reigned forty & nine years, & he begat Heth, & he also begat other sons & daughters, &
 the people had spread again over all the face of the land, & there began again to be an in-
 creasing great wickedness upon the face of the land, & Heth began to be in ^{which} ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~the~~
 plans again of old, to destroy his father, & it came to pass that he did determine his father
 for he slew him with his own sword, & he did reign in his stead, & there came prophets
 in the land again, crying with a loud voice unto them, that they must prepare the way of the
 Lord, for there should come a curse upon the face of the land, & there should be a great
 famine, in the which they should be destroyed, if they did not repent, but the people believed
 not the words of the prophets, but they cast them away, & some of them they cast into pits, &
 it came to pass that Heth did all these things according to the command-
 ment of the King, & it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land,
 & the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly, & because of the dearth, for there was
 no grain upon the face of the earth, & there came forth the Lamanite servants also upon the face
 of the land, & did devour many people, & it came to pass that their flocks began to be
 driven the Lamanite servants, towards the land southward, which was called by the
 Lamanites, Gahadon, & it came to pass that there were many of them, which did perish
 by the way, nevertheless there were some which fell into the land southward, & it
 came to pass that the Lord did cause the servants that they should pursue them no
 more, but that they should hedge up the way, that the people could not pass that
 where should attempt to pass, might fall by the Lamanite servants, & it came to pass
 that the people did follow the course of the beasts, & did devour the carcasses of them
 which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all, now when the people saw
 that they must perish, they began to repent of their iniquities, & they made the Lord, & it came
 to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord, the Lord did
 send rain upon the face of the earth, & the people began to revive again, & there began to be
 fruit in the north countries, & in all the countries round about of the Lord, did show forth
 his power, & they began to prosper, then from famine, & it came to pass that they,
 which were a descendant of Heth, for Heth had perished by the famine, & all his

I have held some it were. They were therefore they began to build up again a broken people.
 not came to pass that they did remember the destruction of his father, & he did
 build up a righteous kingdom for he remembered what the Lord had done in bring-
 ing, & said to his brother, across the deep, & he did walk in the ways of the Lord, & he began
 to build up a righteous kingdom, & his eldest son, whose name was ^{did} they, rebelled against him, never-
 theless, they were smitten by the hand of a robbery, because of his exceeding riches, which
 brought peace again unto his father, & it came to pass that his father did build up ma-
 ny cities upon the face of the land, & the people began again to spread over all the face
 of the land, & they did live to an exceeding old age, he began to flatter, & he died, &
 his flatterer reigned in his stead, & it came to pass that his flatterer did not do that
 which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives & concubines,
 & did lay that upon men's shoulders, which was grievous to be borne, & he did tan-
 them with heavy taxes, & with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings, &
 he did sweat his men exceedingly beautiful things, & he did build many prisons, & the
 same would not be subject unto taxes, he did cast into prisons, who were unable
 to pay taxes, he did cast into prisons, & he did cause that their shame to be contin-
 ually, for their tax, & who were forced to pay, he did cause to be put to death, wherefore
 he did obtain all his fine work, & even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in pris-
 on, & all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison, & it came to
 pass that he did afflict the people with his wickedness, & a horrible thing, & when he
 had reigned for the space of, only two years, the people ^{did} raised up in rebellion against
 him, & there began to be war again in the land, inasmuch that his flatterer was killing,
 & his descendants were decimated of the land, & it came to pass that after the space of many
 years, Morianton, the living descendant of his flatterer, gathered together an army of
 soldiers, & went forth against him, & he gained power over many cities, &
 the mean became exceedingly sore, & did last for the space of many years, & he did gain
 power over all the land, & did establish himself king over all the land, & of that he
 had established himself king, he did ease the burden of the people, ^{by} which he did
 gain favour in the eyes of the people, & they did anoint him to be their king, & he did do far-
 like unto the people, but not unto himself, because of his many wickedness, wherefore
 he was cut off from the presence of the Lord, & it came to pass that Morianton built up
 many cities, & the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, & in gold, & in
 silver, & in raising grain, & in flocks, & herds, & such things which had been retained unto
 them, & Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, & then he began to king, & him did reign
 in ^{the} stead of his father, & he did reign eight years, & his father died, & it came to pass that
 him did not reign in his stead, wherefore he was not favoured of the Lord, & his
 brother did raise up in rebellion against him, in the which he did bring him into cap-
 tivity, & he did remain in captivity all his days, & he began to have sons & daughters in cap-
 tivity, in his old age he began to die, & he did, & it came to pass that his son did come in captiv-
 ity.

After the death of his father for the space of many two years & he did make war against
the king of the land, ~~and~~ which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom & after that he
had obtained unto himself the kingdom, he did that which was right in the sight of the
Lord, ~~and~~ he did prosper in the land & he did live to a good old age & he had sons & daugh-
ters & he also had a son whom he anointed king in his stead & it came to pass that Com
did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days & he had many sons & daugh-
ters & it came to pass that he did pass away even like unto the rest of the
earth which reigned in his stead & it came to pass that his son passed away also & his
son reigned in his stead & it came to pass that his son also did that which was good in the sig-
ht of the Lord & in the eyes of the people & the wicked men were destroyed & when they did
go into the land southward to hunt for the people of the land for the land was
covered with animals & the forest & his son also himself became a great hunter & they built
a great city by the ~~name~~ ^{name} of the land by the place where the sea divides the land &
they did pursue the land southward for a wilderness to get ~~game~~ ^{game} & the whole face of
the land northward was covered with his hunters & they were exceedingly industri-
ous & they did long & till & to pluck one with another that they might get grain & they
did work in all manner of one & they did make gold & silver & iron & brass & all manner
of metals & they did dig out of the earth whosoever they did cast up mighty heaps of earth
for to get ore of gold & of silver & of iron & of copper & they did work all manner of fine work
& they did have riches & fine linen & fineness of linen & they did work all manner of cloth that they
might be clothed themselves from their nakedness & they did make all manner of tools to till
the earth & they did make all manner of vessels of gold & of silver & of iron & they did make all man-
ner of tools ~~with which~~ ^{with which} they did work the land & they did make all manner of vessels
of iron & they did work all manner of metal & exceeding workmanship & never could be
a people more blessed than were they & were prospered by the hand of the Lord & they were in
a land that was choice & gave all lands for the Lord had spoken it & it came to pass that
he lived long many years & he had sons & daughters & he also had a son whom it came to
pass that his son reigned in his stead & his father & when his son had reigned thirty &
four years behold the kingdom was taken away from him & he reigned many years in cap-
tivity years even all the remainder of his days & he had a son & his son lived in ^{the} ~~the~~ ^{city}
all his days & his son reigned & he and his son dwelt in captivity all his days & he had a son
named Amnigaddah & Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days & he had a son named
Conien-
benedumell in captivity all his days & he had a son named Corn & it came to pass that Corn
dwelt in the half of the kingdom & he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty & two years &
it was a battle against the king Abinadab & they fought for the space of many years
until that Corn gained down over Abinadab & obtained down over the remainder of
the kingdom & in the days of Corn there began to be robbers in the land & they ad-
opted the old plans & administered rather after the manner of the ancients & sought again
to destroy the kingdom now Corn did fight against them much nevertheless he

did not prevail against them & there came also in the days of Com many prophets &
prophesied of the destruction of the great people, saying they should repent & turn unto
the Lord & forsake their murders & wickedness & it came to pass that the king let them ^{remain}
by the people & they fled unto Can for protection for the people sought to destroy them &
they for their part unto Com many things & he was abhorred in all the remainder of his days
& he lived to a good old age & legal Shihlon & Shihlon reigned in his stead & the
people of Shihlon rebelled against him & there began to be an exceedingly great rebellion
in the land & it came to pass that the brother of Shihlon ~~caused~~ ^{caused} that all the prophets
which prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death & there was
great calamity in the land for they had testified that a great evil should come
upon the land & also upon the people & that there should be a great destruction among
them
Then as soon as soon had been taken the king of the earth which land should become a heap of
dust upon the land & the land which they should be put to death & they hardened not unto
the word of the Lord because of their wicked intentions wherefore they began to be weary & conten-
tious in all the land & there many families & nations came in that there was a great des-
truction & there was a great destruction upon the face of the earth & all this came to pass
in the days of Shihlon & the people began to be weary of their iniquity & inasmuch as they
did so the Lord did send many prophets & it came to pass that Shihlon was slain & he
was brought into captivity & he did dwell in captivity all his days & it came to pass that
Shihlon's son did obtain the kingdom & he did reign over the people all his days & he did
do all manner of iniquity in his days ~~which~~ ^{which} he did ~~cause~~ ^{cause} the shedding of much blood
& few were his days & ~~Shihlon~~ ^{Shihlon} being a descendant of Shihlon did obtain the kingdom & what
he did do that which was wished in his days & it came to pass in the days of Shihlon that
there came many prophets & prophesied again unto the people saying they did prophesy that the
Lord would utterly destroy them from the face of the earth except they repented of
their iniquities & it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts & they would not
hearken unto the words of the prophets & moreover they were from among the people & it came to pass
that Shihlon did reign & he did reign in wickedness all his days & it came to pass that
Shihlon did reign in wickedness & Shihlon did the thing which was wished before the Lord did
come to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people & the cause of that great combination
which was built up to get power again there arose a mighty man among them iniquity & he
the name Shihlon in ~~the~~ ^{the} which he did ~~take~~ ^{take} the half of the kingdom & he did maintain the
half of the kingdom for many years & it came to pass that Shihlon did overthrow him & he did ob-
tain the kingdom again & it came to pass that there arose another mighty man & he was a de-
scendant of the brother of Shihlon & it came to pass that he did overthrow Shihlon & obtain the king-
dom wherefore Shihlon dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days & he legal Corianton &
it came to pass that Corianton dwelt in captivity all his days & in the days of Corianton there also
came many prophets & prophesied of great & marvelous things & they did repentance unto the peo-
ple & except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgments against them to the

^{12th} ~~utter~~ destruction & that the Lord God would send on being forth an other people to
 possess the land by his power after the manner which he brought their fathers & they
 did reject all the words of the prop. he to because of their ^{secret} wicked society & wicked a horri-
 nations & it came to pass that Corianton begot Ether & he died having dwelt in captivity
 all his days Chapter V & it came to pass that the days of Ether was in the days
 of Corianton's & Corianton was king over all the land & Ether was a prophet of the
 Lord wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Corianton & began to prophesy unto the people
 for he could not be restrained because of the spirit of the Lord which was in him for he did
 say from the morning even until the going down of the sun exhorting the people to believe in
 God unto repentance but they thought he destroyed saying unto him that by faith all things
 things are fulfilled wherefore wherefore believe in God might with surely hope for a better
 would give a man a place at the right hand of God which hope cometh of faith maketh an
 another to the world's men which would make them sure & steadfast always & a com-
 thing in good works being led to glorify God & it came to pass that Ether did preach of
 great & marvellous things unto the people which they did not believe because they saw
 them not & now if I should speak come what concerning these things I should show
 unto the world that faith is things which ^{one} he hoped for & not seen wherefore did he
 not because ye see not for ye receive no witness not until after the trial of your faith
 for it was his faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers after ^{he} had ^{risen} from the dead & he showed ^{not} himself ^{until} unto them ^{until} after they had faith in him
 wherefore it must needs be that some had faith in him for he showed himself not
 unto the world but because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world &
 glorified the name of the Father & prepared the way ^{that} there by others might be partakers of
 the heavenly gift that they might hope for those things which they have not seen
 wherefore ye may also have hope & be partakers of the gift if ye will but ^{have} ^{faith}
 faith behold it was by faith that our fathers were called of the holy order of God where-
 fore by faith was the law of Moses given but in the will of his Son hath God prepared a
 more excellent way & it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled for if there be no
 faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them wherefore he showed
 not himself until after their faith behold it was the faith of Alma & Amulek that can-
 sed the prison to tumble to the earth he held it was the faith of Lophi & Leki that wrought
 the change upon the ^{13th} ~~Ammonites~~ ^{Ammonites} that they were baptized with fire & with the Holy
 Ghost behold it was the faith of the women & their brethren which wrought to great a
 miracle among the ^{14th} ~~Ammonites~~ ^{Ammonites} ^{small} ^{they} which wrought miracles wrought them by
 faith even those which were before Christ & also them which were after & it was by faith
 that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death
 & they obtained not the promise until after their faith & neither at any time hath
 any wrought miracles until after their faith wherefore they first believed in the
 Son of God & there were many whose faith was so exceeding strong even before ^{Christ}

Come which could not be kept from within the veil but truly saw with the
eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith & they were glad & beheld
we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Paul for so great was
his faith in God that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the
sight of the brother of Paul because of his word which he had spoken unto him when
word he had obtained by faith & after ~~the~~ the brother of Paul had he held the fingers
of the Lord because of the promise which the brother of Paul had obtained by faith
the Lord could not withhold any thing from his sight wherefore he shewed him
all things for he desired no longer to keep without seeing it & it is by faith that
we have obtained the promise that these things should come unto them
therefore through the Gentiles therefore the Lord hath commanded us ye also
shall be said unto him Lord the Gentiles will marvel at these things because
of our weakness in writing for Paul hath made us mighty in word by faith
but ~~not~~ ^{by} Paul hath not made us mighty in writing for Paul hath made all this
possible that they could speak much because of the Holy Ghost which Paul hath
given them & Paul hath made us that we could write but little because of the weak-
ness of our hands behold Paul hath not made us mighty in writing like unto
the brother of Paul for Paul made him that the things which he wrote were min-
gled even as Paul did unto the overpowering of men to read them & that is
why we could not write much more than we could write them wherefore when we
write we hold our weakness & stumble because of the placing of our words & how-
ever the Gentiles shall marvel at our words & wherefore Paul said this the Lord spoke unto
me saying Paul shall be made but they shall marvel & improve it sufficient for the most
that Paul shall take no advantage of weakness if we come unto me I will show
unto them their weakness give unto men weakness that they may be humble & improve
it sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me for if they humble them-
selves before me I have faith in me they will make weak things become strong
unto them behold I will shew unto the Gentiles their weakness & I will shew unto
them that faith hope & charity bringeth unto me the conquering of all righteousness
& I have heard these words was comforted & said to the Lord thy righteous-
ness will be done for I know that thou wilt bestow unto the children of men according to
their faith for the brother of Paul said unto the mannaia ^{Remond} ~~Remond~~ & it was
removed if he had not had faith it would not have moved wherefore these were
first after that men have faith for Paul did these manifest thyself unto thy disciples
for after that they had faith & did speak thy name Paul did shew thyself
unto them in great power & I also remember that Paul hath said that Paul
hath prepared a house for man yet even among the mansions of the Father in
the which man might have a more excellent hope wherefore man must
hope on he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which Paul hath prepared

4th
 I again remember that those have said that those have loved the world more unto the
 laying down of the life for the world that man might take it again to prepare a place for
 the children of men & now I know that this love which those have had for the children of
 men is charity wherefore except man shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which
 those have prepared in the mansions of the Father wherefore I know by this thing which
 those have said that if the Gentiles have not charity because of our iniquities that those
 will from thence take away their talent & even that which they have received to
 give unto them who shall have more abundantly & it came to pass that I prayed unto
 the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace that they might have charity & it
 came to pass that the Lord said unto me if they have not charity it matters not
 unto thee that those have been faithful wherefore thy garments shall be made clean &
 without stain thou hast seen the weakness that shall be made strong even unto the sitting
 down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father now. Now
 we bid farewell unto the Gentiles glad also unto me brethren whom I love until we
 shall meet before the Father at Christ where all men shall know that my
 garments are not spotted with your blood & then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus
 & that he hath talked with me face to face & that he told me in plain haile to bear
 witness unto all the world in mine own language concerning these things & only a few
 have written because of my weakness in writing & now I would commend you to
 seek the faces of whom the prophets & apostles have written that the grace of God the
 Father & also the Lord Jesus Christ & the Holy Ghost which beareth record of them may
 be with you always Amen Chapter VI And now I have finished
 to finish my record concerning the translation of the people of ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~the~~ have been wait-
 ing for behold this is what all the world of ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~the~~ shall
 know from the beginning of man & now that after the waters had receded from
 off the face of this land I became a choice land above all other lands & a chosen land
 of the Lord wherefore the Lord would have ^{that} all men should name him which dwelt
 upon the face thereof & that it was the place of the ^{new} ~~new~~ Jerusalem which should
 come down out of Heaven & the Holy Tents of the Lord behold I saw the
 days of Christ & he spake concerning Jerusalem upon this land & he spake al-
 so concerning the house of Israel & the Jerusalem from whence he should come after
 that it should be destroyed it should be built up again & Holy City unto the Lord
 wherefore it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been a time of old but it
 should be built up again & become a Holy City & it should be built up unto the ^{of the Lord} ~~of the~~ ^{house}
 of Israel & that a new Jerusalem should be built up upon this land unto the re-
 mnant of the seed of Joseph for the which things there has been type for as Joseph
 brought his father down into the land of Egypt even so he did there wherefore the
 Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph one of the land of Jerusalem that he
 might be memorial unto the seed of Joseph that they should perchance not forget

was manifested unto the fathers of Joseph that he should perish not whether ⁴⁴⁹ the rem-
 nant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon that land & it shall be a land of their in-
 heritance & they shall build upon Holy City unto the land like unto the generation of old & they
 shall no more be con- founded until the end come when the earth shall possessors that
 shall be a new heaven & a new earth & they shall be like unto the old have the old have passed
 away & all things have become new & then cometh the scripturalism & blessed are they who
 shall dwell therein for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb & they
 & they are the ~~remnant~~ which are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph which
 were of the house of Israel & then also cometh the generation of old & the inhabitants
 thereof blessed are they for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb & they
 are they which were scattered & gathered in from the four quarters of the earth & from
 the north countries & the families of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with
 their fathers of Abraham & when these things come bringeth to pass the bright line which saith
 shall be they which were first which shall be last & these are they which were last
 which shall be first for I was about to write more but I am forbidden but I must
 & I must close mine eyes & I must be silent but I must be silent & I must be silent
 & I must be silent & I must be silent in the country & I must be silent by day & by night he went
 forth warning the things which should come upon the people & as he dwelt in the land
 of a nation he made the remnant of that nation warning the destruction which came upon the
 people by night & it came to pass that in that same year which he was cast out from
 among the people there began to be a great war among the people for there were many
 which rose up who were mighty men & sought to destroy Coniantum by their secret
 plans of wickedness of which hath been spoken & now Coniantum having studied
 himself in all the arts of war & all the cunning of the world wherefore he gave
 battle unto them which sought to destroy him but he repented not neither did he
 show no daughter neither the fair sons & daughters of Enoch neither the fair sons & daughters
 of Coniantum & in fine there was none of the fair sons & daughters upon the face of the
 whole earth which repented of their sins wherefore it came to pass in the first year that
 Enoch dwelt in the land of a nation there was much people which was slain by the sword
 these were Coniantum's fighting against Coniantum that they might obtain the king-
 dom & it came to pass that the sons of Coniantum fought much & were much & in
 the second year the war of Enoch came unto Enoch that he should go to Enoch & unto his
 anointed that if he would repent & his house hold the Lord would give unto him
 his kingdom & spare the people & then will they should be destroyed & all his house hold
 save it were himself & he should only live to receive the fulfilling of the prophecies which
 had been spoken concerning him & people receiving the land for their inheritance
 & Coniantum should receive a name by them & being slain should be destroyed & save
 it were Coniantum & it came to pass that Coniantum repented not neither his house
 hold neither the people & the means ~~was~~ ^{was} not & they sought to kill Enoch but he

fled from before them, & hid again in the cavity of the rock, it came to pass that
 there arose a hand, & he also gave battle unto Coriantumr, & he did beat him, insomuch
 that in the third year he did bring him into captivity, & the sons of Coriantumr in the fourth year
 did that I have said, & did obtain the kingdom again under their father, now there began to be a
 war upon all the face of the land, every man with his hand fighting for that which ^{his} desire
 & there was no rest in five all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land, & it came
 to pass that Coriantumr was exceeding angry with I have said, & he went against him with his
 armies to battle, & they did meet in great anger, & they did meet in ^{the} valley of Gelgah,
 & the battle became exceedingly sore, & it came to pass that I have said fought against him
 for the space of three days, & it came to pass that Coriantumr was him ^{himself} & pursued him until he
 had come to the plains of Hishlon, & it came to pass that I have said gave him battle again upon
 the plains, & he held he did beat Coriantumr, & drove him back again to the valley of Gelgah,
 & Coriantumr gave I have said battle again in the valley of Gelgah, in ^{the} which he beat I have
 said him, I have said wounded Coriantumr in ^{his} thigh, so that he did not go to battle af-
 ter for the space of two years, in ^{the} which time all the people upon all the face of the land
 were a shedding blood, & there was none to constrain them, & now there began to be a great
 care upon the land, because of the iniquity of the people, & ^{and} if a man should lay
 his hand on his sword upon the sheath upon the place ^{wherein} he would keep it, & he hold,
 upon the morning he could not find it, & great was the curse upon the land, wherefore
 every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, & would not become
 neighbor would he lend, & some man kept the hilt of his sword thereof in his right hand
 in the defense of his people, & his own life, & ^{and} his mind & his heart now of the space
 of two years, after the death of I have said, he held, there was all the iniquity of I have said,
 battle unto Coriantumr, in ^{the} which Coriantumr did that thing, & did pursue him to
 the wilderness of Shiloh, & it came to pass that the brother ^{I have said} did give battle unto
 him in the wilderness of Shiloh, & the battle became exceedingly long, & many thousands fell
 by the sword, & it came to pass that Coriantumr did last rise to the wilderness, & the bro-
 ther of I have said did march, & it was of the wilderness by night, & slew a part of the
 army of Coriantumr, as they were sleeping, & he came forth to the land of Hiron, & placed
 himself upon the throne of Coriantumr, & it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt
 with his army in the wilderness, for the space of two years, in ^{the} which he did receive
 great strength to his army, now the brother of I have said, whose name was Gilead, also
 received great strength to his army, & many combinations, & it came to pass
 that his High Priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne, & it came to pass that of the
 most combinations murdered him in secret pass, & obtained unto himself the kingdom, his
 name was Lib, Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among ^{all the} people,
 & it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up to the land of Hiron
 & gave battle unto Lib, & it came to pass that he fought with Lib in ^{the} which he did
 smite upon his army that he was wounded, nevertheless the army of Coriantumr did not

press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the sea shore, & it came to pass that
Coriantumner pursued him, & Lib's sons hattle unto him upon the sea shore, & it came to pass
that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumner, that they fled again to the wilderness of
which it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agash, & Cori-
antumner had taken all the people with him, as he fled before Lib, & that quarter of the
land which he fled, & when he had come to the plains of Agash, he gave hattle unto
Lib, he smote upon him until he died, nevertheless the brother of Lib did come again
against Coriantumner in the stead thereof, & the hattle became exceeding sore, in the which
Coriantumner fled again before the army of the brother of Lib, now the name of the brother
of Lib was called Shiz, & it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumner, & he did over-
throw many cities, & he did slay both women & children, & he did burn the cities thereof, & there
went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land, & a cry went forth throughout the land, that
they could stand before the army of Shiz, he held it sweet both the earth before him, & it came to
pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land, &
they were divided, & a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, & a part of them fled to the army
of Coriantumner, & so great & lasting had been the war so long, had been the scene of blood-
shed & carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead, & so
swift & speedy was the way, that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march
forth from the sheddings of blood, & the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men,
women & children, & the dead upon the face of the land, & become a prey to the worms of the
earth, & the scene thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of
the land, & therefore the people became troubled by day & by night, because of the scene thereof,
nevertheless Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumner, for he had sworn to avenge himself up-
on Coriantumner & the blood of his brother, which had been staining the sword of the Lord
which came to Shiz, that Coriantumner should not fall by his sword, thus we see that
the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, & their wickedness & abominations had
prepared a way for their everlasting destruction, & it came to pass that Shiz did pursue
Coriantumner eastward, unto the borders by the sea shore, & there he gave hattle unto Shiz
for the space of three days, & so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz, that the
people began to be frightened, & began to flee before the armies of Coriantumner, & they fled to
the land of Corihon, & a multitude of the inhabitants before them, all they that would not
join them, they took their tents in the valley of Corihon, & Coriantumner pitched his
tents in the valley of Shun, now the valley of Shun was near the hill Corihon,
wherefore Coriantumner did gather his armies together upon the hill Corihon, & did sound a
trumpet unto the armies of Shiz, to invite them forth to hattle, & it came to pass that they
came forth, but were driven again, & they came the second time, they were driven again the
second time, & it came to pass that they came again the third time, & the hattle became ex-
ceeding sore, & it came to pass that Shiz smote upon Coriantumner, that he gave him many
deep wounds, & Coriantumner having lost his blood, fainted, & was carried away as

452
 though he were dead, now the loss of men, women & children on both sides, was so great
 that they commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumner,
 when for they remained in their camp, & it came to pass that when Coriantumner had reconciled
 his wounds, he began to remember the names which Ether had spoken unto him; he saw that
 there had been slain by the sword about a million of his people; he began
 to weep in his heart, and then said unto himself, a million might be more, & also their
 wives & children; he began to repent of the evil which in his thought began to come
 upon the people, which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets & he saw them
 that they were full of blood, & his heart was heavy, & he refused to be comforted;
 & it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare
 the people; he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people; & it came
 to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle, he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumner,
 that if he would give himself up that he might slay him with his own sword, that he
 would spare the lives of the people; & it came to pass that the people repented not of their
 iniquity; & the people of Coriantumner were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz;
 & the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumner; wherefore the
 people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumner; & when Coriantumner saw
 that he was about to fall, he did again bid the people of Shiz; & it came to pass that
 he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which by interpretation is large, and to our seed
 all; wherefore, when they came to these waters, they pitched their tents; & Shiz also pi-
 tched his tent; ^{near} them; & there, for on the morrow, they did come to battle; & it came
 to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle in the which Coriantumner was wounded, & he fa-
 inted with the loss of blood; & it came to pass that the army of Coriantumner did pursue upon the ar-
 mies of Shiz; that they beat them, but they caused them to flee before them; & they did flee
 eastward, & did pitch their tents in a place which was called Legath; & it came to pass that
 the army of Coriantumner did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; & it was that same hill where
 my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred; & it came to pass
 that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land; & they had not been slain;
 save it were Ether; & it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; & he
 beheld that the people which were for Coriantumner, were gathered together to the army of Cori-
 antumner; & the people which were for Shiz, were gathered together to the army of Shiz; wherefore
 they were for the space of many days gathering together the people, that they might get all who
 were upon the face of the land; & that they might receive all the strength which it was possi-
 ble that they could receive; & it came to pass that they were all gathered together, & every
 one to the army, which he would, with their wives & their children; both men, women
 & children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, & breast plates, & hel-
 mets, & being clothed after the manner of men; & they did march forth one against an-
 other to battle; & they fought on all that day; & ^{they did} ~~they did~~ not; & it came to pass that when
 it was night they were weary, & returned to their camps; & of this that they had

[illegible]

The Book of Moroni Chapter 8 & 9. Moroni after having made an end of abridging the account as he had offered I had supposed to not have written more but I have not as yet finished to make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me for he hold them were exceeding cruel among themselves & because of their hatred they put to death many prophets who will not deny the Christ but Moroni will not deny the Christ wherefore I would write to the Lamanites for the safety of mine own life wherefore I wrote a few more things I am going to that which I had supposed for I had supposed not to have written any more but I will write a few more things that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren the Lamanites in some future day according to the will of the Lord. Chapter 11 of the words of Christ which he spoke unto his disciples the twelve whom he had chosen as he laid his hands upon them & he called them by name saying Ye shall call on the Father in my name in mighty prayer & after that ye have done this ye shall have power that on whomsoever ye shall lay your hands ye shall give the Holy Ghost & in my name shall ye give it for thus do mine apostles now Christ spoke these words unto them at the time of his first appearing & the multitude heard it not but the disciples heard it & on as many as they laid their hands fell the Holy Ghost Chapter 12 of the manner which the apostles in which were called the elders of the Church ordained priests & teachers & of the way they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ they laid their hands upon them & said In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest or if he be a teacher ordaining as in it is written to purchase an hundred & seventy times seven for Jesus Christ by the endurance of faith in his name to the end of time & after this manner did they ordain priests & teachers according to the gifts & callings of God unto men & they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost which was in them Chapter 13 of the manner of their elders & priests administering the Father's blood of Christ unto the Church & they administered it according to the commandments of Christ wherefore he knoweth that the manner to be true & the elders & priests did minister it & they did kneel down with the Church & pray to the Father in the name of Christ saying O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this bread to the souls of all they who partake of it that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son & meetness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son & always remember him & keep his commandments which he hath given them that they may always have his Spirit to be with them Amen Chapter 14 of the manner of administering the wine he hold they took the cup & said O God the Eternal Father we ask thee in the name of thy Son Jesus Christ to bless & sanctify this wine to the souls of all they who drink of it that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son which was shed for them that they may meetness unto thee O God the Eternal Father that they do always remember him that they may have his Spirit to be with them Amen

None know what a ^{good} man living evil cannot do & not which is good man
 neither will be ever a good gift of the Father a blessing, a blessing cannot bring forth
 good neither can a good man bring forth evil neither will a man be-
 ing the servant of the devil cannot follow Christ & if he follow Christ he cannot be a
 servant of the devil wherefore all things which are good cometh of God & that which is
 evil cometh of the devil, for the devil is an enemy unto God & he is continually
 continually to invite us on to do that which is evil continually but
 behold that which is of God inviteth & enticeth to do good continually wherefore
 every thing which inviteth & enticeth to do good & to love God & to serve him is
 inspired of God wherefore I have heard my beloved brethren that ye do not judge
 that which is evil to be of God as that which is good is of God to lead the devil for he is
 now brethren it is given unto you to judge that ye may know good from evil & the way
 to judge is as plain that ye may know with a perfect knowledge as the day light is
 from the dark night for behold the spirit of Christ is given to every man that they
 may know good from evil wherefore I have sent you the way to judge for every
 thing which inviteth to do good & to persuade to believe in Christ is sent forth
 by the power of ^{the gift} of Christ wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of
 God but what some thing persuadeth to do evil & believe not in Christ & serve him
 & serve not God then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil for of
 this manner doth the devil work for he ^{is an enemy} ~~is an enemy~~ to God & to good men & evil
 men doth his work which is to lead them which subject themselves unto him & now
 my brethren seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge which light
 is the light of Christ see that ye do not judge wrongfully for with that same judge-
 ment which ye judge ye shall also be judged wherefore I beseech of you brethren
 that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from
 evil & if ye will lay hold upon every good thing & condemn it not ye certainly will
 be a child of Christ & now my brethren how is it possible that ye can lay hold
 upon every good thing & now I come to that which which I said I could speak & I
 will tell you the way where ye may lay hold on every good thing for behold I
 knowing all things being from everlasting behold he sent angels to
 minister unto the children of men to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ
 & in Christ there should come every good thing & God should lead us to prophets by his
 own mouth that Christ should come & he hath shown these things unto many
 manifest things unto the children of men which were good & all things which are good
 cometh of Christ otherwise men were fallen & there would be no good thing brought unto
 them wherefore by the ministering of angels & by every word which ^{proceedeth} ~~proceedeth~~
 forth out of the mouth of God men began to receive faith in Christ & thus
 by faith they did lay hold upon every good thing & thus it was until the
 coming of Christ & after that he came men also were saved by faith in his

name & by faith they become the Sons of God & as sure as Christ liveth
 he spake these words unto our fathers saying Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the
 Father in my name which is good in faith believing that ye shall receive be-
 hold it shall be done unto you wherefore my beloved brethren hath miracles
 ceased because that Christ hath ascended into Heaven & hath set down on the right
 hand of God to claim of the Father his right of mercy which he hath upon the
 children of men for he hath assumed the ends of the law & he claimeth all those that shall
 faith in him & they that have faith in him will clean unto every good thing wherefore
 he redeemed the cause of the children of men & he dwelleth eternally in the Heaven
 because that he hath done this my beloved brethren hath miracles ceased behold
 I say unto you nay, neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men for
 behold they are subject unto him to minister according to the word of his command
 shewing themselves unto him of strong faith & a firm mind in every form of godliness
 & the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance & to fulfil & to do the work
 of the commandments of the Father which he hath made unto the children of men to keep
 and the way among the children of men by declaring the word of Christ unto ^{the chosen} ~~them~~
 servants of the Lord that they may bear testimony of him & by so doing the Lord God pro-
 piate the way that the ^{of men} ~~residual~~ may have faith in Christ that the Holy Ghost
 may have place in their hearts according to the power thereof & after that manner
 bringeth to pass the Father the commandments which he hath made unto the chil-
 dren of men & Christ hath said If ye will have faith in me ye shall have pow-
 er to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me & he hath said Repent all ye ends
 of the earth & come unto me & be baptized in my name & have faith in me
 and ye may be saved & now my beloved brethren if ye be the call that these
 things are true which I have spoken unto you & God will shew unto you with
 power & great glory at the last day that they are true & if they are true ~~then~~ ^{then} the day of
 miracles ceased or have angels ceased to of men unto the children of men or hath he
 withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them or will he so long as time shall last
 & the earth shall stand or shall there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved
 he hath I say unto you nay for it is by faith that miracles are wrought & it is by faith
 that angels appear & minister unto men wherefore if these things have ceased ~~with~~
 unto the children of men for it is because of unbelief & all is vain for no man can be saved
 according to the word of Christ save they shall have faith in his name wherefore if these
 things have ceased then is faith a dead word & awful is the state of man for they are
 as though there had been no redemption made that behold my beloved brethren I judge
 better things of you for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meet-
 ness for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people
 of his Church & again my beloved brethren I would speak unto you concerning the
 thing is it that ye can obtain unto faith save ye shall have hope & what is it that ye
 shall hope for he

I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ & the power
 of his resurrection to be raised ^{unto} ~~into~~ life Eternal & this because of your faith in him
 according in the promise wherefore if a man have faith he must needs hope for without
 faith none cannot ^{be} hope & again behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith
 & hope save he shall be meek & lowly of heart if so his faith & hope is vain for none is except-
 able before God save the meek & lowly of heart & if a man be meek & lowly in heart & con-
 fess by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ he must needs have charity for
 if he have not charity he is nothing wherefore he must needs have charity & charity suffic-
 eth long & is kind & smooth not swarthy not puffed up seeketh not her own is not easily
 provoked thinketh no evil & rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth
 beareth all things believeth all things hopeth in all things endureth all things wherefore
 my beloved brethren if ye have not charity ye are nothing for charity never faileth wh-
 ever love cleaveth unto charity which is the greatest of all for all things must fail but char-
 ity is the pure love of Christ & it endureth forever & who ever is found possessed of it
 at the last day it shall be well with them wherefore my beloved brethren pray unto
 the Father with all the energy of heart that ye may be filled with this love which
 he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son Jesus Christ that ye may
 become the Sons of God & when he shall appear we shall be like him for he that
 shall see him as he is that we may have this hope that we may be purified
 even as he is pure Amen Chapter VIII In the first of my father, Mormon written to
 me Moroni & it was written unto me as one of the many calling to the ministers & on this will die
 he wrote unto me saying ^{my} beloved son Moroni I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Je-
 sus Christ hath been mindful of you & hath called you to his ministry & to his holy con-
 vocation I am mindful of you always in my prayers continually praying unto God our Father
 in the name of his holy child Jesus that he through his infinite goodness & grace will keep
 you through the influence of faith on his name to the end & now my son I speak unto you
 concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly for it grieveth me that there should dis-
 putations arise among you for if ye have learned the truth there has been disputations
 among you concerning the ^{baptism} ~~baptizing~~ of your little children & now my son I desire that
 ye should be ^{ediligently} ~~carefully~~ that this grievance should be removed from among you
 for for this intent I have written this ^{little} ~~epistle~~ for immediately after I had learned these
 things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter & the word of the Lord came to me
 by the power of the Holy Ghost saying Listen to the words of Christ your Father & hearken
 ye unto him he hath said I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance
 the whole need no physician but they that are sick wherefore little children are whole
 for they are not capable of committing sin wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them
 in me that it hath no power over them & the law of circumcision is done away in me
 & after that manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me when
 I saw my beloved son I know that it is solemn marking before God that ye should

baptize little children behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach repentance
& baptism unto ~~the~~ ^{the} ~~holy~~ ^{holy} ~~ghosts~~ ^{ghosts} and accountable & capable of committing sin & that parents
that they must repent & be baptized & humble themselves as the little children & they shall
all be saved with their little children & their little children ^{need} no repentance neither baptism
behold baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission
of sins but little children are alive in Christ even from the foundation of the world
if not so God is a partial God & also a changeable ^{being} ~~being~~ a respecter to persons for how many
little children have died without baptism wherefore if little children could not be
saved without baptism there must have gone to an end less hell behold I say unto
you that he that suppoeth that little children needeth baptism is in the gall of
bitterness & in the house of iniquity for he hath neither faith hope nor charity where
fore he should be he cast off unto in the thought he must go down to hell for awful is
the wickedness to suppose that God saith one child because of baptism & the other ^{must} ~~must~~
perish because he hath ^{not} ~~not~~ baptism, no he saith unto him that shall persecute the many of the dead
after this manner for they shall perish except they repent behold I speak with boldness hear-
ing nothing from God for I see not what man can do for perfect love casteth out all fear
& I am filled with charity which is everlasting love wherefore all children are alike unto
me wherefore I love little children with a perfect love & they are all alike & partakers of salva-
tion for I know that God is not a partial God neither a changeable being but he is unchan-
geable from all eternity to all eternity little children cannot repent wherefore it is
awful wickedness to deny the mercies of God unto them for they are all alive in
him because of his mercy & he that saith that little children needeth ^{baptism} ~~repentance~~ ^{denieth} ~~the~~
mercies of Christ & saith a changeable being alone merit of him & the power of his redem-
ption need unto such for they are in danger of death hell & an endless torment I speak
it boldly God hath commanded me listen unto them & give heed on they stand
against you at the judgement seat of Christ for behold that all ^{little} ~~little~~ children are
alive in Christ & also all they that are without the law for the power of redemption
cometh on all they that have no law wherefore he that is not condemned on he that is
under no condemnation cannot repent & unto such baptism availeth nothing but ^{it} ~~it~~ is one
eking before God denying the mercies of Christ & the power of his Holy Spirit & putting trust
in dead works behold my son this thing ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~ought~~ ^{ought} to be for repentance is unto them
that are under condemnation & under the curse of a broken law & the first fruits of repentance
is baptism & baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments & the fulfill-
ing the commandments bringeth remission of sins & the remission of sins bringeth meek-
ness & lowliness of heart & because of meekness & lowliness of heart cometh the witness-
tion of the Holy Ghost which comforteth filleth with hope & perfect love which
endureth by diligence unto prayer until the end shall come when all the saints shall
dwelt with God behold my son I will write unto you again if I go not out soon
against the Lamanites behold the pride of this nation on the ^{people} ~~people~~ of the Nephites

[illegible]

⁴⁶²
 Faith in Christ & he will manifest the truth of it unto you by the power of the
 Holy Ghost & by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things
 & whatsoever thing is good is faith & true wherefore nothing that is good denieth
 the Christ but acknowledgeth that he is & ye may know that he is by the power of the Ho-
 ly Ghost wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God for he worketh
 by power according to the faith of the children of men the same today & tomorrow & forever
 again I have you my brethren that ye deny not the power of God for they are many & they
 come from the same God & there are different ways that these gifts are given in this time but
 it is the same that which worketh all in all & they are given by the manifestations of
 the spirit of God unto men to profit them for he holdeth to one given by the spirit
 of God that he may teach the record of wisdom & to another that he may teach the re-
 cord of knowledge by the same spirit & to another exceeding great faith & to another the
 gifts of healing by the same spirit & again to another that he may work mighty
 miracles & again to another that he may prophesy concerning all things & again to an-
 other the boldness of angels & ministering spirits & again to another all kinds of tongues
 & again to another the interpretation of languages & of divers kinds of tongues & all these gi-
 fts come by the spirit of Christ & they come unto every man sensibly according as he
 will & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remember that every good
 gift cometh of Christ & I would exhort you my beloved brethren that ye remem-
 ber that he is the same yesterday today & forever & that all these gifts of which I
 have spoken which are spiritual & never will be done away even as long as the ^{world} ~~men~~
 shall stand only according to the unbelief of the children of men wherefore there must
 be faith & if there must be faith there must also be hope & if there must be
 hope there must also be charity & except ye have charity ye cannot be saved
 in the Kingdom of God neither can ye be saved in the Kingdom of God if ye have
 not faith neither can ye if ye have no hope & if ye have no hope ye must needs
 be in despair & despair cometh because of unbelief & Christ has said unto our
 fathers I will have faith ye can do all things which is expedient unto me & now
 I speak unto all the ends of the earth that if the day cometh that the power & gifts
 of God shall be done away among you it shall be because of unbelief & must be
 unto the children of men if this be the case for there shall be none that doeth good
 among you no not one for if there be one among you that doeth good he shall
 work by the power & gifts of God & as unto them which shall do these things away
 & die for they die in their sins & they cannot be saved in the Kingdom of God
 & I speak it according to the words of Christ & I lie not & I exhort you to re-
 member these things for the time is quickly cometh that ye shall know that I lie
 not for ye shall see me at the last & God & the Lord God will say unto you
 Did I not declare my words unto you which were written by this man
 & as one crying from the dead & even as one speaking out of the dust

564

which is our God. Amen.

[Oliver Cowdery]

David Whitmer

J. Martin Harris

And also the testimony of eight witnesses

Be it known unto all kindreds, tongues & people unto whom this work shall come that Joseph Smith, the author & proprietor of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which have been spoken, which have the appearance of gold, & as many of the ^{leaves} ~~leaves~~ as the said Smith has translated ^{us} and did handle with our hands & we also saw the engravings thereof, all of which has the appearance of ancient work & of curious workmanship, & this ^{we} have record with records of soberness that the said Smith has shown unto us for we have seen & hefted & know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken & we give our names unto the world to wit: these, unto the world that which we have seen & we lie not God bearing witness of it.

Christian Whitmer

Jacob Whitmer

Peter Whitmer Junr

John Whitmer

Hiram Page

Joseph Smith senr

Hyrum Smith

Samuel H. Smith